



V60

PLUG-IN HYBRID

WEB EDITION
OWNER'S MANUAL



DEAR VOLVO OWNER

THANK YOU FOR CHOOSING VOLVO

We hope you will enjoy many years of driving pleasure in your Volvo. The car has been designed for the safety and comfort of you and your passengers. Volvo is one of the safest cars in the world. Your Volvo has also been designed to satisfy all current safety and environmental requirements.

In order to increase your enjoyment of the car, we recommend that you familiarise yourself with the equipment, instructions and maintenance information contained in this owner's manual.





01 Introduction

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Owner information..... | 13 |
| Reading the owner's manual..... | 13 |
| Recording data..... | 16 |
| Accessories and extra equipment..... | 17 |
| Change of ownership for cars with Volvo On Call*..... | 17 |
| Information on the Internet..... | 18 |
| Volvo Cars' environmental philosophy..... | 19 |
| The owner's manual and the environment..... | 21 |
| Laminated glass..... | 21 |
| Plug-in hybrid - overview..... | 22 |
| Plug-in hybrid - introduction..... | 24 |



02 Safety

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----|
| General information on seatbelts..... | 27 |
| Seatbelt - putting on..... | 28 |
| Seat belt - loosening..... | 29 |
| Seatbelt - pregnancy..... | 29 |
| Seatbelt reminder..... | 30 |
| Seatbelt tensioner..... | 30 |
| Safety - warning symbol..... | 31 |
| Airbag system..... | 31 |
| Driver airbag..... | 32 |
| Passenger airbag..... | 32 |
| Passenger airbag - activating/deactivating*..... | 33 |
| Side airbag (SIPS)..... | 35 |
| Side airbag (SIPS) - child seat/booster cushion..... | 36 |
| Inflatable Curtain (IC)..... | 36 |
| General information on WHIPS (whiplash protection)..... | 37 |
| WHIPS - child seats..... | 38 |
| WHIPS - seating position..... | 38 |
| When the systems deploy..... | 39 |
| General information on safety mode..... | 40 |
| Safety mode - attempting to start the car..... | 41 |
| Safety mode - moving the car..... | 42 |



| | |
|-------------------------------------------|----|
| General information on child safety..... | 42 |
| Child seats..... | 43 |
| Child seats - location..... | 47 |
| Child seat - two-stage booster seat*..... | 47 |
| Two-stage booster seat* - raising..... | 48 |
| Two-stage booster seat* - lowering..... | 49 |
| Child seat - ISOFIX..... | 50 |
| ISOFIX - size classes..... | 51 |
| ISOFIX - types of child seat..... | 52 |
| Child seats - upper mounting points..... | 54 |



03 Instruments and controls

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Instruments and controls, left-hand drive car - overview..... | 56 |
| Instruments and controls, right-hand drive car - overview..... | 59 |
| Combined instrument panel..... | 62 |
| Digital combined instrument panel - overview..... | 63 |
| Eco guide & Hybrid guide..... | 67 |
| Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols..... | 68 |
| Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols..... | 69 |
| Outside temperature gauge..... | 71 |
| Trip meter..... | 71 |
| Clock..... | 71 |
| Volvo Sensus..... | 72 |
| Key positions..... | 73 |
| Key positions - functions at different levels..... | 73 |
| Seats, front..... | 75 |
| Seats, front - electrically operated..... | 76 |
| Key memory* in remote control key..... | 77 |
| Seats, rear..... | 77 |
| Steering wheel..... | 79 |
| Heating* of the steering wheel..... | 80 |



| | |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Light switches..... | 81 |
| Position/parking lamps..... | 83 |
| Daytime running lights..... | 83 |
| Tunnel detection*..... | 84 |
| Main/dipped beam..... | 84 |
| Active high beam*..... | 85 |
| Active Xenon headlamps*..... | 87 |
| Rear fog lamp..... | 88 |
| Brake lights..... | 89 |
| Hazard warning flashers..... | 89 |
| Direction indicators..... | 90 |
| Interior lighting..... | 91 |
| Home safe light duration..... | 92 |
| Approach light duration..... | 92 |
| Headlamps - adjusting headlamp pattern..... | 93 |
| Wipers and washing..... | 93 |
| Power windows..... | 95 |
| Door mirrors..... | 97 |
| Windows and rearview and door mirrors - heating..... | 99 |
| Rearview mirror - interior..... | 99 |
| Compass*..... | 100 |
| Sunroof*..... | 101 |



| | |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Menu navigation - combined instrument panel..... | 103 |
| Menu overview - combined instrument panel..... | 104 |
| Messages..... | 104 |
| Messages - handling..... | 105 |
| MY CAR..... | 105 |
| Trip computer..... | 106 |
| Trip computer - combined instrument panel "Digital"..... | 108 |
| Trip computer - supplementary information..... | 111 |
| Trip computer - trip statistics*..... | 112 |



04 Climate control

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| General information on climate control... | 115 |
| Actual temperature..... | 116 |
| Sensors - climate control..... | 116 |
| Air cleaning..... | 116 |
| Air cleaning - passenger compartment filter..... | 117 |
| Air cleaning - Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)*..... | 117 |
| Air cleaning - IAQS*..... | 118 |
| Air cleaning - material..... | 118 |
| Menu settings - climate control..... | 118 |
| Air distribution in the passenger compartment..... | 119 |
| Electronic climate control - ECC..... | 121 |
| Heated front seats*..... | 122 |
| Heated rear seat*..... | 122 |
| Fan..... | 123 |
| Auto-regulation..... | 123 |
| Temperature control in the passenger compartment..... | 124 |
| Air conditioning..... | 124 |
| Demisting and defrosting the windscreen..... | 125 |
| Air distribution - recirculation..... | 125 |
| Air distribution - table..... | 127 |



| | |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|
| General information about preconditioning..... | 129 |
| Preconditioning the car..... | 129 |
| Preconditioning - setting..... | 130 |
| Preconditioning - parking inside..... | 130 |
| Preconditioning - parking outside..... | 131 |
| Preconditioning - direct start..... | 132 |
| Preconditioning - immediate stop..... | 133 |
| Preconditioning - timer..... | 133 |
| Timer - setting..... | 133 |
| Timer - starting..... | 134 |
| Timer - switching off..... | 134 |
| Preconditioning - messages..... | 135 |
| General information about heaters..... | 137 |
| Electrically-driven heater..... | 137 |
| Fuel-driven heater..... | 137 |
| Fuel-driven heater - auto mode/deactivation..... | 138 |



05 Loading and storage

| | |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Storage spaces..... | 140 |
| Jacket holder..... | 142 |
| Tunnel console..... | 142 |
| Tunnel console - cigarette lighter and ashtray*..... | 142 |
| Glovebox..... | 143 |
| Inlay mats*..... | 143 |
| Vanity mirror..... | 143 |
| Tunnel console - 12 V-sockets..... | 144 |
| Loading..... | 145 |
| Loading - long load..... | 146 |
| Roof load..... | 146 |
| Load retaining eyelets..... | 146 |
| 12 V electrical socket - cargo area*..... | 147 |
| Safety net*..... | 147 |
| Safety net* combined with cargo cover.. | 149 |
| Safety grille..... | 149 |
| Cargo cover..... | 150 |



06 Locks and alarm

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Remote control key with key blade..... | 152 |
| Remote control key - losing | 152 |
| Key memory*..... | 152 |
| Indication locking/unlocking - adjusting..... | 153 |
| Lock indicator..... | 153 |
| Immobiliser..... | 153 |
| Remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system..... | 154 |
| Remote control key - functions..... | 154 |
| Remote control key - range..... | 156 |
| PCC* - unique functions..... | 156 |
| PCC* - range..... | 157 |
| Detachable key blade..... | 158 |
| Detachable key blade - detaching/ attaching..... | 158 |
| Detachable key blade - unlocking doors..... | 159 |
| Privacy locking*..... | 159 |
| Remote control key/PCC - replacing the battery..... | 161 |
| Keyless drive*..... | 162 |
| Keyless drive* - PCC range..... | 162 |
| Keyless drive* - handling the PCC safely..... | 163 |
| Keyless drive* - interference to PCC function..... | 163 |
| Keyless drive* - locking..... | 164 |



| | |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Keyless drive* - unlocking..... | 164 |
| Keyless drive* - unlocking with the key blade | 165 |
| Keyless drive* - key memory..... | 165 |
| Keyless drive* - lock settings..... | 166 |
| Keyless drive* - antenna location..... | 166 |
| Locking/unlocking - from the outside..... | 167 |
| Manual locking of the door..... | 168 |
| Locking/unlocking - from the inside..... | 168 |
| Total airing function..... | 169 |
| Locking/unlocking - glovebox..... | 170 |
| Locking/unlocking - tailgate..... | 170 |
| Deadlocks*..... | 171 |
| Child safety locks - manual activation.... | 172 |
| Child safety locks - electrical activation* | 173 |
| Alarm..... | 174 |
| Alarm indicator..... | 175 |
| Alarm - automatic re-arming..... | 175 |
| Alarm - remote control key not working..... | 175 |
| Alarm signals..... | 176 |
| Reduced alarm level..... | 176 |



07 Driver support

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Stability and traction control system (DSTC)..... | 178 |
| Stability and traction control system (DSTC) - operation..... | 179 |
| Stability and traction control system (DSTC) - symbols and messages..... | 180 |
| Road Sign Information (RSI)*..... | 181 |
| Road sign information (RSI)* - operation..... | 181 |
| Road sign information (RSI)* - limitations..... | 183 |
| Speed limiter*..... | 184 |
| Speed limiter* - getting started..... | 184 |
| Speed limiter* - changing speed..... | 185 |
| Speed limiter* - temporary deactivation and standby mode..... | 185 |
| Speed limiter* - alarm for speed exceeded..... | 186 |
| Speed limiter* - deactivation..... | 186 |
| Cruise control*..... | 187 |
| Cruise control* - managing speed..... | 188 |
| Cruise control* temporary deactivation and standby mode..... | 188 |
| Cruise control* - resume set speed..... | 189 |
| Cruise control* - deactivate..... | 189 |
| Adaptive cruise control - ACC*..... | 190 |
| Adaptive cruise control* - function..... | 191 |



Table of contents

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| | |
| Adaptive cruise control* - overview..... | 192 |
| Adaptive cruise control* - managing speed..... | 193 |
| Adaptive cruise control* - set time interval..... | 194 |
| Adaptive cruise control* - temporary deactivation, and standby mode..... | 195 |
| Adaptive cruise control* - overtaking another vehicle..... | 196 |
| Adaptive cruise control* - deactivate..... | 196 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control* - Queue Assist | 196 |
| Adaptive cruise control* - switch cruise control functionality..... | 198 |
| Radar sensor..... | 199 |
| Radar sensor - limitations..... | 199 |
| Adaptive cruise control* - fault tracing and action..... | 201 |
| Adaptive cruise control* - symbols and messages..... | 202 |
| Distance Warning*..... | 204 |
| Distance Warning* - limitations..... | 205 |
| Distance Warning* - symbols and messages..... | 206 |
| City Safety™..... | 207 |
| City Safety™ - function..... | 207 |
| City Safety™ - operation..... | 208 |

| | |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| | |
| City Safety™ - limitations..... | 209 |
| City Safety™ - laser sensor..... | 211 |
| City Safety™ - symbols and messages.. | 213 |
| Collision warning system*..... | 214 |
| Collision warning system* - function..... | 215 |
| Collision warning system* - cyclist detection..... | 216 |
| Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians..... | 218 |
| Collision warning system* - operation.... | 219 |
| Collision warning system* - general limitations..... | 220 |
| Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations..... | 222 |
| Collision warning system* - symbols and messages..... | 224 |
| Driver Alert System*..... | 226 |
| Driver Alert Control (DAC)*..... | 226 |
| Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - operation... | 227 |
| Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - symbols and messages..... | 228 |
| Lane Departure Warning (LDW)*..... | 230 |
| Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - function..... | 230 |
| Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - operation..... | 231 |

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| | |
| Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - limitations..... | 232 |
| Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - symbols and messages..... | 233 |
| Park Assist*..... | 235 |
| Park assist syst* - function..... | 235 |
| Park assist syst* - backward..... | 236 |
| Park assist syst* - forward..... | 237 |
| Park assist syst* - fault indication..... | 238 |
| Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors. | 238 |
| Park assist camera..... | 239 |
| Park assist camera - settings..... | 241 |
| Park assist camera - limitations..... | 242 |
| BLIS* (Blind Spot Information System)... | 242 |
| BLIS* (Blind Spot Information System) - operation..... | 243 |
| CTA (Cross Traffic Alert)*..... | 244 |
| BLIS - symbols and messages..... | 246 |
| Adjustable steering force*..... | 247 |



08 Starting and driving

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Alcolock* | 249 |
| Alcolock* - functions and operation | 249 |
| Alcolock* - storage | 250 |
| Alcolock* - before starting the engine | 250 |
| Alcolock* - to bear in mind | 251 |
| Alcolock* - symbols and text messages | 253 |
| Starting the engine | 254 |
| Switching off the engine | 255 |
| Steering lock | 255 |
| Jump starting with battery | 256 |
| Drive systems | 257 |
| Drive system - drive modes | 258 |
| Energy flow | 260 |
| Drive system - symbols and messages | 262 |
| Gearboxes | 264 |
| Gear shift indicator* | 264 |
| Automatic gearbox -- Geartronic | 264 |
| Gear selector inhibitor | 267 |
| Hill start assist (HSA)* | 268 |
| All Wheel Drive - AWD | 268 |
| Foot brake | 269 |
| Foot brake - anti-lock braking system | 271 |
| Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers | 271 |



| | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| Foot brake - emergency brake assistance | 271 |
| Parking brake | 272 |
| Planning your driving | 276 |
| Fording | 277 |
| Overheating | 277 |
| Driving with open tailgate | 278 |
| Overload - starter battery | 278 |
| Before a long journey | 279 |
| Winter driving | 279 |
| Range for electric operation | 280 |
| Fuel filler flap - Opening/closing | 280 |
| Fuel filler flap - manual opening | 281 |
| Filling up with fuel | 281 |
| Fuel - handling | 282 |
| Fuel - diesel | 282 |
| Catalytic converters | 284 |
| Diesel particle filter (DPF) | 284 |
| Economical driving | 285 |
| Charging the hybrid battery | 286 |
| Charging current | 286 |
| Charging the hybrid battery - preparations | 288 |
| Charging cable with control unit | 289 |



| | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Charging cable with control unit - status messages | 291 |
| Charging cable with control unit - temperature monitoring | 292 |
| Charging cable with control unit - ground fault breaker | 292 |
| Charging the hybrid battery - starting | 293 |
| Charging the hybrid battery - ending | 294 |
| Long-term storage - points to remember | 295 |
| Driving with a trailer | 296 |
| Driving with a trailer - automatic gearbox | 297 |
| Towing bracket/Towbar | 298 |
| Detachable towbar - storage | 298 |
| Detachable towbar - specifications | 298 |
| Detachable towbar - attachment/removal | 299 |
| Trailer stabiliser - TSA | 301 |
| Towing | 302 |
| Towing eye | 303 |
| Recovery | 304 |



09 Wheels and tyres

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Tyres - direction of rotation..... | 306 |
| Tyres - maintenance..... | 306 |
| Tyres - tread wear indicators..... | 308 |
| Wheel bolts..... | 308 |
| Tools..... | 308 |
| Jack*..... | 309 |
| Winter tyres..... | 310 |
| Wheel and wheel rim dimensions..... | 310 |
| Tyres - dimensions..... | 311 |
| Tyres - load index..... | 311 |
| Tyres - speed ratings..... | 312 |
| Changing wheels - removing wheels..... | 312 |
| Changing wheels - fitting..... | 315 |
| Tyres - air pressure..... | 316 |
| Warning triangle..... | 317 |
| First aid kit*..... | 318 |
| Emergency puncture repair..... | 318 |
| Emergency puncture repair kit - location | 319 |
| Emergency puncture repair kit - over- view..... | 320 |
| Emergency puncture repair - operation.. | 320 |
| Emergency puncture repair - rechecking | 323 |
| Emergency puncture repair kit - inflating the tyres..... | 324 |



| | |
|------------------------------------------|-----|
| Emergency puncture repair kit - sealant. | 325 |
|------------------------------------------|-----|


09



10 Maintenance and service


| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Volvo service programme..... | 327 |
| Raising the car..... | 328 |
| Bonnet - opening and closing..... | 330 |
| Engine compartment - overview..... | 330 |
| Engine compartment - checking..... | 331 |
| Engine oil - general..... | 332 |
| Engine oil - checking and filling..... | 333 |
| Coolant - level..... | 334 |
| Brake and clutch fluid - level..... | 335 |
| Power steering fluid - level..... | 336 |
| Climate control system - fault tracing and repair..... | 336 |
| Lamp replacement..... | 337 |
| Lamp replacement - headlamps..... | 338 |
| Lamp replacement - cover for main/ dipped beam bulbs..... | 339 |
| Lamp replacement - dipped beam..... | 339 |
| Lamp replacement - main beam..... | 340 |
| Lamp replacement - extra main beam.... | 340 |
| Lamp replacement - direction indicators front..... | 340 |
| Lamp replacement - rear lamp..... | 341 |
| Lamp replacement - location of rear lamps..... | 342 |



|  | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Lamp replacement - number plate lighting..... | 342 |
| Lamp replacement - lighting in cargo area..... | 342 |
| Lamp replacement - vanity mirror lighting..... | 343 |
| Lamps - specifications | 343 |
| Wiper blades..... | 344 |
| Washer fluid - filling..... | 346 |
| Battery..... | 346 |
| Battery - symbols..... | 347 |
| Starter battery - replacement..... | 348 |
| Hybrid battery..... | 350 |
| Fuses - general..... | 350 |
| Fuses - in engine compartment..... | 352 |
| Fuses - under glovebox..... | 355 |
| Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox..... | 357 |
| Fuses - in cargo area..... | 359 |
| Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone..... | 363 |
| Car washing..... | 365 |
| Polishing and waxing..... | 366 |
| Water and dirt-repellent coating..... | 367 |
| Rustproofing..... | 367 |

|  | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Cleaning the interior..... | 367 |
| Paint damage..... | 369 |

10

|  | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 11 Specifications | |
| Type designations..... | 372 |
| Dimensions..... | 375 |
| Weights..... | 376 |
| Towing capacity and towball load..... | 377 |
| Engine specifications..... | 378 |
| Motor specifications - Electric drive motor..... | 379 |
| Engine oil - adverse driving conditions.. | 379 |
| Engine oil - grade and volume..... | 381 |
| Coolant - grade and volume..... | 382 |
| Transmission fluid - grade and volume.. | 383 |
| Brake fluid - grade and volume..... | 384 |
| Power steering fluid - grade..... | 384 |
| Washer fluid - quality and volume..... | 384 |
| Fuel tank - volume..... | 385 |
| Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions.. | 386 |
| Tyres - approved tyre pressures..... | 387 |
| Electrical system..... | 388 |
| Starter battery - specification..... | 388 |
| Hybrid Battery - specification..... | 388 |
| Range - specification..... | 389 |
| Type approval - remote control key system..... | 389 |
| Type approval - radar system..... | 389 |



| | |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Type approval - Bluetooth®..... | 390 |
| Licenses..... | 394 |
| Symbols in the display..... | 397 |

11



12 Alphabetical Index

| | |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Alphabetical Index..... | 400 |
|-------------------------|-----|

12



01



INTRODUCTION



Owner information

Your car is equipped with a display screen* where you can find information on how your car works. This owner's manual is a supplement to the information and contains important text, the latest updates, as well as instructions that can be useful when you, for practical reasons, cannot read the on-screen information.

Changing the display language may mean that some information does not correspond to national or local laws and regulations.

! IMPORTANT

The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven safely in traffic and that applicable laws and regulations are followed. It is also important that the car is maintained and handled in accordance with Volvo's recommendations in the owner's information.

If there should be a difference between the information on the screen and in the printed manual then it is always the printed information that applies.

* Applies to certain car models.

Reading the owner's manual

A good way of getting to know your new car is to read the owner's manual, ideally before your first journey. This will give you the opportunity to familiarise yourself with new functions, to see how best to handle the car in different situations, and to make the best use of all the car's features. Please pay attention to the safety instructions contained in the manual.

The specifications, design features and illustrations in this owner's manual are not binding. We reserve the right to make modifications without prior notice.

© Volvo Car Corporation

! IMPORTANT

Do not remove this manual from the car - should a problem arise then the information required about where and how to seek professional help would be missing.

Digital owner's manual in the car¹

When the printed manual refers to the digital owner's manual it means the one shown on the screen in the car.

Open the digital owner's manual - press the **MY CAR** button in the centre console, press **OK/MENU** and select **Owner's manual**.

There are four options for finding information in the owner's manual:

- **Search** - Search function for finding an article.
- **Categories** - All articles sorted into categories.
- **Favourites** - Quick access to favourite-bookmarked articles.
- **Quick Guide** - A selection of articles for common functions.

i NOTE

The owner's manual is not available while driving.

Owner's Manual in mobile devices



* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



01 Introduction

01



NOTE

The owner's manual is available for download as a mobile application (applies for certain car models and mobile devices), see www.volvocars.com.

The mobile application also includes video and searchable content and easy navigation between different sections.

Options/accessories

All types of option/accessory are marked with an asterisk*.

In addition to standard equipment, the owner's manual also describes options (factory fitted equipment) and certain accessories (retrofitted extra equipment).

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo dealer.

Special texts

WARNING

Warning texts appear if there is a risk of injury.

IMPORTANT

"Important" texts appear if there is a risk of damage.

NOTE

NOTE texts give advice or tips that facilitate the use of e.g. features and functions.

Footnote

There is footnote information in the owner's manual that is located at the bottom of the page. This information is an addition to the text that it refers to via a number. If the footnote refers to text in a table then letters are used instead of numbers for referral.

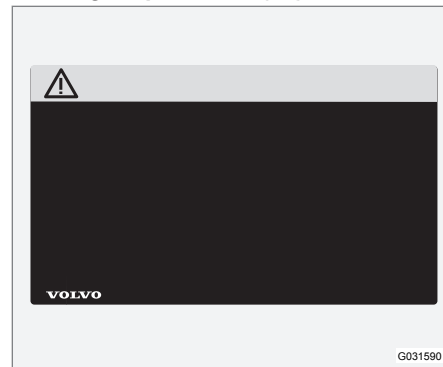
Message texts

There are displays in the car that show text messages. These text messages are highlighted in the owner's manual by means of the text being slightly larger and printed in grey. Examples of this are in menu texts and message texts on the information display (e.g. **Audio settings**).

Decals

The car contains different types of decal which are designed to convey important information in a simple and clear manner. The decals in the car have the following descending degree of importance for the warning/information.

Warning for personal injury



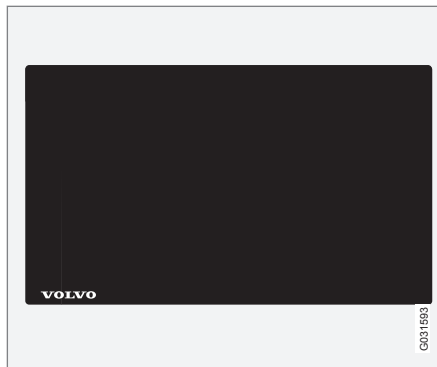
Black ISO symbols on yellow warning field, white text/image on black message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in serious personal injury or fatality.

Risk of property damage



White ISO symbols and white text/image on black or blue warning field and message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in damage to property.

Information



White ISO symbols and white text/image on black message field.

NOTE

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your particular car is available on the respective decals for your car.

Procedure lists

Procedures where action must be taken in a certain sequence are numbered in the owner's manual.

- 1 When there is a series of illustrations for step-by-step instructions each step is numbered in the same way as the corresponding illustration.
- A There are numbered lists with letters adjacent to the series of illustrations where the order of the instructions is not significant.
- 1➔ Arrows appear numbered and unnumbered and are used to illustrate a movement.
- A➔ Arrows with letters are used to clarify a movement when the reciprocal order is of no relevance.

If there is no series of illustrations for step-by-step instructions then the different steps are numbered with normal numbers.

Position lists

- 1 Red circles containing a number are used in overview images where different components are pointed out. The number recurs in the position list featured in connection with the illustration that describes the item.

Bulleted lists

A bulleted list is used when there is a list of points in the owner's manual.

Example:

- Coolant
- Engine oil



Related information

Related information refers to other sections containing related information.

Images

The manual's images are sometimes schematic and may deviate from the car's appearance depending on equipment level and market.

To be continued

▶▶ This symbol is located furthest down to the right when an article continues on the following page.

Continued from previous page

◀◀ This symbol is located furthest up to the left when an article continues from the previous page.

Related information

- The owner's manual and the environment (p. 21)
- Information on the Internet (p. 18)

Recording data

Certain information about the vehicle's operation and functionality, and any incidents, are recorded in the car.

Your vehicle contains a number of computers whose function is to continuously check and monitor the vehicle's operation and functionality. Some of the computers can record information during normal driving if they detect an error. In addition, information is recorded in the event of a collision or incident. Parts of the recorded information are required so that technicians can diagnose and rectify faults in the vehicle during servicing and maintenance and so that Volvo can fulfil legal requirements and other regulations. In addition to this, the information is used for research purposes by Volvo in order to continually develop quality and safety, as the information can contribute to a better understanding of the factors that cause accidents and injuries. The information includes details of the status and functionality of various systems and modules in the vehicle with regard to engine, throttle, steering and brake systems, amongst other things. This information may include details regarding the way the driver drives the vehicle, such as vehicle speed, brake and accelerator pedal use, steering wheel movement and whether or not the driver and passengers have used their seatbelts. For the reasons given this information may be stored in the vehicle's computers

for a certain length of time, but also as a result of a collision or incident. This information may be stored by Volvo as long as it can help to further develop and further enhance safety and quality and as long as there are legal requirements and other regulations that Volvo needs to consider.

Volvo will not contribute to the above-described information being disclosed to third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. However, due to national legislation and regulations Volvo may be required to disclose such information to authorities such as police authorities, or others who may assert a legal right to have access to it.

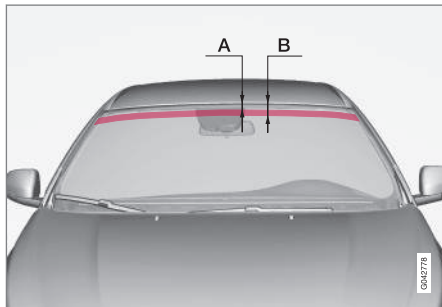
To be able to read and interpret the information recorded by the computers in the vehicle requires special technical equipment that Volvo, and workshops that have entered into agreements with Volvo, have access to. Volvo is responsible that the information, which is transferred to Volvo during servicing and maintenance, is stored and handled in a secure manner and that the handling complies with applicable legal requirements. For further information - contact a Volvo dealer.

Accessories and extra equipment

The incorrect connection and installation of accessories and extra equipment can negatively affect the car's electronic system.

Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system. Volvo therefore recommends that you always contact an authorised Volvo workshop before installing accessories or extra equipment which are connected to or affect the electrical system.

Heat-reflecting windscreen*



Areas where IR film is not applied.

| | Dimensions |
|---|------------|
| A | 40 mm |
| B | 80 mm |

The windscreen is equipped with a heat-reflecting film (IR) that reduces the solar heat radiation into the passenger compartment.

The positioning of electronic equipment, such as a transponder, behind a glass surface with heat-reflecting film may affect its function and performance.

For the optimal function of electronic equipment, it should be positioned on the part of the windscreen with no heat-reflecting film (see the highlighted area in the above illustration).

Change of ownership for cars with Volvo On Call*

If the car is equipped with Volvo On Call, VOC it is important to change the owner of the service.

VOC is a supplemental service that consists of safety, security and comfort services. In the event of change of ownership it is important to change the owner of the service.

Closing the VOC service

Contact a Volvo dealer in the event of change of ownership in order to close the VOC service.

In the event of change of ownership it is important to reset personal settings in the car to the original factory settings², see Change of ownership.

Starting the VOC service

It is very important that the VOC service changes owner so that the previous owner's ability to use services in the car is stopped. Contact a Volvo dealer in the event of a change of ownership.

Related information

- Information on the Internet (p. 18)



Information on the Internet

At www.volvocars.com there is further information concerning your car.

With a personal Volvo ID it is possible to log in to My Volvo which is a personal web page for you and your car.



QR code

A QR code reader is required to read the QR code, which is available as a supplemental program (app) for several mobile phones. The QR code reader can be downloaded from e.g. App Store, Windows Phone or Google Play.

² Only applies to cars that can be connected to the Internet.

Volvo Cars' environmental philosophy

Your Volvo complies with strict international environmental standards and is also manufac-

tured in one of the cleanest and most resource-efficient plants in the world.



Environmental care is one of Volvo Car Corporation's core values which influence all operations. We also believe that our customers share our consideration for the environment.

Your Volvo complies with strict international environmental standards and is also manufactured in one of the cleanest and most resource-efficient plants in the world. Volvo Car Corporation has global ISO certification, which includes the environmental standard ISO 14001 covering all factories and several of our other units. We also set requirements

for our partners so that they work systematically with environmental issues.

Fuel consumption

Volvo cars have competitive fuel consumption in each of their respective classes. Lower fuel consumption generally results in lower emission of the greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide.

It is possible for the driver to influence fuel consumption. For more information read under the heading, **Reducing environmental impact.**

Efficient emission control

Your Volvo is manufactured following the concept "Clean inside and out" – a concept that encompasses a clean interior environment as well as highly efficient emission control. In many cases the exhaust emissions are well below the applicable standards.

Clean air in the passenger compartment

A passenger compartment filter prevents dust and pollen from entering the passenger compartment via the air intake.



A sophisticated air quality system, IAQS* (Interior Air Quality System) ensures that the incoming air is cleaner than the air in the traffic outside.

The system consists of an electronic sensor and a carbon filter. The incoming air is monitored continuously and if there is an increase in the level of certain unhealthy gases such as carbon monoxide then the air intake is closed. Such a situation may arise in heavy traffic, queues and tunnels for example.

The entry of nitrous oxides, ground-level ozone and hydrocarbons is prevented by the carbon filter.

Interior

The interior of a Volvo is designed to be pleasant and comfortable, even for people with contact allergies and for asthma sufferers. Extreme attention has been given to choosing environmentally-compatible materials.

Volvo workshops and the environment

Regular maintenance creates the conditions for a long service life and low fuel consumption for your car. In this way you contribute to a cleaner environment. When Volvo's workshops are entrusted with the service and maintenance of your car it becomes part of our system. Volvo makes clear demands regarding the way in which our workshops are designed in order to prevent spills and discharges into the environment. Our workshop staff have the knowledge and the tools

required to guarantee good environmental care.

Reducing environmental impact

You can easily help reduce environmental impact - here are a few tips:

- Avoid letting the engine idle - switch off the engine when stationary for longer periods. Pay attention to local regulations.
- Drive economically - think ahead.
- Perform service and maintenance in accordance with the owner's manual's instructions - follow the intervals recommended in the Service and Warranty Booklet.
- If the car is equipped with an engine block heater*, use it before starting from cold - it improves starting capacity and reduces wear in cold weather and the engine reaches normal operating temperature more quickly, which lowers consumption and reduces emissions.
- High speed increases consumption considerably due to increased wind resistance - a doubling of speed increases wind resistance 4 times.
- Always dispose of environmentally hazardous waste, such as batteries and oils, in an environmentally safe manner. Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this type of waste should be discarded - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Following this advice can save money, the planet's resources are saved, and the car's durability is extended. For more information and further advice, see Eco guide (p. 67) , Economical driving (p. 285) and Fuel consumption (p. 386).

Recycling

As a part of Volvo's environmental work, it is important that the car is recycled in an environmentally sound manner. Almost all of the car can be recycled. The last owner of the car is therefore requested to contact a dealer for referral to a certified/approved recycling facility.

Related information

- The owner's manual and the environment (p. 21)

The owner's manual and the environment

The paper pulp in a printed owner's manual comes from FSC® certified forests or other controlled sources.

The Forest Stewardship Council® symbol shows that the paper pulp in a printed owner's manual comes from FSC® certified forests or other controlled sources.



Related information

- Volvo Cars' environmental philosophy (p. 19)

Laminated glass

Laminated glass



The glass is reinforced which provides better protection against break-ins and improved sound insulation in the passenger compartment. The windscreen and other windows* have laminated glass.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

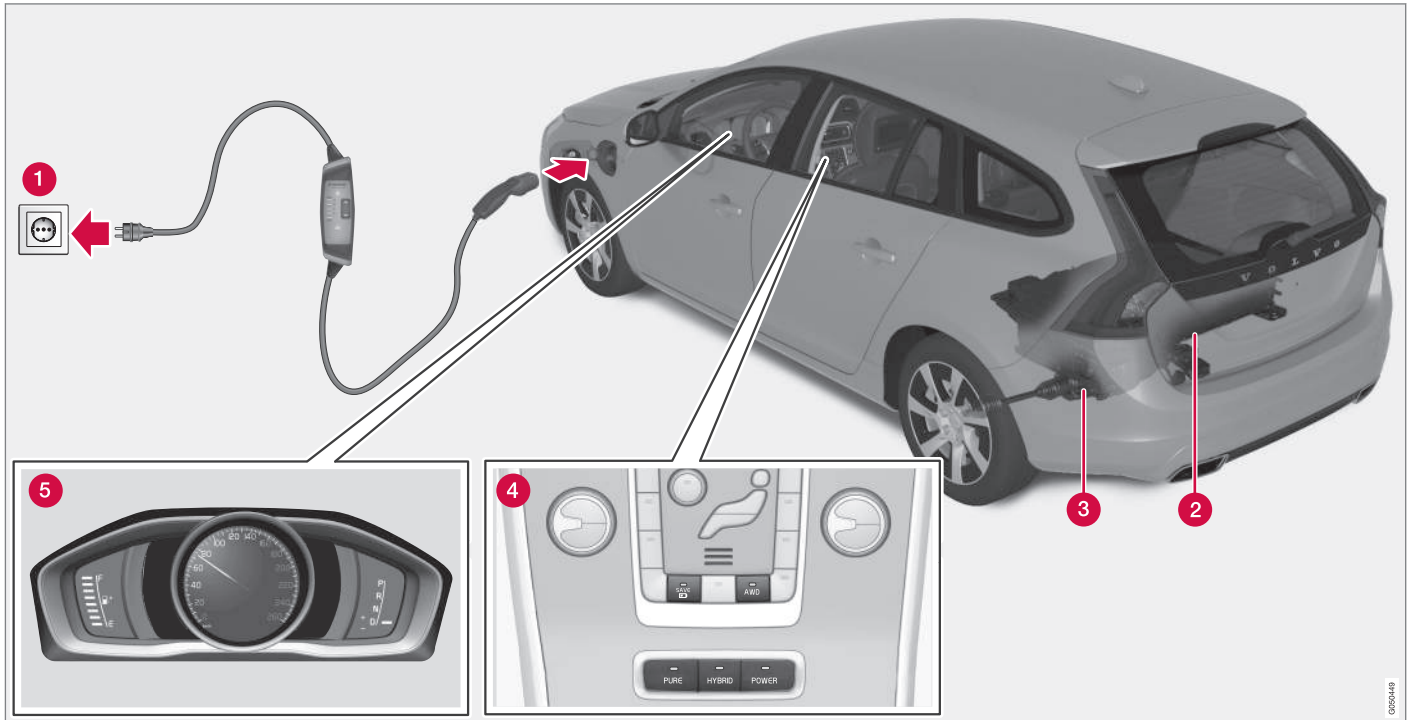


01 Introduction

01

Plug-in hybrid - overview

Overview of the V60 PLUG-IN HYBRID unique functions.



1 Charging the hybrid battery (p. 286).

2 Hybrid battery (p. 350).

0000440



- ③ Electric motor (p. 257) with drive on the rear wheels.
- ④ Drive modes (p. 258).
- ⑤ Combined instrument panel (p. 63) with unique information for the plug-in hybrid.

Related information

- Plug-in hybrid - introduction (p. 24)



Plug-in hybrid - introduction

The car is driven as a completely normal car. The electric motor drives the car mostly at low speeds, the diesel engine at higher speeds, and during more active driving.

Important to know

WARNING

Remember that the car does not emit any engine noise when it is only powered by the electric motor and may therefore be difficult to notice by children, pedestrians, cyclists and animals. This applies in particular at low speeds, such as in car parks.

Hazard voltage



Several components in the car operate with hazardous electrical voltage. Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in this owner's manual. Read more about the engine compart-

ment (p. 330).

WARNING

Orange cables marked with a high-voltage decal must only be handled by qualified personnel.

Driving the car

The car is driven as a completely normal car. The electric motor drives the car mostly at low speeds, the diesel engine at higher speeds, and during more active driving. Read more about Economical driving (p. 285).

Drive modes

It is possible to set the car in different drive modes while driving, e.g. electric operation only or, when power is required, both electric motor and diesel engine. The car calculates an optimal combination of driveability, driving experience, environmental load and fuel economy according to the drive mode selected. Read more about Drive system - drive modes (p. 258).

Combined instrument panel

Two fields in the combined instrument panel show unique information for the V60 PLUG-IN HYBRID: hybrid battery gauge (current energy level), active drive mode, symbol that is illuminated when the diesel engine is operating, Hybrid Guide as well as energy recovery. Read more about the combined instrument panel (p. 63).

Preconditioning

In order that the car should have optimal function it is important that the hybrid battery with associated electrical drive systems, as well as the diesel engine and its drive systems, have the correct operating temperature. Battery capacity is reduced considerably if

the battery is too cold or too hot. Preconditioning prepares the car's drive systems and the passenger compartment before departure so that both wear and energy needs during the journey are reduced. Read more about Preconditioning the car (p. 129).

Charging the hybrid battery

IMPORTANT

Never connect the charging cable when there is a risk of lightning.

The hybrid battery is the Lithium-ion type and can be recharged in different ways. A charging cable with control unit can be connected between the car and a 230V AC socket, see Charging cable with control unit (p. 289). Charging time depends on charging current (p. 286).

The electric motor is used as an engine brake during light braking and the car's kinetic energy is converted to electrical energy which is used to charge the hybrid battery. Read more about recycling the brake force energy (p. 269).

In addition, the diesel engine can charge the electric motor's hybrid battery with a special hazard voltage generator when the need arises, see drive system and drive modes (p. 258).

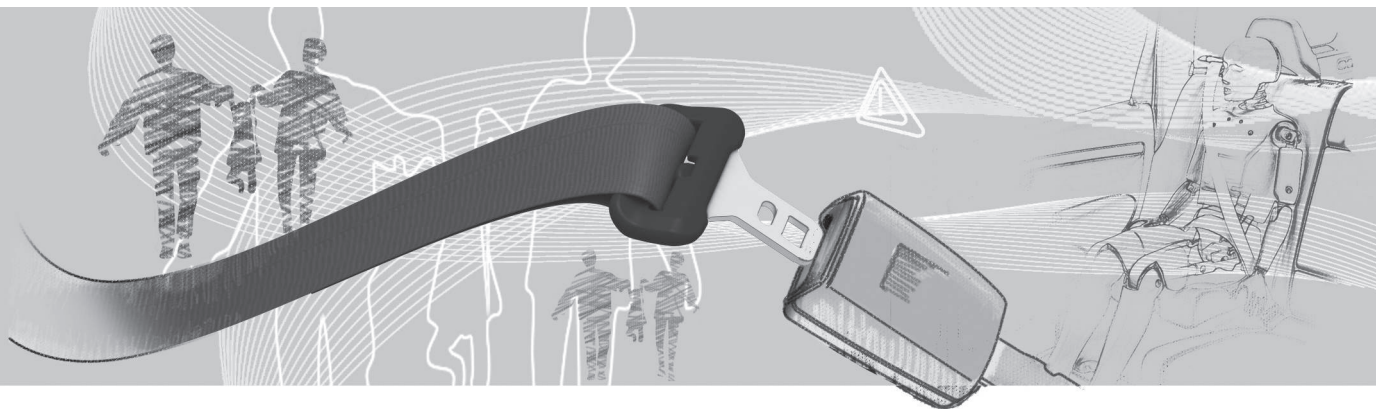


Related information

- Plug-in hybrid - overview (p. 22)

02

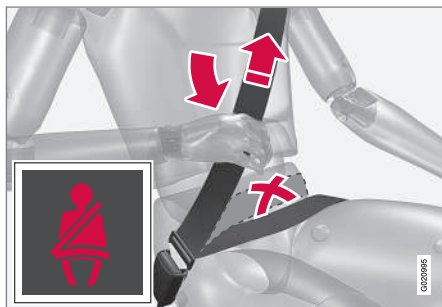
SAFETY





General information on seatbelts

Heavy braking can have serious consequences if the seatbelts are not used. Ensure that all passengers are using their seatbelts during the journey.



It is important that the seatbelt lies against the body so it can provide maximum protection. Do not lean the backrest too far back. The seatbelt is designed to protect in a normal seating position.

Unbelted occupants will be reminded to fasten (p. 28) their seatbelt by means of an audio and visual reminder (p. 30).

Remember

- Do not use clips or anything else that can prevent the seatbelt from fitting properly.
- The seatbelt must not be twisted or caught on anything.

- The hip strap must be positioned low down (not over the abdomen).
- Tension the hip strap over the lap by pulling the diagonal shoulder belt up towards the shoulder.

WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If a seatbelt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

WARNING

Each seatbelt is designed for only one person.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

If a seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the protective characteristics of the seatbelt may have been lost, even if it appears to be undamaged. In addition, replace the seatbelt if the belt is worn or damaged. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and intended for installation in the same position as the replaced seatbelt.

Related information

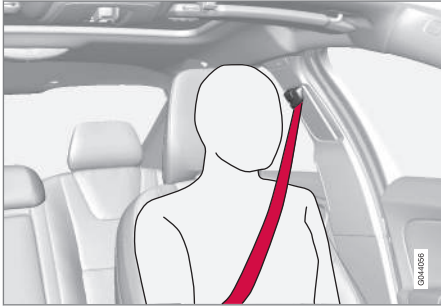
- Seatbelt - pregnancy (p. 29)
- Seat belt - loosening (p. 29)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 30)



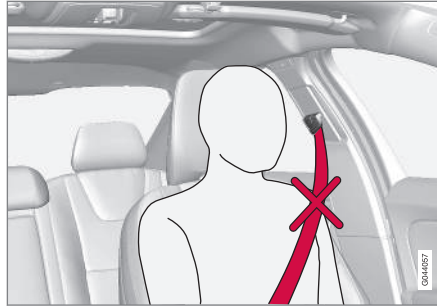
Seatbelt - putting on

Put on the seatbelt (p. 27) before setting off.

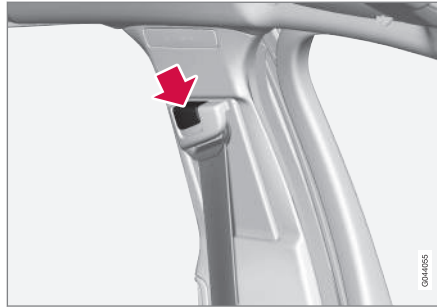
Pull the belt out slowly and secure it by pressing its locking tab into the seatbelt buckle. A loud "click" indicates that the belt has locked.



Correctly fitted seatbelt.



Incorrectly fitted seatbelt. The belt must rest on the shoulder.



Seatbelt height adjustment. Press the button and move the belt vertically. Position the belt as high as possible without it chafing against your throat.

The buckles only fit the intended lock in the rear seat¹.

Remember

The seatbelt locks and cannot be withdrawn:

- if it is pulled out too quickly
- during braking and acceleration
- if the car leans heavily.

Related information

- Seatbelt - pregnancy (p. 29)
- Seat belt - loosening (p. 29)
- Seatbelt tensioner (p. 30)
- Seatbelt reminder (p. 30)

¹ Certain markets.



Seat belt - loosening

Loosen the seatbelt (p. 27) when the car is stationary.

Press the red button on the seatbelt buckle and then let the belt retract. If the seatbelt does not retract fully, feed it in by hand so that it does not hang loose.

Related information

- Seatbelt - putting on (p. 28)
- Seatbelt reminder (p. 30)

Seatbelt - pregnancy

Seatbelt (p. 27) must always be worn during pregnancy. But it is crucial that it be worn in the correct way.



The diagonal section should wrap over the shoulder then be routed between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

The lap section should lay flat over the thighs and as low as possible under the abdomen. – It must never be allowed to ride upward. Remove the slack from the seatbelt and ensure that it fits as close to the body as possible. In addition, check that there are no twists in the seatbelt.

As the pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers must adjust the seat (p. 75) and steering wheel (p. 79) such that they can easily maintain control of the vehicle as they drive (which means that they must be able to easily operate the foot pedals and steering wheel).

The aim should be to position the seat with as large a distance as possible between abdomen and steering wheel.

Related information

- Seatbelt - putting on (p. 28)
- Seat belt - loosening (p. 29)



Seatbelt reminder

Unbelted occupants will be reminded to fasten their (p. 28) seatbelt by means of an audio and visual reminder.



The audio reminder is speed dependent, and in some cases time dependent. The visual reminder is located in the roof console and in the combined instrument panel (p. 62).

Child seats are not covered by the seatbelt reminder system.

Rear seat

The seatbelt reminder in the rear seat has two subfunctions:

- Provides information on which seatbelts (p. 27) are being used in the rear seat. A message appears in the combined instrument panel when the seatbelts are in use, or if one of the rear doors has been opened. The message is acknowledged

automatically after approximately 30 seconds driving or after pressing the indicator stalk (p. 103) **OK** button. If anyone is unbelted then the message can only be acknowledged manually by pressing the indicator stalk **OK** button.

- Provides a warning if one of the rear seatbelts is unfastened during travel. This warning takes the form of a message in the combined instrument panel along with the audio/visual signal. The warning stops when the seatbelt is re-fastened, or it can also be acknowledged manually by pressing the **OK** button.

The combined instrument panel's information display shows which seatbelts are in use. This information is always available.

Certain markets

An acoustic signal and indicator lamp remind the driver and front seat passenger to use a seatbelt if either of them is not wearing one. At low speed, the audible reminder will sound for the first 6 seconds.

Seatbelt tensioner

All the seatbelts (p. 27) are equipped with belt tensioners. A mechanism in the seatbelt tensioner tightens the seatbelt in the event of a sufficiently violent collision. The seatbelt then provides more effective restraint for the occupants.



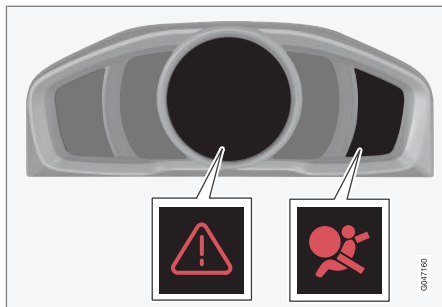
WARNING

Never insert the tongue of the passenger's seatbelt into the buckle on the driver's side. Always insert the tongue of the seatbelt into the buckle on the correct side. Do not make any damages on seatbelts nor insert any foreign objects into a buckle. The seatbelts and buckles would then possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serious injury.



Safety - warning symbol

The warning symbol is shown if a fault is detected during fault tracing or if a system has been activated. Where required, the warning symbol is shown together with a message in the combined instrument panel (p. 62) information display.



Warning triangle and warning symbol for the airbag system (p. 31) in the combined instrument panel.

The warning symbol in the combined instrument panel illuminates when the remote control key is in key position II (p. 73). The symbol is extinguished after approx. 6 seconds provided the airbag system is fault-free.

WARNING

If the warning symbol for the airbag system remains illuminated or illuminates while driving, it means that the airbag system does not have full functionality. The symbol indicates a fault in the seatbelt tensioner system, SIPS, the IC system or some other fault in the system. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop immediately.

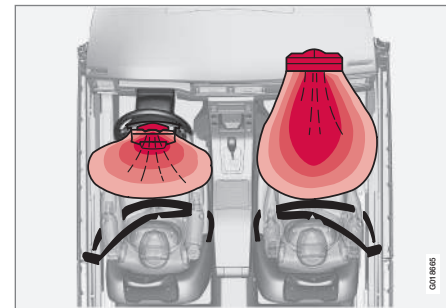
If the warning symbol malfunctions, the warning triangle illuminates and **SRS airbag Service required** or **SRS airbag Service urgent** appears in the display. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop immediately.

Related information

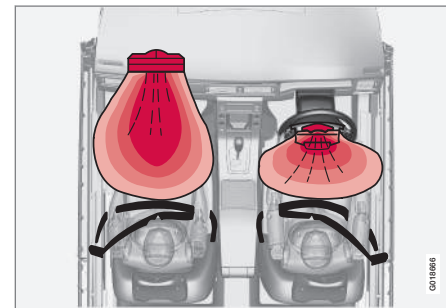
- General information on safety mode (p. 40)

Airbag system

In the event of a frontal collision the airbag system helps to protect the driver and passenger from injuries to head, face and chest.



Airbag system, left-hand drive car.



Airbag system, right-hand drive car.



The system consists of airbags and sensors. A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag(s) are inflated and become hot. To cushion the impact, the airbag deflates when compressed. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

WARNING

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

NOTE

The detectors react differently depending on the nature of the collision and whether or not the seatbelts are fastened. Applies to all belt positions.

It is therefore possible that only one (or none) of the airbags may inflate in a collision. The detectors sense the force of the collision on the vehicle and the action is adapted accordingly so that one or more airbags are deployed.

Related information

- Driver airbag (p. 32)
- Passenger airbag (p. 32)
- Safety - warning symbol (p. 31)

Driver airbag

To supplement the protection afforded by the seatbelt (p. 27) the car is equipped on the driver's side with an airbag (p. 31).

This airbag is fitted into the centre of the steering wheel. The steering wheel is marked **AIRBAG**.

WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

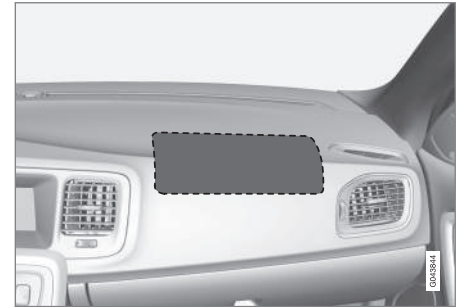
Related information

- Passenger airbag (p. 32)

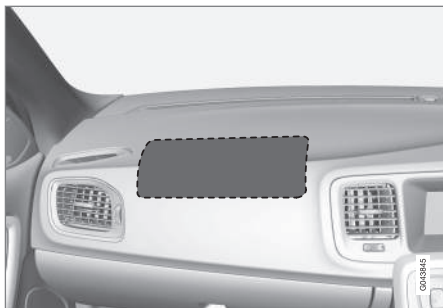
Passenger airbag

To supplement the protection afforded by the seatbelt (p. 27) on the passenger side, the car is equipped with an airbag (p. 31).

The airbag is folded up into a compartment above the glovebox. Its cover panel is marked **AIRBAG**.



Location of the front passenger airbag in a left-hand drive car.



Location of the front passenger airbag in a right-hand drive car.

WARNING

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest. Seatbelts must be secured.

WARNING

Do not put objects in front of or above the dashboard where the passenger airbag is located.

WARNING

Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion in the front seat if the airbag is activated.

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

No one shorter than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life.

Switch - PACOS*

The front passenger airbag can be deactivated (p. 33) if the car is equipped with a switch, PACOS (Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch).

WARNING

If the car is equipped with a front passenger airbag, but does not have a PACOS switch (Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch), then the airbag will always be activated.

Related information

- Driver airbag (p. 32)
- Child seats (p. 43)

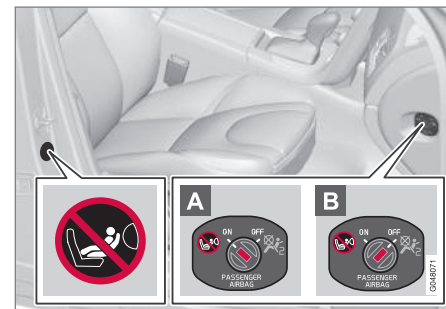
Passenger airbag - activating/deactivating*

Front passenger airbag (p. 32) can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a switch, PACOS (Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch).

Switch - PACOS

The switch for the passenger airbag (PACOS) is located on the passenger end of the instrument panel and is accessible when the passenger door is open.

Check that the switch is in the required position. The remote control key's key blade (p. 158) should be used to change position.



Location of airbag label plus switch.

- A** The airbag is activated. With the switch in this position, persons taller than 140 cm can sit in the front passenger seat, but



02 Safety



never children in a child seat or on a booster cushion.

B The airbag is deactivated. With the switch in this position, children in a child seat or on a booster cushion can sit in the front passenger seat, but never persons taller than 140 cm.

WARNING

Activated airbag (passenger seat):

Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated. This applies to everyone shorter than 140 cm.

Deactivated airbag (passenger seat):

No one taller than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat when the airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life.

NOTE

When the remote control key is in key position II (p. 73) the warning symbol (p. 31) for the airbag is shown in the combined instrument panel for approx. 6 seconds.

Following which, the indicator in the roof console is illuminated showing the correct status for the front passenger seat airbag.



Indicator showing that the passenger airbag is activated.

A warning symbol in the roof console indicates that the airbag for the front passenger seat is activated (see preceding illustration).

WARNING

Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion in the front seat if the airbag is activated and the symbol in the roof console is illuminated. Failure to follow this advice could endanger the life of the child.



Indicator showing that the passenger airbag is deactivated.

A text message and a symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is deactivated (see preceding illustration).

WARNING

Do not allow anyone to sit in the front passenger seat if the message in the roof console indicates that the airbag is deactivated, and if the warning symbol (p. 31) for the airbag system is also displayed on the combined instrument panel. This indicates that there has been a severe malfunction. Visit a workshop as soon as possible. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.



! WARNING

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger the lives of passengers in the car.

Related information

- Child seats (p. 43)

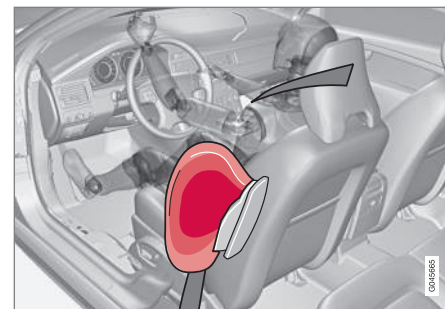
Side airbag (SIPS)

In a side impact collision a large proportion of the collision force is transferred by the SIPS (Side Impact Protection System) to beams, pillars, the floor, the roof and other structural parts of the body. The side airbags at the driver's and front passenger seats protect the chest area and the hip and are an important part of the SIPS.

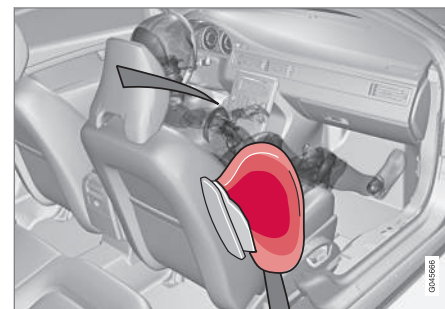


The SIPS bag system consists of two main components, side airbag and sensors. The side airbags are located in the front seat backrests.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the side airbags are inflated. The airbag inflates between the occupant and the door panel and thereby cushions the initial impact. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. The side airbag is normally only deployed on the side of the collision.



Driver's seat, left-hand drive.



Front passenger seat, left-hand drive.



WARNING

- Volvo recommends that repairs are only carried out by an authorised Volvo workshop. Defective work in the SIPS-bag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.
- Do not put objects in the area between the outside of the seat and the door panel, since this area is required by the side airbag.
- Volvo recommends the use only of car seat covers approved by Volvo. Other seat covers may impede the operation of the side airbags.
- Side airbags are a supplement the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Related information

- Driver airbag (p. 32)
- Passenger airbag (p. 32)
- Side airbag (SIPS) - child seat/booster cushion (p. 36)
- Inflatable Curtain (IC) (p. 36)

Side airbag (SIPS) - child seat/booster cushion

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the side airbag (p. 35).

Child seat/booster cushion (p. 43) can be placed on the front passenger seat provided that the car does not have an activated airbag (p. 33) on the front passenger side.

Related information

- Passenger airbag (p. 32)
- General information on child safety (p. 42)

Inflatable Curtain (IC)

The inflatable curtain helps to prevent the driver and passengers from striking their heads on the inside of the car during a collision.



Inflatable curtain IC (Inflatable Curtain) is part of the SIPS system (p. 35) and the airbag system (p. 31). It is fitted in the headlining along both sides of the roof and protects the car's occupants sitting in the outer seats. A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the inflatable curtain is inflated.



! WARNING

Never hang or attach heavy items onto the handles in the roof. The hook is only designed for light clothing (not for solid objects such as umbrellas for example).

Do not screw or install anything onto the car's headlining, door pillars or side panels. This could compromise the intended protection. Volvo recommends that you only ever use Volvo genuine parts that are approved for placement in these areas.

! WARNING

Do not load the car higher than 50 mm under the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

! WARNING

The inflatable curtain is a supplement to the seatbelts.

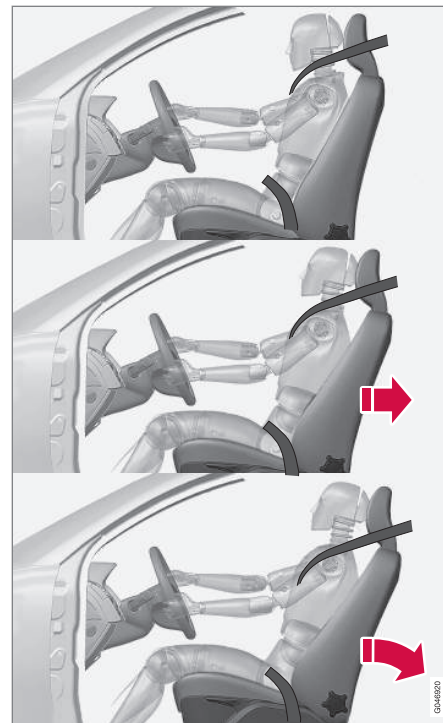
Always use a seatbelt.

Related information

- General information on seatbelts (p. 27)

General information on WHIPS (whiplash protection)

WHIPS (Whiplash Protection System) is a protection against whiplash injuries. The system consists of energy absorbing backrests and specially designed head restraints in the front seats.



The WHIPS system is actuated by a rear-end collision, where the angle and speed of the collision, and the nature of the colliding vehicle all have an influence.



WARNING

The WHIPS system is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Properties of the seat

When the WHIPS system is deployed, the front seat backrests are lowered backward to alter the seating position of the driver and front seat passenger. This reduces the risk of whiplash injury.

WARNING

Never modify or repair the seat or WHIPS system yourself. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- WHIPS - child seats (p. 38)
- WHIPS - seating position (p. 38)
- General information on seatbelts (p. 27)

WHIPS - child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the WHIPS system (p. 37).

Child seat/booster cushion (p. 43) can be placed on the front passenger seat provided that the car does not have an activated airbag (p. 33) on the front passenger side.

Related information

- General information on child safety (p. 42)

WHIPS - seating position

For optimum protection from the WHIPS system (p. 37) the driver and passenger must have the correct seating position and make sure that the system's function is not obstructed.

Seating position

Set the correct seating position in the front seat (p. 75) before driving starts.

Driver and front seat passenger should sit in the centre of the seat with as little space as possible between the head and the head restraint.

Function



Do not leave any objects on the floor behind the driver's seat/passenger seat that may prevent the WHIPS system from functioning.



WARNING

Do not squeeze rigid objects between the rear seat cushion and the front seat backrest. Make sure you do not to obstruct the function of the WHIPS system.



Do not place objects on the rear seat that may prevent the WHIPS system from functioning.

WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is folded down, the corresponding front seat must be moved forward so that it does not touch the folded backrest.

WARNING

If a seat has been subjected to extreme forces, such as due to a rear-end collision, the WHIPS system must be checked. Volvo recommends that it is checked by an authorised Volvo workshop.

Part of the WHIPS system's protective capacity may have been lost even if the seats appear to be undamaged.

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop to have the system checked even after a minor rear-end collision.

When the systems deploy

In the event of a collision Volvo's different personal safety systems work together in order to minimise injury.

| System | Triggered |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Seatbelt tensioner (p. 30) front seat | In the event of a frontal collision, and/or side-impact collision, and/or rear-end collision and/or overturning |
| Seatbelt tensioner, rear seat | In a frontal collision and/or side-impact accident and/or overturning |
| Airbags (Steering wheel (p. 32) and passenger airbag (p. 32)) | In a frontal collision ^A |
| Side airbags (SIPS) (p. 35) | In a side-impact accident ^A |



| System | Triggered |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Inflatable Curtain IC (p. 36) | In the event of a side impact and/or overturning and/or some frontal collisions ^A |
| Whiplash protection WHIPS (p. 37) | In a rear-end collision |

^A The bodywork of the car could be greatly deformed in a collision without airbag deployment. A number of factors such as the rigidity and weight of the object hit, the speed of the car, the angle of the collision etc. affects how the different safety systems of the car are activated.

If the airbags (p. 31) have deployed, the following is recommended:

- Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that you have it conveyed to an authorised Volvo workshop. Do not drive with deployed airbags.
- Volvo recommends that you engage an authorised Volvo workshop to handle the replacement of components in the car's safety systems.
- Always contact a doctor.

i NOTE

The airbags and belt tensioner system are deployed only once during a collision.

! WARNING

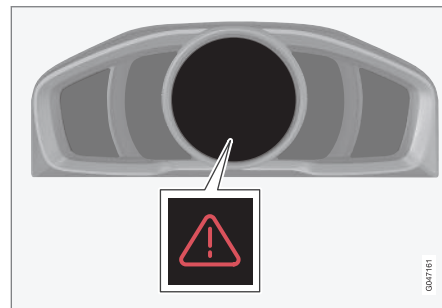
The airbag system's control module is located in the centre console. If the centre console is drenched with water or other liquid, disconnect the cables to the starter battery. Do not attempt to start the car since the airbags may deploy. Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that you have it conveyed to an authorised Volvo workshop.

! WARNING

Never drive with deployed airbags. They can make steering difficult. Other safety systems may also be damaged. The smoke and dust created when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation/injury after intensive exposure. In case of irritation, wash with cold water. The rapid deployment sequence and airbag fabric may cause friction and skin burns.

General information on safety mode

Safety mode is a protective state that is enforced when the collision may have damaged any of the car's vital functions such as, for example, the fuel lines, sensors for one of the safety systems, or the brake system.



Warning triangle in the combined instrument panel.

If the car is involved in a collision, the text **Safety mode See manual** may appear in the combined instrument panel (p. 62) information display. This means that the car has reduced functionality.

**! WARNING**

Never attempt to repair your car or reset the electronics yourself if the car has been in safety mode. This could result in personal injury or the car not functioning as normal. Volvo recommends that you engage an authorised Volvo workshop to check and restore the car to normal status after **Safety mode See manual** has been displayed.

Related information

- Safety mode - attempting to start the car (p. 41)
- Safety mode - moving the car (p. 42)

Safety mode - attempting to start the car

If the car is set in safety mode (p. 40) then an attempt to start the car can be made if everything seems normal and the absence of fuel leakage has been checked.

First, check that no fuel is leaking from the car. There must be no smell of fuel either.

If everything seems normal and you have checked for indications of fuel leakage, you may attempt to start the car.

Remove the remote control key and open the driver's door. If a message is now shown to the effect that the ignition is on, press the start button. Then close the door and reinsert the remote control key. The car's electronics will now try to reset themselves to normal mode. Then try to start the car.

If the message **Safety mode See manual** is still shown on the display then the car must not be driven or towed but a vehicle recovery service (p. 304) used instead. Even if the car appears to be driveable, hidden damage may make the car impossible to control once moving.

! WARNING

Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the **Safety mode See manual** message is displayed. Leave the car at once.

! WARNING

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Related information

- Safety mode - moving the car (p. 42)



Safety mode - moving the car

If **Normal mode** is shown after **Safety mode** *See manual* has been reset after attempting to start the car (p. 41), the car can be moved carefully out of a dangerous position.

Do not move the car further than necessary.

Related information

- General information on safety mode (p. 40)

General information on child safety

Children of all ages and sizes must always sit correctly secured in the car. Never allow a child to sit on the knee of a passenger.

Volvo recommends that children travel in rear-facing child seats until as late an age as possible, at least until 3-4 years of age, and then front-facing booster cushions/child seats until up to 10 years of age.

The position of a child in the car and the choice of equipment are dictated by the child's weight and size; see Child seats (p. 43).



NOTE

Regulations regarding the placement of children in cars vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

Volvo has child safety equipment (child seats, booster cushions & attachment devices) which is designed for your particular car. Using Volvo's child safety equipment provides you with optimum conditions for your child to travel safely in the car. Furthermore, the child safety equipment fits and is easy to use.



NOTE

In the event of questions when fitting child safety products, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Child safety locks

The rear doors and rear door windows* can be blocked manually (p. 172) or electronically (p. 173)* from opening from the inside.

Related information

- Child seats - location (p. 47)
- Child seat - ISOFIX (p. 50)
- Child seats - upper mounting points (p. 54)



Child seats

Children should sit comfortably and safely. Make sure that the child seat is being used correctly.



Child seats and airbags are not compatible.

NOTE

When using child safety products it is important to read the installation instructions included.

WARNING

Do not secure the straps of the child seat to the seat's horizontal adjustment bar, springs or the rails and beams under the seat. Sharp edges may damage the straps.

Look in the installation instructions for the child seat for the correct fitting.



Recommended child seats²

| Weight | Front seat (with deactivated airbag) | Outer rear seat | Centre rear seat |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Group 0 max 10 kg Group 0+ max 13 kg | | Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the ISOFIX fixture system. Type approval: E1 04301146 (L) | |
| Group 0 max 10 kg Group 0+ max 13 kg | Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E1 04301146 (U) | Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E1 04301146 (U) | Volvo infant seat (Volvo Infant Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E1 04301146 (U) |
| Group 0 max 10 kg Group 0+ max 13 kg | Child seats which are universally approved. (U) | Child seats which are universally approved. (U) | Child seats which are universally approved. (U) |
| Group 1 9-18 kg | Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L) | Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L) | |

² With regard to other child seats your car should be included in the manufacturer's enclosed list of vehicles or be universally approved in accordance with the ECE R44 legal requirement.



| Weight | Front seat (with deactivated airbag) | Outer rear seat | Centre rear seat |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Group 1 9-18 kg | Child seats which are universally approved. (U) | Child seats which are universally approved. (U) | Child seats which are universally approved. (U) |
| Group 2 15-25 kg | Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L) | Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - rear-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt and straps. Type approval: E5 04192 (L) | |
| Group 2 15-25 kg | Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - front-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E5 04191 (U) | Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - front-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E5 04191 (U) | Volvo rear-facing/turnable child seat (Volvo Convertible Child Seat) - front-facing child seat, secured with the car's seatbelt. Type approval: E5 04191 (U) |
| Group 2/3 15-36 kg | Volvo booster seat with backrest (Volvo Booster Seat with backrest). Type approval: E1 04301169 (UF) | Volvo booster seat with backrest (Volvo Booster Seat with backrest). Type approval: E1 04301169 (UF) | Volvo booster seat with backrest (Volvo Booster Seat with backrest). Type approval: E1 04301169 (UF) |
| Group 2/3 15-36 kg | Booster cushion with and without backrest (Booster Cushion with and without backrest). Type approval: E5 04216 (UF) | Booster cushion with and without backrest (Booster Cushion with and without backrest). Type approval: E5 04216 (UF) | Booster cushion with and without backrest (Booster Cushion with and without backrest). Type approval: E5 04216 (UF) |



02 Safety



| Weight | Front seat (with deactivated airbag) | Outer rear seat | Centre rear seat |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| Group 2/3 15-36 kg | | Integrated booster cushion (Integrated Booster Cushion) - available as a factory fitted option. Type approval: E5 04189 (B) | |

L: Suitable for specific child seats. These child seats may be intended for use in a special car model, limited or semi-universal categories.

U: Suitable for universally approved child seats in this weight class.

UF: Suitable for front-facing universally approved child seats in this weight class.

B: Built-in child seats approved for this weight class.

Related information

- Child seats - location (p. 47)
- Child seats - upper mounting points (p. 54)
- Child seat - ISOFIX (p. 50)
- General information on child safety (p. 42)



Child seats - location

Always fit child seats/booster cushions (p. 43) in the rear seat if the passenger airbag is activated (p. 33). If a child is sitting on the front passenger seat then he/she could suffer serious injury if the airbag deploys.



The label for the airbag becomes visible when the passenger door is opened, see illustration (p. 33).

You may place:

- a child seat/booster cushion on the front passenger seat provided there is no activated airbag on the front passenger side.
- one or more child seats/booster cushions in the rear seat.

WARNING

Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion in the front seat if the airbag (SRS) is activated.

No one shorter than 140 cm should ever sit in the front passenger seat if the airbag (SRS) is activated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life.

WARNING

Booster cushions/child seats with steel braces or some other design that could rest on the seatbelt buckle's opening button must not be used, as they could cause the seatbelt buckle to open accidentally.

Do not allow the upper section of the child seat to rest against the windscreen.

Related information

- General information on child safety (p. 42)
- Child seats - upper mounting points (p. 54)
- Child seat - ISOFIX (p. 50)

Child seat - two-stage booster seat*

The integrated booster seats in the rear seat allow children to sit comfortably and safely.

The booster cushions are specially designed to provide optimum safety. In combination with the seatbelt (p. 27) they are approved for children who weigh between 15 and 36 kg and who are at least 95 cm in height.



Correct position, the seatbelt should be positioned in on the shoulder.



Incorrect position, the head restraint must be adjusted as high as the head and the seatbelt must not be below the shoulder.

Check before driving that:

- the integrated two-stage booster seat is correctly set in accordance with the table (p. 48) and in locked position
- the seatbelt is in contact with the child's body and is not slack or twisted
- the seatbelt does not lie across the child's throat or below the shoulder (see preceding illustrations)
- the lap section of the seatbelt is positioned low over the pelvis to provide optimal protection.

Adjusting the booster seat's two levels is performed by raising (p. 48) and lowering (p. 49).

WARNING

Volvo recommends that repair or replacement is only carried out by an authorised Volvo workshop. Do not make any modifications or additions to the booster cushion. If an integrated booster cushion has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire booster cushion must be replaced. Even if the booster cushion appears to be undamaged, it may not afford the same level of protection. The booster cushion must also be replaced if it is heavily worn.

WARNING

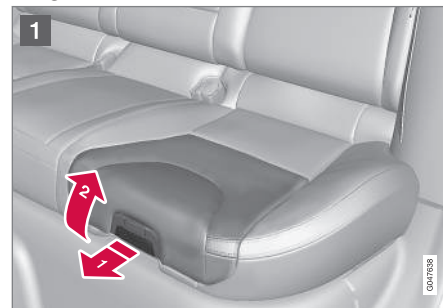
If the instructions for the two-stage booster seat are not followed then the child could sustain serious injury in the event of an accident.

Two-stage booster seat* - raising

The integrated booster seat (p. 47) in the rear seat can be folded up into two stages. How many stages the cushion should be folded up depends on the child's weight.

| | Stage 1 | Stage 2 |
|--------|----------|----------|
| Weight | 22-36 kg | 15-25 kg |

Stage 1³



1 Pull the handle forward and up in order to release the booster cushion.

³ Lower stage.



2 Press the booster cushion backwards to lock.

Stage 2⁴



1 Start from the lower stage. Press the button.

⁴ Upper stage.



2 Lift the booster cushion up at the front edge and press it back against the backrest to lock.

i NOTE

It is not possible to adjust the booster seat from stage 2 to stage 1. It must first be reset by being fully folded down (p. 49) into the seat cushion.

Two-stage booster seat* - lowering

The integrated booster seat (p. 47) in the rear seat can be folded down from the upper or lower stage to fully lowered position in the seat cushion. However, it is not possible to adjust the booster cushion from the upper stage to the lower stage.



1 Pull the handle forwards to release the cushion.



2 Press down with your hand in the centre of the cushion in order to lock it.

! IMPORTANT

Check that there are no loose objects (e.g. toys) left behind in the space under the cushion before lowering.

i NOTE

When folding the rear backrest the booster seat must first be lowered.

Related information

- Two-stage booster seat* - raising (p. 48)

Child seat - ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a fixture system for car child seats (p. 43) that is based on an international standard.



Mounting points for the ISOFIX fixture system are concealed behind the lower section of the rear seat backrest, in the outer seats.

The location of the mounting points is indicated by symbols in the backrest upholstery (see preceding illustration).

Press the seat cushion down to access the mounting points.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the ISOFIX mounting points.

Related information

- ISOFIX - size classes (p. 51)
- ISOFIX - types of child seat (p. 52)

- General information on child safety (p. 42)



ISOFIX - size classes

There is a size classification for child seats using the ISOFIX (p. 50) fixture system in order to assist users in choosing the correct type of child seat (p. 52).

| Size class | Description |
|------------|------------------------------------------------|
| A | Full size, front-facing child seat |
| B | Reduced size (alt. 1), front-facing child seat |
| B1 | Reduced size (alt.2), front-facing child seat |
| C | Full size, rear-facing child seat |
| D | Reduced size, rear-facing child seat |
| E | Rear-facing infant seat |
| F | Transverse infant seat, left-hand |
| G | Transverse infant seat, right-hand |

WARNING

Never place the child in the passenger seat if the car is fitted with an activated air-bag.

NOTE

If an ISOFIX child seat has no size classification, the car model must be included on the vehicle list for the child seat.

NOTE

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo dealer for recommendations about which ISOFIX child seats Volvo recommends.



ISOFIX - types of child seat

Child seats are in different sizes – cars are in different sizes. This means that not all child

seats are suitable for all seats in all car models.

| Type of child seat | Weight | Size class | Passenger seats for ISOFIX installation of child seats | |
|--------------------------|-----------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| | | | Front seat | Outer rear seat |
| Infant seat transverse | max 10 kg | F | X | X |
| | | G | X | X |
| Infant seat, rear-facing | max 10 kg | E | X | OK (IL) |
| Infant seat, rear-facing | max 13 kg | E | X | OK (IL) |
| | | D | X | OK (IL) |
| | | C | X | OK (IL) |
| Child seat, rear-facing | 9-18 kg | D | X | OK (IL) |
| | | C | X | OK (IL) |



| Type of child seat | Weight | Size class | Passenger seats for ISOFIX installation of child seats | |
|-------------------------|---------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| | | | Front seat | Outer rear seat |
| Front-facing child seat | 9-18 kg | B | X | OK ^A (IUF) |
| | | B1 | X | OK ^A (IUF) |
| | | A | X | OK ^A (IUF) |

X: The ISOFIX position is not suitable for ISOFIX child seats in this weight class and/or size class.

IL: Suitable for specific ISOFIX child seats. These child seats may be intended for use in a special car model, limited or semi-universal categories.

IUF: Suitable for front-facing ISOFIX child seats that are universally approved in this weight class.

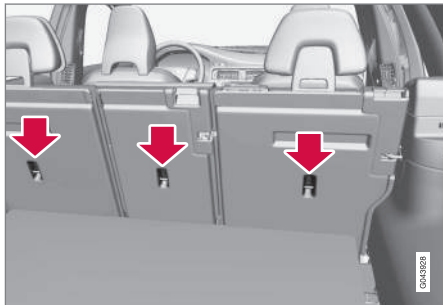
^A Volvo recommends rear-facing child seats for this group.

Make sure you select the right size class (p. 51) of child seat with ISOFIX (p. 50) fixture system.



Child seats - upper mounting points

The car is equipped with upper mounting points for certain front-facing child seats (p. 43). These mounting points are located on the rear of the seat.



The upper mounting points are primarily intended for use with front-facing child seats. Volvo recommends that small children should sit in rear-facing child seats to as late an age as possible.

i NOTE

Fold the head restraints in order to facilitate fitting this type of child seat in cars with folding head restraints on the outer seats.

i NOTE

In cars with a cargo cover over the luggage compartment, this must be removed before child seats can be attached to the securing points.

For detailed information on how the child seat should be tensioned in the upper mounting points, see the seat manufacturer's instructions.

⚠ WARNING

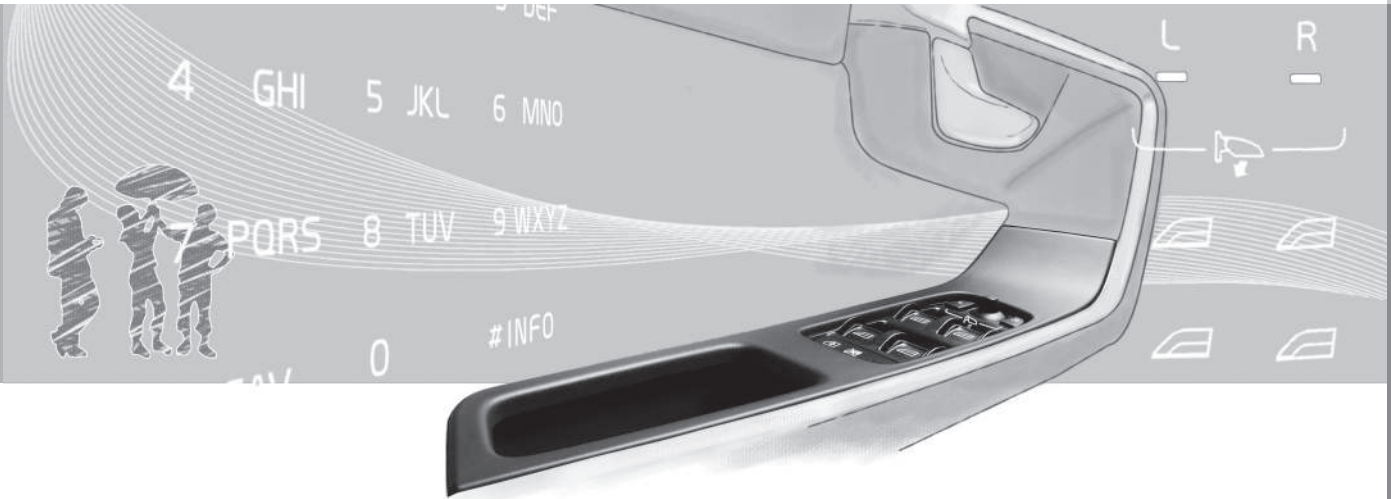
The child seat's straps must always be drawn through the hole in the head restraint leg before they are tensioned at the attachment point.

Related information

- General information on child safety (p. 42)
- Child seats - location (p. 47)
- Child seat - ISOFIX (p. 50)

03

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS





03 Instruments and controls

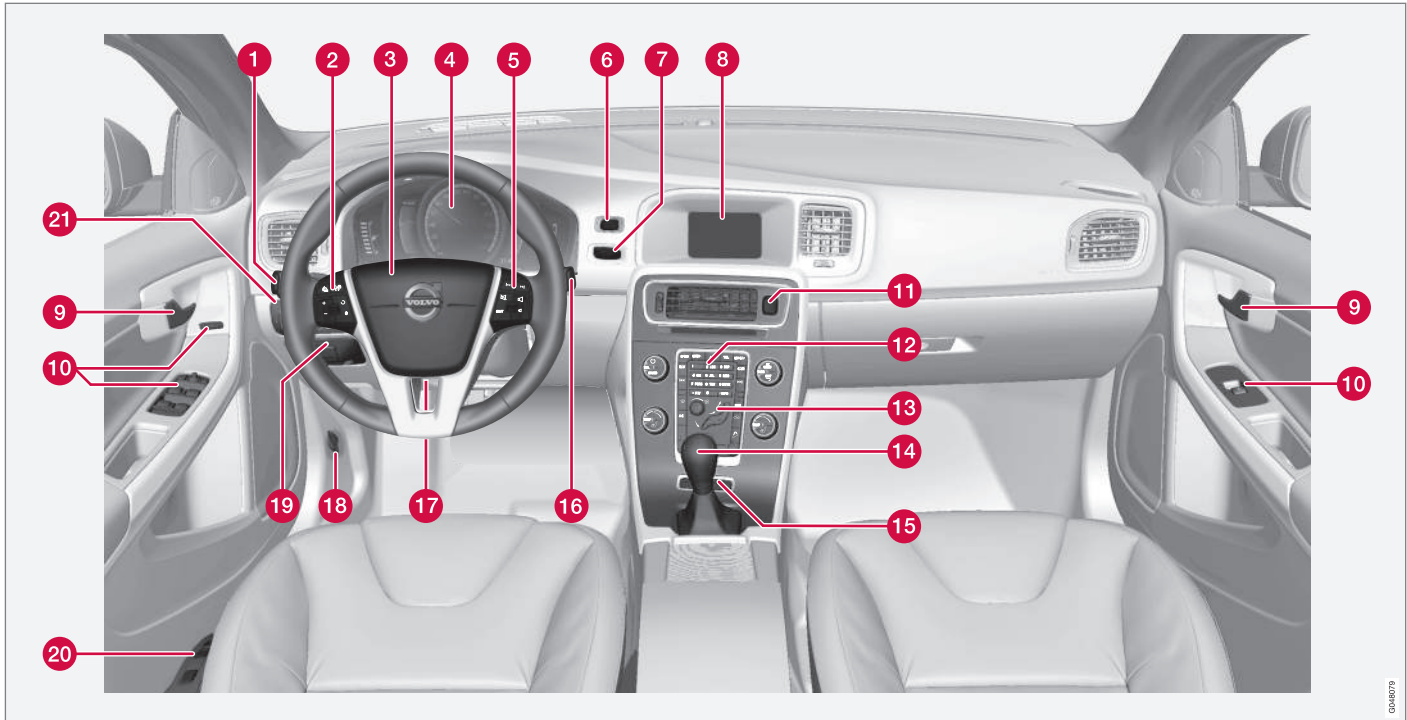
Instruments and controls, left-hand drive car - overview

The overview shows where the car's displays and controls are located.

03



Overview, left-hand drive car





03 Instruments and controls



| | Function | See |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Menus and messages, direction indicators, main/dipped beam, trip computer | (p. 103), (p. 105), (p. 90), (p. 84) and (p. 111). |
| 2 | Cruise control* | (p. 187) and (p. 190). |
| 3 | Horn, airbags | (p. 79) and (p. 31). |
| 4 | Combined instrument panel | (p. 62). |
| 5 | Menu navigation, audio control, phone control* | (p. 105) and the Sensus Infotainment supplement. |
| 6 | START/STOP ENGINE button | (p. 254). |
| 7 | Ignition switch | (p. 73). |
| 8 | Screen for infotainment system and display of menus | (p. 105) and the Sensus Infotainment supplement. |
| 9 | Door handle | – |

| | Function | See |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 10 | Control panel | (p. 168), (p. 173), (p. 95) and (p. 97). |
| 11 | Hazard warning flashers | (p. 89). |
| 12 | Control panel for infotainment system and menu navigation | (p. 105) and the Sensus Infotainment supplement. |
| 13 | Control panel for climate control | (p. 121). |
| 14 | Gear selector | (p. 264). |
| 15 | Controls for drive modes | (p. 258). |
| 16 | Wipers and washing | (p. 93). |
| 17 | Steering wheel adjustment | (p. 79). |
| 18 | Bonnet opener | (p. 330). |
| 19 | Parking brake | (p. 272). |
| 20 | Seat adjustment* | (p. 76). |
| 21 | Headlamp control, opener for fuel filler flap and tailgate | (p. 81), (p. 280) and (p. 170). |

Related information

- Outside temperature gauge (p. 71)
- Trip meter (p. 71)
- Clock (p. 71)



Instruments and controls, right-hand drive car - overview

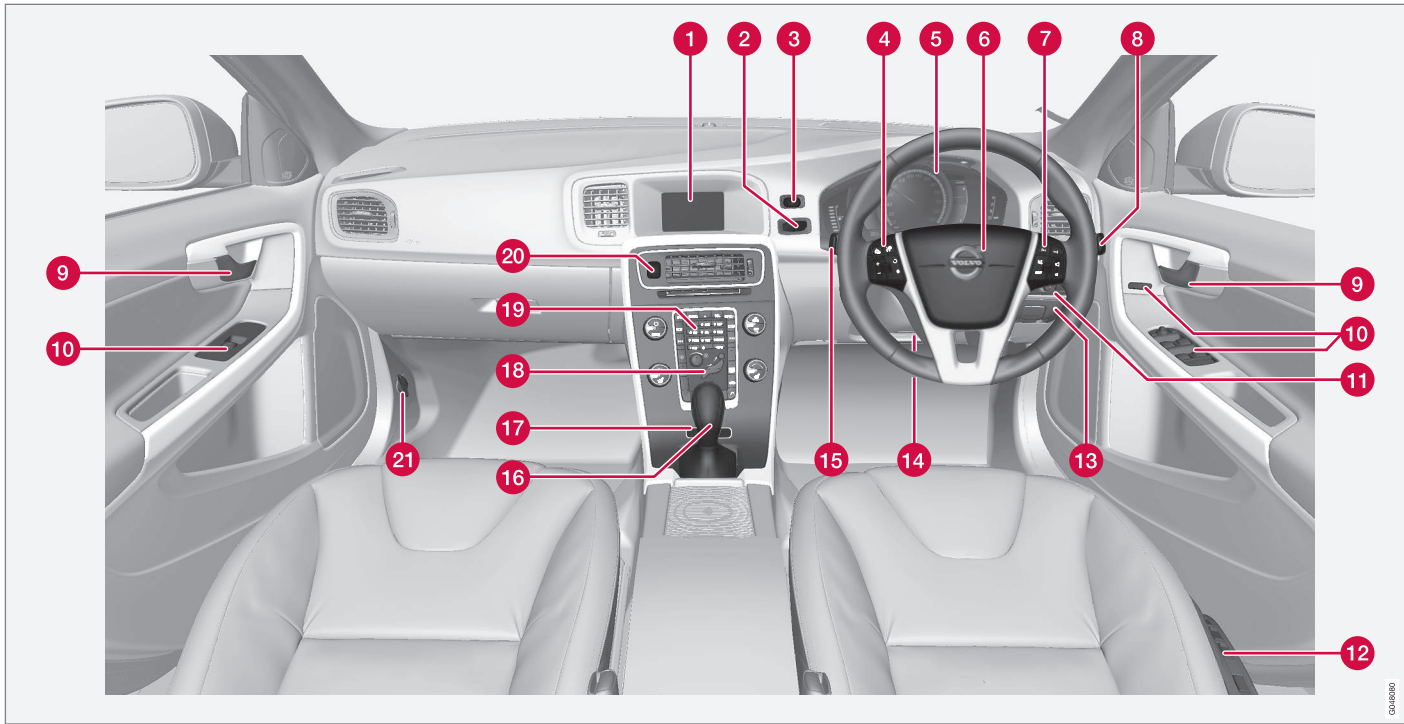
The overview shows where the car's displays and controls are located.



03 Instruments and controls



Overview, right-hand drive cars



0468580



| | Function | See |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Screen for infotainment system and display of menus | (p. 105) and the Sensus Infotainment supplement. |
| 2 | Ignition switch | (p. 73). |
| 3 | START/STOP ENGINE button | (p. 254). |
| 4 | Cruise control* | (p. 187) and (p. 190). |
| 5 | Combined instrument panel | (p. 62). |
| 6 | Horn, airbags | (p. 79) and (p. 31). |
| 7 | Menu navigation, audio control, phone control* | (p. 105) and the Sensus Infotainment supplement. |
| 8 | Wipers and washing | (p. 93). |
| 9 | Door handle | – |
| 10 | Control panel | (p. 168), (p. 173), (p. 95) and (p. 97). |

| | Function | See |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 11 | Headlamp control, opener for fuel filler flap and tailgate | (p. 81), (p. 280) and (p. 170). |
| 12 | Seat adjustment* | (p. 76). |
| 13 | Parking brake | (p. 272). |
| 14 | Steering wheel adjustment | (p. 79). |
| 15 | Menus and messages, direction indicators, main/dipped beam, trip computer | (p. 103), (p. 105), (p. 90), (p. 84) and (p. 111). |
| 16 | Gear selector | (p. 264). |
| 17 | Controls for drive modes | (p. 258). |
| 18 | Control panel for climate control | (p. 121). |
| 19 | Control panel for infotainment system and menu navigation | (p. 105) and the Sensus Infotainment supplement. |
| 20 | Hazard warning flashers | (p. 89). |
| 21 | Bonnet opener | (p. 330). |

Related information

- Outside temperature gauge (p. 71)
- Trip meter (p. 71)
- Clock (p. 71)



Combined instrument panel

The combined instrument panel's information display shows information on some of the car's functions, as well as messages.

- Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63)
- Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols (p. 68)
- Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols (p. 69)



Digital combined instrument panel - overview

The combined instrument panel's information display shows information on some of the

car's functions, e.g. cruise control and trip computer, as well as messages. The information is shown with symbols and text.



The instrument shows information according to the selections made, see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103).

- 1 Hybrid battery gauge
- 2 Current energy level
- 3 Active drive mode
- 4 The symbol illuminates when the diesel engine is operating.
- 5 Hybrid guide (Driver Support Power Meter). Shows the current driver-requested propulsion power and available electric motor power, i.e. the limit when the diesel engine starts/stops. For more information, see the Driver Support Power Meter (p. 67).

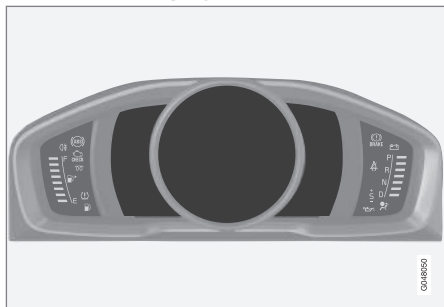


Energy recovery



- 1 When the electric motor generates power for the hybrid battery, bubbles are shown in the hybrid battery gauge - see Foot brake (p. 269).

Information display



Information display.

The combined instrument panel's information display shows information on some of the car's functions, e.g. cruise control and trip computer, as well as messages. The information is shown with symbols and text. There are further descriptions under the functions that use the display.

Gauges and indicators

Alternative themes can be selected for the combined instrument panel. Possible themes are "Hybrid", "Elegance", "Eco" and "Performance". The setting for the theme can be stored in the remote control key's memory when locking the car, see Remote control key with key blade (p. 152) and MY CAR (p. 105).

A theme can only be selected when the engine is running.

To switch the theme, press the left-hand stalk select's **OK** button and then select the **Themes** menu option by turning the thumb-wheel on the lever. Confirm your choice by pressing the **OK** button. For more information on menus, see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103).

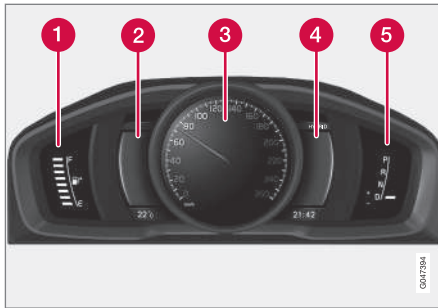
The appearance of the centre console's screen follows the combined instrument panel's theme setting on certain model variants.



Gauges and indicators, theme "Hybrid".

- 1 Fuel gauge. When the indicator lowers to only one white marking¹, the yellow indicator symbol for low level in the fuel tank is illuminated. See also Trip computer - supplementary information (p. 111) and Filling up with fuel (p. 281).
- 2 Hybrid battery gauge
- 3 Speedometer
- 4 Hybrid guide. See also Eco guide & Hybrid guide (p. 67).
- 5 Gear position indicator. See also Automatic gearbox -- Geartronic (p. 264).

¹ When the display's message "Distance to empty fuel tank:" starts to show "----", the marking becomes red.



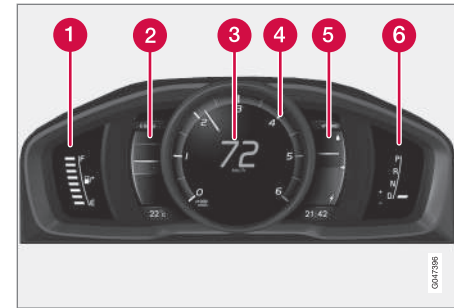
Gauges and indicators, theme "Elegance".

- 1** Fuel gauge. When the indicator lowers to only one white marking¹, the yellow indicator symbol for low level in the fuel tank is illuminated. See also Trip computer - supplementary information (p. 111) and Filling up with fuel (p. 281).
- 2** No function
- 3** Speedometer
- 4** No function
- 5** Gear position indicator. See also Automatic gearbox -- Geartronic (p. 264).



Gauges and indicators, theme "Eco".

- 1** Fuel gauge. When the indicator lowers to only one white marking¹, the yellow indicator symbol for low level in the fuel tank is illuminated. See also Trip computer - supplementary information (p. 111) and Filling up with fuel (p. 281).
- 2** Eco guide. See also Eco guide & Hybrid guide (p. 67).
- 3** Speedometer
- 4** Hybrid guide. See also Eco guide & Hybrid guide (p. 67).
- 5** Gear position indicator. See also Automatic gearbox -- Geartronic (p. 264).



Gauges and indicators, theme "Performance".

- 1** Fuel gauge. When the indicator lowers to only one white marking¹, the yellow indicator symbol for low level in the fuel tank is illuminated. See also Trip computer - supplementary information (p. 111) and Filling up with fuel (p. 281).
- 2** E-boost gauge. Illustrates electric motor use, its support to the diesel engine and engine braking² with the electric motor.
- 3** Speedometer
- 4** Tachometer. The meter indicates engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).

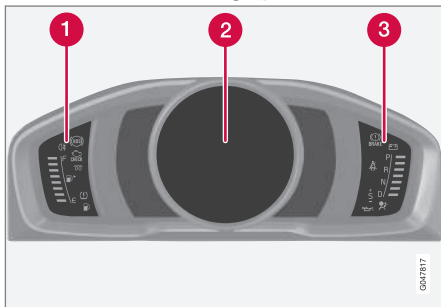
¹ When the display's message "Distance to empty fuel tank:" starts to show "----", the marking becomes red.

² Engine braking with the electric motor charges the hybrid battery, see Foot brake (p. 269).



- 5 Hybrid guide. See also Eco guide & Hybrid guide (p. 67).
- 6 Gear position indicator. See also Automatic gearbox -- Geartronic (p. 264).

Indicator and warning symbols



Indicator and warning symbols.

- 1 Indicator symbols
- 2 Indicator and warning symbols
- 3 Warning symbols

Functionality check

All indicator and warning symbols, apart from symbols in the centre of the information display, illuminate in key position **II** or when the engine is started. When the engine has started, all the symbols should go out except the parking brake symbol, which only goes out when the brake is disengaged.

If the engine does not start or if the functionality check is carried out in key position **II** then all symbols go out within a few seconds except the symbol for faults in the car's emissions system.

Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)
- Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols (p. 68)
- Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols (p. 69)



Eco guide & Hybrid guide

Eco guide and Hybrid guide are two combined instrument panel (p. 62) instruments which help the driver to drive the car with optimum driving economy.

The car also stores statistics of journeys made, which can be viewed in the form of a block diagram; see Trip computer - trip statistics (p. 112).*

Eco guide

This instrument provides an indication of how economically the car is being driven.

To view this function, select the theme "Eco"; see Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63).



- 1 Instantaneous value
- 2 Average value

Instantaneous value

The instantaneous value is shown here - the higher the reading on the scale, the better.

The instantaneous value is calculated based on speed, engine speed, engine power utilised plus use of the foot brake.

Optimum speed (50-80 km/h) and low engine speeds are encouraged. The pointers fall during acceleration and braking.

Very low instantaneous values illuminate the red zone on the meter (with a short delay), which means poor driving economy and hence should be avoided.

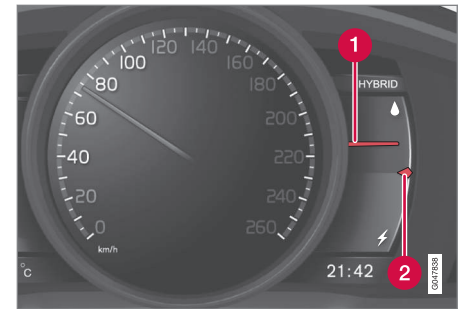
Average value

The average value slowly follows the instantaneous value and describes how the car has been driven most recently. The higher the pointers on the scale, the better the economy achieved by the driver.

Hybrid guide

This instrument shows the relationship between how much power is being taken from the electric motor and how much power is available.

To view this function, select the theme "Hybrid" or "Performance", see Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63).



- 1 Driver-requested power
- 2 Available electric motor power

Where the two pointers meet is the threshold for when the diesel engine starts/stops.

Driver-requested power

The large pointer indicates the amount of engine power requested by the driver by regulating the accelerator pedal. The higher the reading on the scale, the more power is requested by the driver in the current gear.

Available electric motor power











The small pointer indicates the amount of power currently available for the electric motor.



A large gap between the two pointers indicates a large power reserve.

Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols

The indicator symbols alert the driver that a function is activated, that the system is operating, or that an error or failure has occurred.

Indicator symbols

| Symbol | Specification |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
|  | ABL fault |
|  | Emissions system |
|  | ABS fault |
|  | Rear fog lamp on |
|  | Stability system |
|  | Stability system, sport mode |
|  | Engine preheater |
|  | Low level in fuel tank |
|  | Information, read display text |
|  | Main beam On |

| Symbol | Specification |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
|  | Left-hand direction indicator |
|  | Right-hand direction indicator |

ABL fault

The symbol illuminates if a fault has arisen in the ABL function (Active Bending Lights).

Emissions system

If the symbol illuminates after the engine has been started then it may be due to a fault in the car's emissions system. Drive to a workshop for checking. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

ABS fault

If this symbol illuminates then the system is not working. The car's regular brake system continues to work, but without the ABS function.

1. Stop the car in a safe place and turn off the engine.
2. Restart the engine.
3. If the symbol remains illuminated, drive to a workshop to have the ABS system checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

Rear fog lamp on

This symbol illuminates when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

Stability system

A flashing symbol indicates that the stability system is operating. If the symbol illuminates with constant glow then there is a fault in the system.

Stability system, sport mode

Sport mode allows for a more active driving experience. The system then detects whether the accelerator pedal, steering wheel movements and cornering are more active than in normal driving and then allows controlled skidding of the rear section up to a certain level before it intervenes and stabilises the car.

Engine preheater

This symbol illuminates during engine preheating. Preheating mostly takes place due to low temperature.

Low level in fuel tank

When the symbol illuminates the level in the fuel tank is low, refuel as soon as possible.

Information, read display text

When one of the car's systems does not behave as intended, this information symbol illuminates and a text appears on the information display. The message text is cleared with



the **OK** button, see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103), or it disappears automatically after a time (time depending on which function is indicated). The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.

NOTE

When a service message is shown, the symbol and message are cleared using the **OK** button, or disappear automatically after a time.

Main beam On

The symbol illuminates when main beam is on and with main beam flash.

Left/right-hand direction indicator

Both direction indicator symbols flash when the hazard warning flashers are used.







Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)
- Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols (p. 69)
- Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63)

Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols

The warning symbols alert the driver that an important function is activated, or that a serious error or a serious failure has occurred.

Warning symbols

| Symbol | Specification |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
|  | Parking brake applied |
|  | Airbags – SRS |
|  | Seatbelt reminder |
|  | Starter battery not charging |
|  | Fault in brake system |
|  | Warning |

Parking brake applied

This symbol illuminates with a constant glow when the parking brake is applied. The symbol flashes during application, and then changes over to a constant glow.

A flashing symbol in any other situation means that a fault has arisen. Read the message on the information display.

For more information, see Parking brake (p. 272).

Airbags – SRS

If this symbol remains illuminated or illuminates while driving, it means a fault has been detected in the seatbelt buckle, SRS, SIPS, or IC systems. Drive immediately to a workshop to have the system checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

Seatbelt reminder

This symbol flashes if someone in a front seat has not put on their seatbelt or if someone in a rear seat has taken off their seatbelt.

Starter battery not charging

This symbol illuminates during driving if a fault has occurred in the electrical system. Visit a workshop. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

Fault in brake system

If this symbol illuminates, the brake fluid level may be too low. Stop the car in a safe place and check the level in the brake fluid reservoir; see Brake and clutch fluid - level (p. 335).

If the brake and ABS symbols illuminate at the same time, there may be a fault in the brake force distribution system.

1. Stop the car in a safe place and turn off the engine.



2. Restart the engine.

- If both symbols extinguish, continue driving.
- If the symbols remain illuminated, check the level in the brake fluid reservoir, see Brake and clutch fluid - level (p. 335). If the brake fluid level is normal but the symbols are still illuminated, the car can be driven, with great care, to a workshop to have the brake system checked. Volvo recommends that you seek assistance from an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

If the brake fluid is under the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid.

The loss of brake fluid must be investigated by a workshop. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

If the BRAKE and ABS symbols are lit at the same time, there is a risk that the rear end will skid during heavy braking.

Warning


The red warning symbol illuminates when a fault has been indicated which could affect the safety and/or driveability of the car. An explanatory text is shown on the information display at the same time. The symbol remains visible until the fault has been rectified but the text message can be cleared with the **OK** button; see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103). The warning symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.


Action:

1. Stop in a safe place. Do not drive the car further.
2. Read the information on the information display. Implement the action in accordance with the message in the display. Clear the message using the **OK** button.

Reminder – doors not closed

If one of the doors is not closed properly then the information or warning symbol illuminates together with an explanatory image in the information display. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the door that is open.

 If the car is driven at a speed lower than approx. 7 km/h then the information symbol illuminates.

 If the car is driven at a speed higher than approx. 7 km/h then the warning symbol illuminates.

If the bonnet³ is not closed properly then the warning symbol illuminates together with an explanatory image in the information display. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the bonnet.

If the tailgate is not closed properly then the information symbol illuminates together with an explanatory image in the information display. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the tailgate.

Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)
- Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols (p. 68)
- Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63)

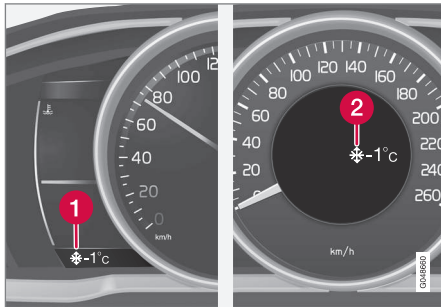
³ Only cars with alarm*.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



Outside temperature gauge

The display for the outside temperature gauge appears in the combined instrument panel.



- 1 Display for outside temperature gauge, digital instrument panel
- 2 Display for outside temperature gauge, analogue instrument panel

When the temperature lies between +2 °C to -5 °C a snowflake symbol illuminates in the display. This warns of icy roads. If the car has been stationary then the gauge may show a reading that is too high.

Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)

Trip meter

The trip meter display appears in the combined instrument panel.



Trip meter.

- 1 Display for trip meter

The two trip meters **T1** and **T2** are used for measuring short distances. The distance is shown in the display.

Turn the left stalk switch thumbwheel to show the required meter.

A long press (until the change occurs) on the left-hand stalk switch's **RESET** button resets the trip meter shown. For more information, see Trip computer - supplementary information (p. 111).

Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)

Clock

The clock display appears in the combined instrument panel.



Clock.

- 1 Display for showing the time

Set the clock

The clock can be adjusted in the menu system **MY CAR**, see **MY CAR** (p. 105).

Related information

- Combined instrument panel (p. 62)

Volvo Sensus

Volvo Sensus is the heart of your personal Volvo experience. It is Sensus that provides information, entertainment and functions to simplify your ownership.



When you are sitting in your car you want control, and in today's interconnected world, this includes information, communication and entertainment when it is most suitable for you. Sensus covers all our solutions that enable connection* to the outside world, at the same time providing you with intuitive control over all the car's capabilities.

Volvo Sensus combines and presents many functions in several of the car's systems on the centre console's display screen. With Volvo Sensus the car can be personalised by means of an intuitive user interface. Settings can be made in Car settings, Audio and media, Climate control, etc.

With the centre console buttons and controls or the steering wheel's right-hand keypad*

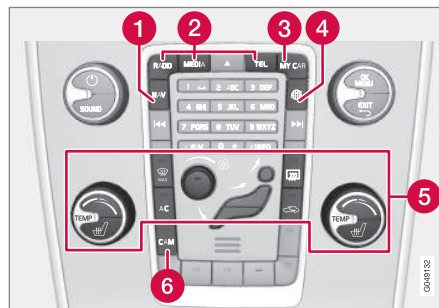
functions can be activated or deactivated and many different settings can be made.

With a press on **MY CAR** all settings related to the driving and control of the car are presented, such as City Safety, locks and alarm, automatic fan speed, setting the clock, etc.

With a press on the respective function **RADIO, MEDIA, TEL***, *, **NAV*** and **CAM*** other sources, systems and functions can be activated, e.g. AM, FM, CD, DVD*, TV*, Bluetooth*, navigation* and park assist camera*.

For more information about all functions/systems, see the relevant section in the owner's manual or its supplement.

Overview



Centre console control panel. The figure is schematic - the number of functions and layout of the

buttons both vary, depending on the equipment selected and the market.

- 1 Navigation* - **NAV**, see separate supplement.
- 2 Audio and media - **RADIO, MEDIA, TEL***, see separate supplement (Sensus Infotainment).
- 3 Car settings - **MY CAR**, see MY CAR (p. 105).
- 4 Internet-connected car - *, see separate supplement (Sensus Infotainment).
- 5 Climate control system (p. 115).
- 6 Park assist camera (p. 239) – **CAM***.

Related information

- Licenses (p. 394)



Key positions

The remote control key can be used to set the vehicle's electrical system in different modes/levels so that different functions are available; see *Key positions - functions at different levels* (p. 73).



Ignition switch with remote control key extracted/inserted.

NOTE

For cars with the Keyless* function the remote control key does not need to be inserted into the ignition switch but can be stored in e.g. a pocket. For more information on Keyless functions, see *Keyless drive** (p. 162).

Insert the remote control key

1. Hold the end of the remote control key with the detachable key blade and insert

the remote control key in the ignition switch.

2. Then press the remote control key in the lock up to its end position.

IMPORTANT

Foreign objects in the ignition switch can impair the function or destroy the lock.

Do not press in the remote control key incorrectly turned - hold the end with the detachable key blade, see *Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching* (p. 158).

Remove the remote control key

Push the remote control key, allow it to eject, then pull it out from the ignition switch.

Key positions - functions at different levels

In order to enable the use of a limited number of functions with the engine switched off, the car's electrical system can be set in 3 different levels (key positions) - 0, I and II - with the remote control key. Throughout this owner's manual these levels are described using the denomination "key positions".

The following table shows the functions available in each key position/level.



03 Instruments and controls



| Level | Functions |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Odometer, clock and temperature gauge are illuminated. • Power seats can be adjusted. • The audio system can be used for a limited time - see the Sensus Infotainment supplement. |
| I | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sunroof, power windows, 12V socket in the passenger compartment, navigation, phone, ventilation fan and wind-screen wipers can be used. <p>Current consumption loads the starter battery in this key position.</p> |

| Level | Functions |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| II | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The headlamps come on. • Warning/indicator lamps illuminate for 5 seconds. • Several other systems are activated. However, heating in seat cushions and the rear window can only be activated after the engine has been started. <p>This key position consumes a lot of current from the battery and should therefore be avoided!</p> |

Choosing key position/level

- **Key position 0** - Unlock the car - This means that the car's electrical system is at level 0.
- **Key position I** - With the remote control key fully inserted into the ignition switch⁴ - Briefly press **START/STOP ENGINE**.



NOTE

To reach level I or II **without** starting the engine - do **not** depress the brake/clutch pedal when these key positions are due to be selected.

- **Key position II** - With the remote control key fully inserted into the ignition switch⁴ - Give a long⁵ press on **START/STOP ENGINE**.
- **Back to key position 0** - To return to key position 0 from position II and I - Briefly press on **START/STOP ENGINE**.

Audio system

For information on audio system functions with remote control key removed, see the Sensus Infotainment supplement.

Starting and stopping the engine

For information about starting/stopping the engine, see Starting the engine (p. 254).

Related information

- Key positions (p. 73)

⁴ Not necessary for cars with the Keyless* function.

⁵ Approx. 2 seconds.



Seats, front

The car's front seats have different setting options for optimum seating comfort.



- 1 Lumbar support adjustment, turn the wheel⁶.
- 2 Forward/backward: lift the handle to adjust the distance to the steering wheel and pedals. Check that the seat is locked after changing position.
- 3 Raise/lower* front edge of seat cushion, pump up/down.
- 4 Adjust backrest rake, turn the wheel.
- 5 Raise/lower the seat, pump up/down.
- 6 Control panel for power seat*.

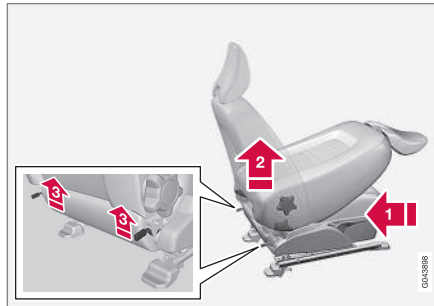
⁶ Also applies to power seat.

⁷ The sport seat backrest cannot be folded.

WARNING

Adjust the position of the driver's seat before setting off, never while driving. Make sure that the seat is in locked position in order to avoid personal injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

Lowering the front seat backrest⁷



The passenger seat backrest can be folded forward to make room for long loads.

- 1 Move the seat as far back/down as possible.
- 2 Adjust the backrest to an upright position.
- 3 Lift the catches on the rear of the backrest and fold it forward.

4. Push the seat forward so that the head restraint "locks" in under the glovebox. Raising takes place in reverse order.

WARNING

Grasp the backrest and make sure that it is properly locked after being folded up in order to avoid personal injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

Related information

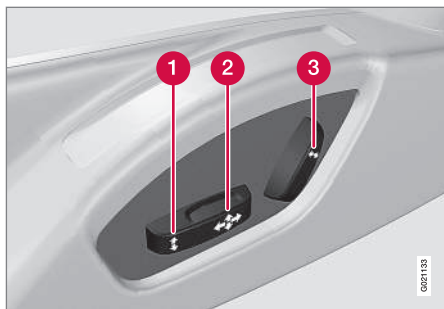
- Seats, front - electrically operated (p. 76)
- Seats, rear (p. 77)



Seats, front - electrically operated

The car's front seats have different setting options for optimum seating comfort. The power seat can be moved forward/backward and up/down. The front edge of the seat cushion can be raised/lowered. The backrest angle can be changed.

Power seat*



- 1 Front edge of seat cushion up/down
- 2 Seat forward/backward and up/down
- 3 Backrest rake

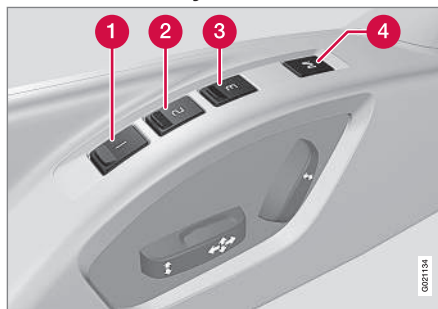
The power front seats have overload protection which is tripped if a seat is blocked by an object. If this happens, go to key position I or 0 and wait a short time before adjusting the seat again.

Only one movement (forward/back/up/down) can be made at a time.

Preparations

The seats can be adjusted for a certain time after unlocking the door with the remote control key without the key in the ignition switch. Seat adjustment is normally made in key position I and can always be made when the engine is running.

Seat with memory function*



The memory function stores settings for the seat and the door mirrors.

Store setting

- 1 Memory button
 - 2 Memory button
 - 3 Memory button
 - 4 Button for storing settings
1. Adjust the seat and the door mirrors.

2. Hold the button depressed to store settings while depressing one of the memory buttons.

Using a stored setting

Hold one of the memory buttons depressed until the seat and the door mirrors stop. If you release the button then the movement of the seat will stop.

Heated seats

For heated seats, see Heated front seats* (p. 122) and Heated rear seat* (p. 122).

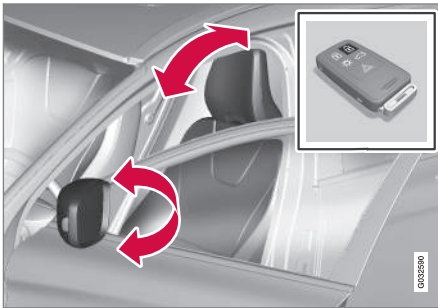
Related information

- Seats, front (p. 75)
- Seats, rear (p. 77)



Key memory* in remote control key⁸

All remote control keys can be used by different drivers to store the settings for the driver's seat and door mirrors⁹.



Proceed as follows in order to store the settings and use the key memory:

- Adjust the seat as you want it.
- Lock the car by pressing the lock button on the remote control key that you normally use. This stores the positions of the seat and door mirrors in the remote control key's memory¹⁰.
- Unlock the car (by pressing the unlock button on the **same** remote control key) and open the driver's door. The driver's seat and door mirrors will automatically adopt the positions that are stored in the

remote control key's memory (if the seat has been moved since you locked the car).

The key memory can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Emergency stop

If the seat accidentally begins to move, press one of the setting buttons for the seat or memory buttons in order to stop the seat.

Restarting to reach the seat position stored in the key memory is performed by pressing the unlock button on the remote control key. The driver's door must then be open.

WARNING

Risk of crushing! Make sure that children do not play with the controls. Check that there are no objects in front of, behind or under the seat during adjustment. Ensure that none of the rear seat passengers is in danger of becoming trapped.

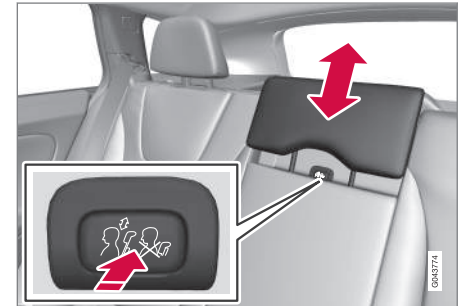
Related information

- Remote control key - functions (p. 154)

Seats, rear

The rear seat backrest and the outer seat head restraints can be folded. The centre seat head restraint can be adjusted to suit the height of the passenger.

Head restraint, centre seat, rear



Adjust the head restraint according to passenger height so that the whole of the back of the head is covered if possible. Slide it up as required.

To lower the head restraint again, the button (located in the centre between the backrest and head restraint, see illustration) must be pressed in while the head restraint is pressed down carefully.

⁸ For key memory for Keyless function, see Keyless drive* - key memory (p. 165).

⁹ Only if the car is equipped with power seat with memory and retractable power door mirrors.

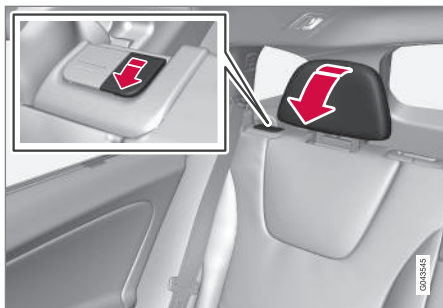
¹⁰ This setting does not affect settings that have been stored in the power seat's memory function.



03 Instruments and controls



Manual lowering of the outer head restraints, rear seat



Pull the locking handle closest to the head restraint to fold the head restraint forward. The head restraint is moved back manually until a "click" can be heard.

WARNING

The head restraints must be in locked position after being raised.

Lowering the rear seat backrest

IMPORTANT

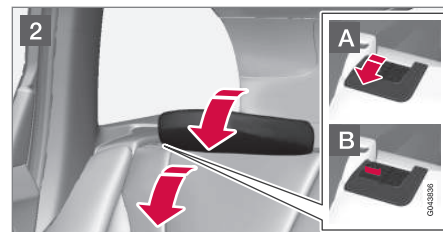
There must be no objects on the rear seat when the backrest is to be folded down. The seat belts must not be connected either. Otherwise there is a risk of damaging the rear seat upholstery.

The triple-section backrest can be folded in different ways.

NOTE

The front seats may need to be pushed forwards, and/or the backrests adjusted upwards, in order that the rear backrests can be folded forward fully.

- The left-hand section can be folded separately.
- The centre section can be folded separately.
- The right-hand section can only be folded together with the centre section.
- If the entire backrest is to be folded then the different sections should be folded separately.



- 1 If the centre backrest is being lowered - release and adjust the head restraint for the centre backrest, see the earlier section "Head restraint, centre seat, rear".
- 2 The outer head restraints are lowered automatically when the outer backrests are lowered. Pull up the backrest's locking handle **A** while folding the backrest forward at the same time. A red indicator on the lock catch **B** shows that the backrest is no longer locked in place.

NOTE

When the backrests have been lowered the head restraints must be moved forward slightly so as not to make contact with the seat cushion.

Raising takes place in reverse order.



NOTE

When the backrest has been raised, the red indicator should no longer be showing. If it is still showing then the backrest is not locked in place.

WARNING

Check that the backrests and head restraints in the rear seat are locked properly after being folded up.

Electrical lowering of the rear seat's outer head restraints*



1. The remote control key must be in key position **II**.
2. Press the button to lower the rear outer head restraints to improve rearward visibility.

WARNING

Do not lower the outer head restraints if there are any passengers using of the outer seats.

Move the head restraint back manually until a click is heard.

WARNING

The head restraints must be in locked position after being raised.

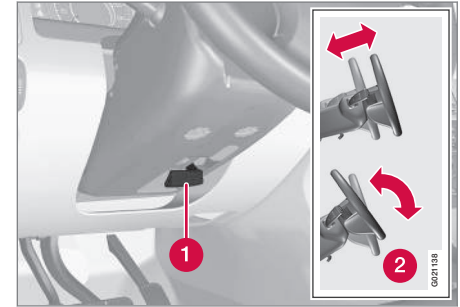
Related information

- Seats, front (p. 75)
- Seats, front - electrically operated (p. 76)

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted in different positions and has controls for horn and cruise control, as well as menu, audio and phone control.

Adjusting



Adjusting the steering wheel.

- 1 Lever - releasing the steering wheel
- 2 Possible steering wheel positions

The steering wheel can be adjusted for both height and depth:

1. Pull the lever towards you to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position that suits you.



03 Instruments and controls



3. Push back the lever to fix the steering wheel in place. If the lever is stiff, press the steering wheel lightly at the same time as you push the lever back.

! WARNING

Adjust the steering wheel and fix it before driving away.

With speed related power steering* the level of steering force can be adjusted, see Adjustable steering force* (p. 247).

Keypads*



Keypads in the steering wheel.

- 1 Cruise control* (p. 187)
Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- 2 Audio and phone control, see separate Sensus Infotainment supplement.

Horn



Horn.

Press the centre of the steering wheel to signal.

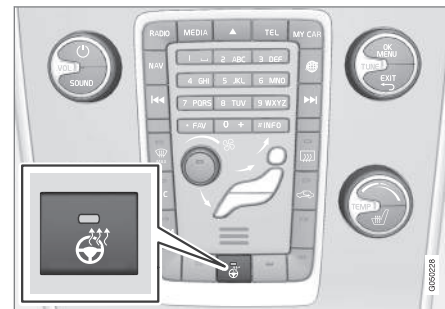
Related information

- Heating* of the steering wheel (p. 80)

Heating* of the steering wheel

The steering wheel can be heated with electric heating.

Function



Button position may vary depending on equipment selected and market.

Repeatedly **press the button** to switch between the following functions:

| Function | Indicator |
|--------------|--------------------------|
| Switched off | Button lamp extinguished |
| Heating | Button lamp illuminated |

Automatic steering wheel heating

With activated automatic start of steering wheel heating, the heating of the steering wheel starts when the engine is started. Automatic start takes place when the car is cold and the ambient temperature is below

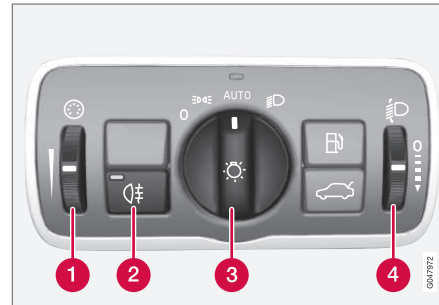


approx. 10 °C. Activate/deactivate the function in the menu system **MY CAR** (p. 105).

Light switches

The headlamp control activates and adjusts the external lighting. It is also used to adjust the display, instrument and passenger compartment lighting.

Overview, light switches




Overview, light switches.

- 1 Thumbwheel for adjusting display and instrument lighting as well as ambient lighting*
- 2 Button for rear fog lamp
- 3 Knob for daytime running lights and parking lamps
- 4 Thumbwheel¹¹ for headlamp levelling

Knob positions

i NOTE

The same lamps are used for daytime running lights and position/parking lamps front. The brightness is higher when the lamps are used as daytime running lights.

| Position | Specification |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0 | Daytime running lights ^A when the car's electrical system is in key position II or the engine is running. Main beam flash can be used. |
|  | Daytime running lights, side marker lamps front and position/parking lamps/side marker lamps rear when the car's electrical system is in key position II or the engine is running. Automatic switching to position/parking lamps/side marker lamps when the car is parked. Main beam flash can be used. |

03

¹¹ Not available for cars equipped with active Xenon headlamps*.



| Position | Specification |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AUTO | <p>Daytime running lights, side marker lamps front and position/parking lamps/side marker lamps rear during the day when the car's electrical system is in key position II or the engine is running.</p> <p>Automatic switching to dipped beam and position/parking lamps/side marker lamps in poor light conditions or when the windscreen wipers or rear fog lamps are activated.</p> <p>The tunnel detection (p. 84)* function is activated.</p> <p>The active high beam (p. 85)* function can be used.</p> <p>Main beam can be activated when dipped beam is switched on.</p> <p>Main beam flash can be used.</p> |

| Position | Specification |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | <p>Dipped beam and position/parking lamps/side marker lamps.</p> <p>Main beam can be activated.</p> <p>Main beam flash can be used.</p> |

A Fitted in or under the front bumper.

Volvo recommends that **AUTO** mode is used when the car is being driven, as long as traffic situations or weather conditions are unfavourable for the active high beam function*.

Instrument lighting

Different display and instrument lighting is switched on depending on key position; see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 73).

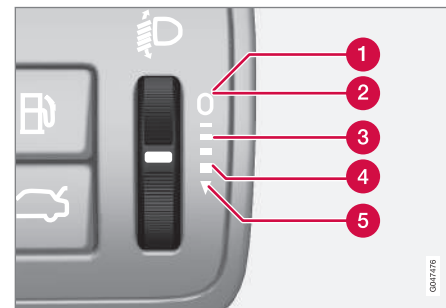
The display lighting is automatically subdued in darkness - the sensitivity is set with the thumbwheel.

The intensity of the instrument lighting is adjusted with the thumbwheel.

Headlamp levelling

The load in the car changes the vertical alignment of the headlamp beam, which could dazzle oncoming motorists. Avoid this by adjusting the height of the beam. Lower the beam if the car is heavily laden.

1. Leave the engine running, or have the car's electrical system in key position I.
2. Roll the thumbwheel up/down to raise/lower beam alignment.



Thumbwheel positions for different load cases.

- 1 Only driver
- 2 Driver and passenger in the front passenger seat
- 3 Occupants in all seats
- 4 Occupants in all seats and maximum load in the cargo area
- 5 The driver and maximum load in the cargo area

Cars with active Xenon headlamps* have automatic headlamp levelling and are therefore not equipped with the thumbwheel.




Position/parking lamps

Position/parking lamps are switched on with the headlamp control's knob.



Knob for headlamp control in the position for position/parking lamps.

Turn the knob to the position for  (number plate lighting is switched on at the same time).

If the car's electrical system is in key position **II** or the engine is running then the daytime running lights switch on instead of the front position/parking lamps.

When it is dark outside and the tailgate is opened the rear position/parking lamps illuminate to alert traffic behind. This takes place irrespective of what position the knob is in or what key position the car's electrical system is in.

Related information

- Light switches (p. 81)

Daytime running lights

With the knob for headlamp control in position **AUTO** and the car's electrical system in key position **II** or the engine running, the daytime running lights are activated automatically in good light conditions.

Daytime running lights during the day. DRL



Knob for headlamp control in **AUTO** position.

With the knob for headlamp control in **AUTO** position the daytime running lights (Daytime Running Lights - DRL) are activated automatically when the car is driven during the day. A light sensor on the top of the instrument panel changes from daytime running lights to dipped beam at twilight or when daylight becomes too weak. Switching to dipped beam also takes place if the windscreen wipers or rear fog lamps are activated.

! WARNING

This system help to save energy - it cannot determine in all situations when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in mist and rain.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with its lights in a correct state and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

Tunnel detection*

In markets without automatic dipped beam, tunnel detection activates dipped beam when driving into a tunnel. Dipped beam is deactivated approx. 20 seconds after the car has been driven out of the tunnel.

The tunnel detection function is available in cars with rain sensor*. The sensor detects the entrance to a tunnel and resets the lighting from daytime running lights to dipped beam. Approx. 20 seconds after the car has left the tunnel, the lighting returns to daytime running lights. If the car is driven into another tunnel within this time period then dipped beam is kept switched on. This avoids repeated changes to the car's light settings.

Note that the headlamp control's knob must remain in **AUTO** position for tunnel detection to work.

Related information

- Main/dipped beam (p. 84)
- Light switches (p. 81)

Main/dipped beam

With the knob for headlamp control in position **AUTO** and the car's electrical system in key position **II** or the engine running, the dipped beam is activated automatically in poor light conditions.

With the knob for headlamp control in position **☰** dipped beam is always switched on when the engine is running or when key position **II** is active.



Stalk switch and knob for headlamp control.


- ➔ Position for main beam flash
- ➔ Position for main beam

Dipped beam

With the knob in **AUTO** position, dipped beam is activated automatically at twilight or when daylight becomes too weak. Dipped beam is




also activated automatically if the windscreen wipers or rear fog lamps are activated.


With the knob in position  dipped beam is always switched on when the engine is running or when key position II is active.

Main beam flash

Move the stalk switch gently towards the steering wheel to the position for main beam flash. Main beam comes on until the stalk switch is released.

Main beam

Main beam can be activated when the knob is in position **AUTO**¹² or . Activate/deactivate main beam by moving the stalk switch towards the steering wheel to the end position and then releasing. Alternatively, the main beam can be deactivated by a light press of the stalk switch toward the steering wheel.

When main beam has been activated the  symbol illuminates in the combined instrument panel.

Auxiliary lamps*

If the car has auxiliary lamps, the driver can use the MY CAR menu system to choose whether they should be deactivated or switched on/off simultaneously with the main beam¹³, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Related information

- Active Xenon headlamps* (p. 87)
- Active high beam* (p. 85)
- Light switches (p. 81)
- Headlamps - adjusting headlamp pattern (p. 93)
- Tunnel detection* (p. 84)

Active high beam*

The Active High Beam function detects the headlamp beams of oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles in front, and switches the lighting from main beam to dipped beam. Xenon headlamps only dim the portion of the light beam that points directly to the vehicle. The lighting returns to main beam when the incoming light has stopped.

Active high beam - AHB

Active high beam (Active High Beam - AHB) is a function which uses a camera sensor at the top edge of the windscreen to detect the headlamp beams of oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles in front, and then switches from main beam to dipped beam. The function can also take streetlights into account.

Car with halogen headlamps

The lighting returns to main beam about a second after the camera sensor no longer detects the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights from vehicles in front.

Car with Xenon headlamps

Unlike what happens during conventional dimming, the light beam continues with main beam on both sides of oncoming traffic or vehicles ahead - only the part of the light

¹² When dipped beam is switched on.

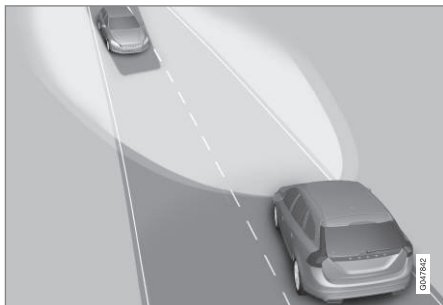
¹³ Auxiliary lamps must be connected to the electrical system by a workshop. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.



03 Instruments and controls



beam that points directly to the vehicle is dimmed.



Dipped beam directly toward oncoming vehicles, but continued main beam on both sides of the vehicle.

The lighting returns to full main beam about a second after the camera sensor no longer detects the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights from vehicles in front.

Activating/deactivating


AHB can be activated when the headlamp control's knob is in position **AUTO** (provided that the function has not been deactivated in the menu system MY CAR), see MY CAR (p. 105).



*Stalk switch and knob for headlamp control in **AUTO** position.*

The function can start while driving in the dark when the car's speed is 20 km/h or higher.

Activate/deactivate AHB by moving the left-hand stalk switch towards the steering wheel to the end position and then releasing. Deactivation when main beam is on means that the lights are reset directly to dipped beam.

When AHB is activated the  symbol turns white in the instrument's information display.



When main beam is activated, the symbol shines blue. This also applies for Xenon headlamps if the main beam is partially dimmed, i.e. as soon as the light beam shines with slightly more than dipped beam.


Manual operation

NOTE

Keep the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor free from ice, snow, mist and dirt.

Do not stick or attach anything to the windscreen in front of the camera sensor as this may reduce effectiveness or cause one or more of the systems dependent on the camera to stop working.

If the message **Active main beam Temporary unavailable** Switch manually is shown in the combined instrument panel's information display then you have to switch manually between main and dipped beam. However, the knob for headlamp control will still remain in position **AUTO**. The same applies if the message **Windscreen sensors blocked** See manual and the  symbol are shown. The  symbol goes out when these messages are shown.

AHB may be temporarily unavailable e.g. in situations with dense fog or heavy rain. When AHB becomes available again, or the windscreen sensors are no longer blocked, the message extinguishes and the  symbol illuminates.



! WARNING

AHB is an aid for using optimum light composition when conditions are favourable.

The driver always bears responsibility for manually switching between main and dipped beam when traffic situations or weather conditions so require.

! IMPORTANT

Examples of when manual switching between main and dipped beam may be required:

- In heavy rain or dense fog
- In freezing rain
- In snow flurries or slush
- In moonlight
- When driving in poorly lit built-up areas
- When the traffic ahead has weak lighting
- If there are pedestrians on or beside the road
- If there are highly reflective objects such as signs in the vicinity of the road
- When the lighting from oncoming traffic is obscured by e.g. a crash barrier
- When there is traffic on connecting roads
- On the brow of a hill or in a hollow
- In sharp bends.

For more information on the limitations of the camera sensor, see Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations (p. 222).

Related information

- Main/dipped beam (p. 84)
- Light switches (p. 81)

Active Xenon headlamps*


Active Xenon headlamps are designed to provide maximum illumination in bends and junctions and so provide increased safety.

Active Xenon headlamps ABL



Headlamp pattern with function deactivated (left) and activated (right) respectively.

If the car is equipped with active Xenon headlamps (Active Bending Lights – ABL) the light from the headlamps follows the steering wheel movement in order to provide maximum lighting in bends and junctions and so provide increased safety.

The function is activated automatically when the car is started (provided that it has not been deactivated in the menu system MY CAR), see MY CAR (p. 105). In the event of a fault in the function the  symbol illuminates in the combined instrument panel at



03 Instruments and controls



the same time as the information display shows an explanatory text and a further illuminated symbol.

| Symbol | Display | Specification |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | Headlamp system malfunction Service required | The system is disengaged. Visit a workshop if the message remains. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop. |

The function is only active in twilight or darkness and only when the car is moving.

The function¹⁴ can be deactivated/activated in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 105).

For headlamp pattern adjustment, see Headlamps - adjusting headlamp pattern (p. 93).

Cornering lights

Active Xenon headlamps are equipped with cornering lights that temporarily illuminate the area diagonally in front of the car in the direction the steering wheel is turned in a sharp bend, or in the direction for which the direction indicators are used.

The function is activated when main beam or dipped beam is used and the car's speed is lower than approx. 30 km/h.

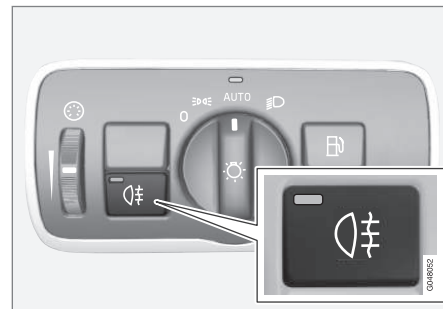
In addition, both cornering lights are switched on as a supplement to the reversing lamp during reversing.

Related information

- Main/dipped beam (p. 84)
- Active high beam* (p. 85)
- Light switches (p. 81)

Rear fog lamp

When visibility is reduced by fog the rear fog lamp can be used so that other road users shall notice vehicles in front at an early stage.



Button for rear fog lamp.

The rear fog lamp can only be switched on when key position II is active or the engine is running and the headlamp control's knob is in position **AUTO** or

Press the button for On/Off. The rear fog lamp's indicator symbol in the combined instrument panel and the light in the button both illuminate when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

The rear fog lamp is switched off automatically when the engine is switched off or when

¹⁴ Activated on delivery from the factory.



the headlamp control's knob is turned to position **0** or **☰☱**.

i NOTE

Regulations on the use of rear fog lamps vary from country to country.

Related information

- Light switches (p. 81)

Brake lights

The brake light automatically comes on during braking.

The brake light is switched on when the brake pedal is depressed. In addition, it is switched on when one of driving support systems Adaptive cruise control (p. 190), City Safety (p. 207) or Collision warning system (p. 214) brakes the car.

For information on emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers, see Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers (p. 271).

Hazard warning flashers

The hazard warning flashers warn other road users by means of all of the car's direction indicator lamps flashing simultaneously when this function is activated.

When the hazard warning flashers are activated both direction indicator symbols flash in the combined instrument panel.



Button for hazard warning flashers.

Press the button to activate the hazard warning flashers. Both direction indicator symbols in the combined instrument panel flash when the hazard warning flashers are used.

The hazard warning flashers are activated automatically when the car has been braked so suddenly that the emergency brake lights have been activated at a speed below 10 km/h. The hazard warning flashers remain on when the car has stopped and are deactivated automatically when the car is driven off



again or the button is depressed. For more information on emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers, see Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers (p. 271).

Related information

- Direction indicators (p. 90)

Direction indicators

The car's direction indicators are operated with the left-hand stalk switch. The direction indicator lamps flash three times or continuously, depending on how far up or down the stalk switch is moved.



Direction indicators.

Short flash sequence

- ➔ Move the stalk switch up or down to the first position and release. The direction indicator lamps flash three times. The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Continuous flash sequence

- ➔ Move the stalk switch up or down to the outer position.

The stalk switch remains in its position and is moved back manually, or automatically by the steering wheel movement.

Direction indicator symbols

For direction indicator symbols, see Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols (p. 68).

Related information

- Hazard warning flashers (p. 89)



Interior lighting

The passenger compartment lighting is activated/deactivated with the buttons in the controls above the front seats and the rear seat.



Controls in roof console for the front reading lamps and passenger compartment lighting.

- 1 Reading lamp, left-hand side
- 2 Reading lamp, right-hand side
- 3 Interior lighting

All lighting in the passenger compartment can be switched on and off manually within 30 minutes from when:

- the engine has been switched off and the car's electrical system is in key position **0**
- the car has been unlocked but the engine has not been started.

Front roof lighting

The front reading lamps are switched on or off by pressing the relevant button in the roof console.

Rear roof lighting



Rear roof lighting.

The lamps are switched on or off by pressing each respective button.

Courtesy lighting

Courtesy lighting (and passenger compartment lighting) is switched on and off respectively when a side door is opened or closed.

Glovebox lighting

Glovebox lighting is switched on and off respectively when the lid is opened or closed.

Vanity mirror lighting

The lighting for the vanity mirror (p. 143) is switched on and off respectively when the cover is opened or closed.

Lighting in the cargo area

The lighting in the cargo area is switched on and off respectively when the tailgate is opened or closed.

Automatic lighting

The switch for passenger compartment lighting has three positions for the lighting in the passenger compartment:

- **Off** – right-hand side pressed in, automatic lighting deactivated.
- **Neutral position** – automatic lighting activated.
- **On** – left-hand side pressed in, passenger compartment lighting switched on.

Neutral position

When the button is in neutral position the passenger compartment lighting is switched on and off automatically in accordance with the following.

The passenger compartment lighting is switched on and remains on for 30 seconds if:

- the car is unlocked with the remote control key or key blade, see Remote control key - functions (p. 154) or Detachable key blade - unlocking doors (p. 159)
- the engine has been switched off and the car's electrical system is in key position **0**.



Passenger compartment lighting is switched off when:

- the engine is started
- the car is locked.

The passenger compartment lighting comes on and remains on for two minutes if one of the doors is open.

If any lighting is switched on manually and the car is locked then it will be switched off automatically after two minutes.

Mood lights

When the normal passenger compartment lighting is switched off and the engine is running, a number of LEDs illuminate, including one in the ceiling lighting, in order to provide a low-light and enhance the mood while driving. This lighting goes out for a little while after the normal passenger compartment lighting when the car is locked. The brightness is controlled using the thumbwheel on the headlamp control (p. 81).

Home safe light duration

Home safe lighting consists of dipped beam, parking lamps, lamps in the door mirrors, number plate lighting, interior roof lighting as well as courtesy lighting.

Some of the exterior lighting can be kept switched on to work as home safe lighting after the car has been locked.

1. Remove the remote control key from the ignition switch.
2. Move the left-hand stalk switch toward the steering wheel to the end position and release it. The function can be activated in the same way as with main beam flash; see Main/dipped beam (p. 84).
3. Get out of the car and lock the door.

When the function is activated, dipped beam, parking lamps, door mirror lamps, number plate lighting, interior roof lamps and courtesy lighting are switched on.

The length of time for which the home safe lighting should be kept on can be set in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Related information

- Approach light duration (p. 92)

Approach light duration

Approach light duration consists of parking lamps, lamps in the door mirrors, number plate lighting, interior roof lighting as well as courtesy lighting.

Approach lighting is switched on with the remote control key, see Remote control key - functions (p. 154), and is used to switch on the car's lighting at a distance.

When the function is activated with the remote control, the parking lamps, door mirror lamps, number plate lighting, interior roof lamps and courtesy lighting are switched on.

The length of time for which the approach lighting should be kept on can be set in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Related information

- Home safe light duration (p. 92)



Headlamps - adjusting headlamp pattern

If the car is equipped with active Xenon headlamps and has the Active High Beam function then the headlamp pattern must be reset when changing from right to left-hand traffic, and vice versa.

Active Xenon headlamps*

No headlamp pattern adjustment is required for cars with the function Active High Beam*. The headlamp pattern is designed in such a way that oncoming traffic is not dazzled.

Headlamp pattern adjustment is required for cars with Active High Beam. The car must be stationary with the engine running when the headlamp pattern is shifted between right and left-hand traffic.

The headlamp pattern is changed in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 105).

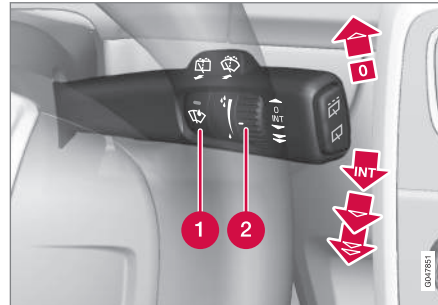
Halogen headlamps

No headlamp pattern adjustment needs to be made. The headlamp pattern is designed in such a way that oncoming traffic is not dazzled.

Wipers and washing

Wipers and washers clean the windscreen and rear window. The headlamps are cleaned with high-pressure washing.


Windscreen wipers¹⁵




Windscreen wipers and windscreen washers.

- 1 Rain sensor, on/off
- 2 Thumbwheel sensitivity/frequency


Windscreen wipers off

-  Move the stalk switch to position 0 to switch off the windscreen wipers.



Single sweep

-  Raise the stalk switch and release to make one sweep.

Intermittent wiping

-  Set the number of sweeps per time unit with the thumbwheel when intermittent wiping is selected.

Continuous wiping

-  The wipers sweep at normal speed.
-  The wipers sweep at high speed.

! IMPORTANT

Before activating the wipers during winter ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen in, and that any snow or ice on the windscreen is scraped away.

! IMPORTANT

Use plenty of washer fluid when the wipers are cleaning the windscreen. The windscreen must be wet when the windscreen wipers are operating.

Service position wiper blade

For cleaning the windscreen/wiper blades and replacement of wiper blades, see Wiper blades (p. 344) and Car washing (p. 365).


Rain sensor*

The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it

¹⁵ For replacing the wiper blades and service position wiper blades, see Wiper blades (p. 344). For filling washer fluid, see Washer fluid - filling (p. 346).




detects on the windscreen. The sensitivity of the rain sensor can be adjusted using the thumbwheel.

When the rain sensor is activated a lamp in the button illuminates and the rain sensor symbol  is shown in the combined instrument panel.

Activating and setting the sensitivity


When activating the rain sensor, the car must be running or the remote control key in position **I** or **II** while the windscreen wiper stalk switch must be in position **0** or in the position for a single sweep.

Activate the rain sensor by pressing the button . The windscreen wipers make one sweep.

Press the stalk switch up for the wipers to make an extra sweep.

Turn the thumbwheel upward for higher sensitivity and downward for lower sensitivity. (An extra sweep is made when the thumbwheel is turned upward.)

Deactivate

Deactivate the rain sensor by pressing the button  or move the stalk switch down to another wiper program.

The rain sensor is automatically deactivated when the remote control key is removed from

the ignition switch or five minutes after the engine has been switched off.



IMPORTANT

The windscreen wipers could start and be damaged in an automatic car wash. Switch off the rain sensor while the car is in motion or when the remote control key is in position **I** or **II**. The symbol in the combined instrument panel and the lamp in the button go out.

Washing the headlamps and windows



Washing function.

Washing the windscreen

Move the stalk switch toward the steering wheel to start the windscreen and headlamp washers.

The windscreen wipers will make several more sweeps and the headlamps are washed once the stalk switch has been released.

Heated washer nozzles*

The washer nozzles are heated automatically in cold weather to prevent the washer fluid freezing solid.

High-pressure headlamp washing*

High-pressure headlamp washing consumes a large quantity of washer fluid. To save fluid, the headlamps are washed automatically at every fifth windscreen wash cycle.

Reduced washing

If only approx. 1 litre of washer fluid remains in the reservoir and the message that you should fill the washer fluid is shown in the combined instrument panel, then the supply of washer fluid to the headlamps is switched off. This is in order to prioritise cleaning the windscreen and the visibility through it.



Wiping and washing the rear window



- 1 Rear window wiper – intermittent wiping
- 2 Rear window wiper – continuous speed

Press the stalk switch forward (see the arrow in the illustration above) to initiate rear window washing and wiping.

i NOTE

The rear window wiper is equipped with overheating protection which means that the motor is switched off if it overheats. The rear window wiper works again after a cooling period (30 seconds or longer, depending on the heat in the motor and the outside temperature).

Wiper – reversing

Engaging reverse gear while the windscreen wipers are on initiates intermittent rear window wiping¹⁶. The function stops when reverse gear is disengaged.

If the rear window wiper is already on at continuous speed, no change is made.

i NOTE

On cars with rain sensors, the rear wiper is activated during reversing if the sensor is activated and it is raining.

Related information

- Washer fluid - filling (p. 346)
- Washer fluid - quality and volume (p. 384)

Power windows

All power windows can be operated using the control panel for the driver's door - the control panels for the other doors operate their respective power window.



Driver's door control panel.

- 1 Switch for electric child safety locks* and disengaging rear power window buttons; see Child safety locks - electrical activation* (p. 173).
- 2 Rear window controls
- 3 Front window controls

¹⁶ This function (intermittent wiping when reversing) can be deactivated. Visit a workshop. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.



! WARNING

Check that no rear seat passengers are trapped when the windows are closed from the driver's door.

! WARNING

Check that children or other passengers are not trapped if the windows are closed, even when the remote control key is used.

! WARNING

If there are children in the car - remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by selecting key position **0** and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car. For information on key positions - see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 73).

Operating



Operating the power windows.

1 Operating without auto

2 Operating with auto

All power windows can be operated using the control panel for the driver's door - the control panels for the other doors can only each operate their respective power window. Only one control panel can be operated at a time.

In order for the power windows to be used, the key position must be at least **I** - see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 73). The power windows can be operated for a few minutes after the engine has been switched off and after the remote control key has been removed - although not after a door has been opened.

Closing of the windows is stopped and the window is opened if anything prevents its

movement. It is possible to override the pinch protection when closing has been interrupted, e.g. if there is ice forming. After two successive closing interruptions the pinch protection will be forced and the automatic function deactivated for a short while, now it is possible to close by continually holding the button pulled up.

i NOTE

One way to reduce the pulsating wind noise when the rear windows are open is to also open the front windows slightly.

Operating without auto

Move one of the controls up/down gently. The power windows move up/down as long as the control is held in position.

Operating with auto

Move one of the controls up/down to the end position and release it. The window runs automatically to its end position.

Operating with the remote control key and central locking

To remotely operate the power windows from the outside with the remote control key or from inside with central locking, see Remote control key with key blade (p. 152) and Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 168).



Resetting

If the battery is disconnected then the function for automatic opening must be reset so that it can work correctly.

1. Gently raise the front section of the button to raise the window to its end position and hold it there for one second.
2. Release the button briefly.
3. Raise the front section of the button again for one second.

WARNING

A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

Door mirrors

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door controls.

Door mirrors



Door mirror controls.

Adjusting

1. Press the **L** button for the left-hand door mirror or the **R** button for the right-hand door mirror. The light in the button illuminates.
2. Adjust the position with the joystick in the centre.
3. Press the **L** or **R** button again. The light should no longer be illuminated.

WARNING

The mirror on the driver's side is the wide-angle type to provide optimal vision. Objects may appear further away than they actually are.

Storing the position¹⁷

The mirror positions are stored in the key memory when the car has been locked with the remote control key. When the car is unlocked with the same remote control key the mirrors and the driver's seat adopt the stored positions when the driver's door is opened.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Angling the door mirror when parking¹⁷

The door mirror can be angled down for the driver to view the side of the road when parking for example.

- Engage reverse gear and press the **L** or **R** button.

When reverse gear is disengaged the mirror automatically returns to its original position after about 10 seconds, or earlier by pressing the button labelled **L** or **R** respectively.

¹⁷ Only in combination with power seat with memory; see Seats, front - electrically operated (p. 76).



Automatic angling of the door mirror when parking¹⁷

When reverse gear is engaged the door mirror is automatically angled down so that the driver can see the side of the road when parking for example. When reverse gear is disengaged the mirror automatically returns to its original position after a short time.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Automatic retraction when locking¹⁷

When the car is locked/unlocked with the remote control key the door mirrors are automatically retracted/extended.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Resetting to neutral

Mirrors that have been moved out of position by an external force must be reset electrically to the neutral position for electric retracting/ extending to work correctly:

1. Retract the mirrors with the **L** and **R** buttons.
2. Fold them out again with the **L** and **R** buttons.

3. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

The mirrors are now reset in neutral position.

Automatic dimming*

For the door mirrors to be fitted with this function requires that the interior rearview mirror also has automatic dimming, see Rearview mirror - interior (p. 99).

Retractable power door mirrors*

The mirrors can be retracted for parking/driving in narrow spaces:

1. Depress the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously (key position must be at least **I**).
2. Release them after approximately 1 second. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully retracted position.

Fold out the mirrors by pressing down the **L** and **R** buttons simultaneously. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully extended position.

Home safe and approach lighting

The lamp on the door mirrors illuminates when approach lighting (p. 92) or home safe lighting (p. 92) is selected.

Related information

- Rearview mirror - interior (p. 99)
- Windows and rearview and door mirrors - heating (p. 99)

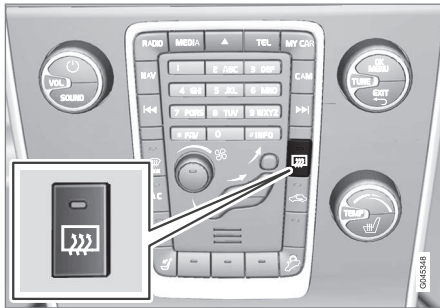
¹⁷ Only in combination with power seat with memory; see Seats, front - electrically operated (p. 76).



Windows and rearview and door mirrors - heating

The defroster is used to quickly remove misting and ice from the rear window and door mirrors.

Rear window and door mirror defrosters



Heating, rear window and door mirrors

The function is used to remove ice and misting from the rear window and door mirrors.

One press of the button starts the heating. The light in the button indicates that the function is active. Switch off the heating as soon as the ice/misting is cleared in order not to load the battery unnecessarily. However, the function is switched off automatically after a certain time.

The door mirrors and rear window are demisted/defrosted automatically if the car is started in an outside temperature lower than

+7 °C. Automatic defrosting can be selected in the menu system MY CAR, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Rearview mirror - interior

The interior rearview mirror can be dimmed with a control in the mirror's lower edge. Alternatively, the rearview mirror dims automatically.

Interior rearview mirror



1 Control for dimming

Manual dimming

Bright light from behind could be reflected in the rearview mirror and dazzle the driver. Use dimming with the dimming control when lights from behind are distracting:

1. Use dimming by moving the control in towards the passenger compartment.
2. Return to normal position by moving the control towards the windscreen.



Automatic dimming*

Bright light from behind is automatically dimmed by the rearview mirror. The control for manual dimming is not available on mirrors with automatic dimming.

The rearview mirror contains two sensors - one forward facing and one rearward facing - that work together to identify and eliminate dazzling light. The forward facing sensor detects ambient light, while the rearward facing sensor detects the light from vehicle headlights behind.

NOTE

If the sensors are obscured by e.g. parking permits, transponders, sun visors or objects in the seats or in the cargo area in such a way that light is prevented from reaching the sensors, then the dimming function of the interior rearview and door mirrors is reduced.

The compass (p. 100) can only be specified for a rearview mirror with automatic dimming.

Related information

- Door mirrors (p. 97)

Compass*

The rearview mirror contains an integrated display that shows the compass direction in which the front of the car is pointing.

Operation



Rearview mirror with compass.

The upper right-hand corner of the rearview mirror has an integrated display that shows the compass direction in which the front of the car is pointing. Eight different directions are shown with English abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (north east), **E** (east), **SE** (south east), **S** (south), **SW** (south west), **W** (west) and **NW** (north west).

The compass is activated automatically when the car is started or when key position II is active, see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 73). To deactivate/activate the compass - press in the button on the under-

side of the mirror using a paper clip for example.

Calibration

The compass may need calibrating to show the correct compass direction.

The earth is divided into 15 magnetic zones. The compass should be calibrated if the car is moved across several magnetic zones.

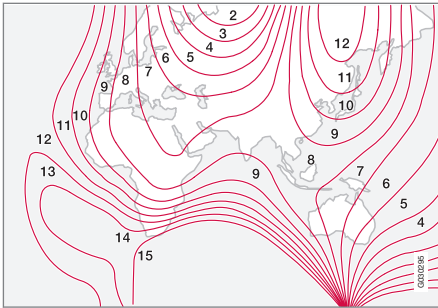
Proceed as follows to perform calibration:

1. Stop the car in a large open area free from steel structures and high-voltage power lines.
2. Start the car and switch off all electrical equipment (air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and ensure that all doors are closed.

NOTE

Calibration may fail or not start at all if electrical equipment is not switched off.

3. Hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror depressed approx. 3 seconds. The number of the current magnetic zone is shown.



Magnetic zones.

4. Press the button repeatedly until the required magnetic zone (1–15) is shown. See the map of magnetic zones for the compass.
5. Wait until the display returns to showing the character **C**, or hold the button on the bottom of the rearview mirror depressed for approx. 6 seconds (use e.g. a paper clip) until the character **C** is shown.
6. Drive slowly in a circle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h until a compass direction is shown in the display, indicating that calibration is complete. Then drive a further 2 circles to fine-tune calibration.
7. **Cars with heated windscreen***: If the character **C** is shown in the display when the heated windscreen is activated, perform the calibration in accordance with point 6 above with the heated windscreen activated, see Demisting and defrosting the windscreen (p. 125).
8. Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

Sunroof*

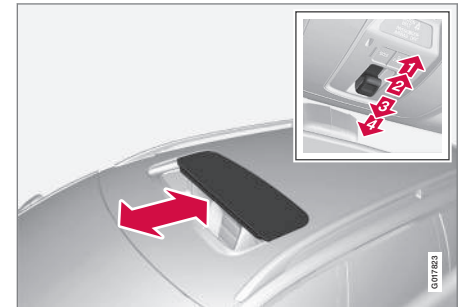
The sunroof can be operated with a control in the roof panel.

The sunroof's inner sunscreen is closed manually.

The sunroof has a wind deflector.

The sunroof controls are located in the roof panel. The sunroof can be opened vertically at the rear edge and horizontally. Key position **I** or **II** is required for the sunroof to be opened.

Horizontal opening



Horizontal opening, backward/forward.

- 1 Opening, automatic
- 2 Opening, manual
- 3 Closing, manual
- 4 Closing, automatic

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



Opening

For maximum sunroof opening, move the control back to the position for automatic opening and release.

Open manually by pulling the control backwards to the point of resistance for manual opening. The sunroof moves to maximum open position as long as the button is kept depressed.

Closing

Close manually by pushing the control forwards to the point of resistance for manual closing. The sunroof moves to closed position as long as the button is kept depressed.

WARNING

Risk of crushing when the sunroof is closed. The sunroof's pinch-protection function only operates during automatic closing, not manual.

Close automatically by pressing the control to the position for automatic closing and then release it.

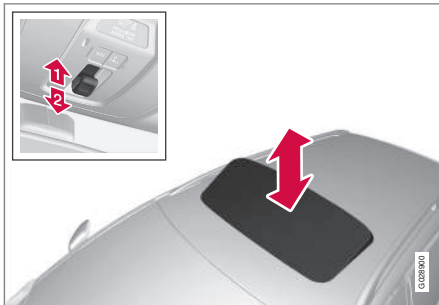
The power supply to the sunroof is switched off by selecting key position **0** and removing the remote control key from the ignition switch.

WARNING

If there are children in the car:

Remember to always switch off the power supply to the sunroof by selecting key position **0** and then take the remote control key with you when leaving the car. For information on key positions - see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 73).

Vertical opening



Vertical opening, raised at the rear edge.

- Open by pressing the rear edge of the control upward.
- Close by pulling the rear edge of the control down.

Closing using the remote control key or central locking button



One long press on the lock button closes the sunroof and all the windows, see Remote control key - functions (p. 154) and Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 168). The doors and the tailgate are locked. To interrupt closing, press the lock button again.

WARNING

If the sunroof is closed with the remote control key, check that no one risks being trapped.

Sunscreen

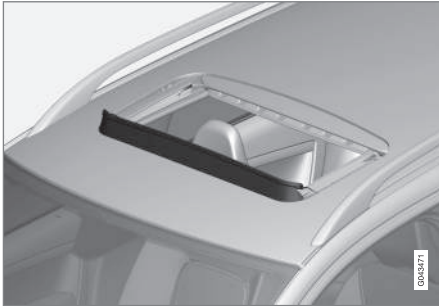
The sunroof features a manual, sliding interior sunscreen. The sunscreen slides back automatically when the sunroof is opened. Grip the handle and slide the screen forward to close it.



Pinch protection

The sunroof's pinch protection function is triggered if it is blocked by an object during automatic closing. If blocked, the sunroof will stop and automatically open to the previous position.

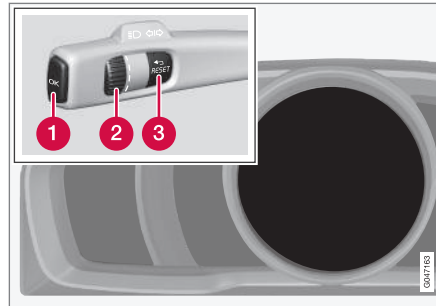
Wind deflector



The sunroof has a wind deflector that is folded up when the sunroof is in the open position.

Menu navigation - combined instrument panel

The left-hand stalk controls the menus (p. 104) shown on the information display in the combined instrument panel (p. 62). Which menus are shown depends on the key position (p. 73).



Display and controls for menu navigation.

- 1 **OK** – access to message list and message confirmation.
- 2 Thumbwheel – browse between menu options.
- 3 **RESET** – reset the active function. Used in certain cases to select/activate a function, see the explanation under each respective function.

If there is a message (p. 104) then it must be acknowledged with **OK** in order that the menus shall be shown.

Related information

- Messages - handling (p. 105)



03 Instruments and controls

Menu overview - combined instrument panel

Which menus are shown in the combined instrument panel's information display depends on the key position (p. 73).

Some of the following menu options require the function and hardware to be installed in the car.

Settings*

Themes

Contrast mode/Colour mode

Service status

Messages¹⁸

Oil level¹⁹

Preconditioning

Trip computer reset

Related information

- Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63)
- Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103)

Messages

When a warning, information or indicator symbol illuminates, a corresponding message appears on the information display.

| Message | Specification |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Stop safely ^A | Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop ^B . |
| Stop engine ^A | Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop ^B . |
| Service urgent ^A | Contact a workshop ^B to check the car immediately. |
| Service required ^A | Contact a workshop ^B to check the car as soon as possible. |
| See manual ^A | Read the owner's manual. |
| Book time for maintenance | Time to book regular service - contact a workshop ^B . |

| Message | Specification |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Time for regular maintenance | Time for regular service - contact a workshop ^B . The timing is determined by the number of kilometres driven, number of months since the last service, engine running time and oil grade. |
| Maintenance overdue | If the service intervals are not followed then the warranty does not cover any damaged parts - contact a workshop ^B . |
| Transmission Oil change needed | Contact a workshop ^B to check the car as soon as possible. |
| Transmission Reduced performance | The gearbox cannot handle full capacity. Drive carefully until the message clears ^C . If shown repeatedly - contact a workshop ^B . |

¹⁸ The number of messages is indicated in brackets.

¹⁹ Certain engines.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



| Message | Specification |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Transmission hot Reduce speed | Drive more smoothly or stop the car in a safe manner. Disengage the gear and run the engine at idling speed until the message clears ^C . |
| Transmission hot Stop safely Wait for cooling | Critical fault. Stop the car immediately in a safe manner and contact a workshop ^B . |
| Temporarily off^A | A function has been temporarily switched off and is reset automatically while driving or after starting again. |
| Low battery charge Power save mode | The audio system is switched off to save energy. Charge the battery. |

^A Part of message, shown together with information on where the problem has arisen.

^B An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

^C For more information regarding the automatic gearbox, see Automatic gearbox -- Geartronic (p. 264).

Related information

- Messages - handling (p. 105)
- Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103)

Messages - handling

Use the left-hand stalk switch to acknowledge and browse among messages (p. 104) that are shown in the information display of the combined instrument panel.

When a warning, information or indicator symbol illuminates, a corresponding message appears in the display at the same time. An error message is stored in a memory list until the fault has been rectified.

Press **OK** on the left-hand stalk switch to acknowledge a message. Scroll through messages with the thumbwheel (p. 103).

NOTE

If a warning message appears while you are using the trip computer, the message must be read (press **OK**) before the previous activity can be resumed.

Related information

- Menu overview - combined instrument panel (p. 104)

MY CAR

MY CAR is a menu source that handles many of the car's functions, e.g. City Safety, locks and alarm, automatic fan speed, setting the clock, etc.

Certain functions are standard, others are optional - the range also varies depending on the market.

Operation

Navigation in the menus is carried out using buttons in the centre console or with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.



- 1 **MY CAR** - opens the menu system MY CAR.
- 2 **OK/MENU** - press the button in the centre console or the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select/tick in the high-

lighted menu option or store the selected function in the memory.

- 3 **TUNE** - turn the knob in the centre console or the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to scroll up/down through the menu options.
- 4 **EXIT**

EXIT functions

Depending on the function the cursor is on when **EXIT** is pressed, and on the menu level, one of the following may occur:

- phone call is rejected
- current function is interrupted
- input characters are deleted
- most recent selections are undone
- leads up in the menu system.

Short and long press may produce varying results.

A long press leads to the highest menu level (main source view), from where all of the car's functions/menu sources can be accessed.

Menu options and search paths

For a description of the menu options and search paths in MY CAR, see the Sensus Infotainment supplement.

Trip computer

The car's trip computer can record, calculate and show information while driving.

- Trip computer - content (p. 108)

Checking and settings can be made immediately after the combined instrument panel is automatically illuminated in connection with unlocking. If none of the trip computer's controls are actuated within approx. 30 seconds after the driver's door has been opened then the instrument extinguishes, after which either key position **II** (p. 73) or engine starting is required in order to operate the trip computer.



NOTE

If a warning message appears when the trip computer is used then the message must first be acknowledged before the trip computer can be reactivated.

- Acknowledge the message by briefly pressing the indicator stalk **OK** button.

Group menus

The trip computer has two different group menus:

- Functions
- Heading in combined instrument panel

The trip computer's **functions** or **headings** are each listed in an infinite loop.



Related information

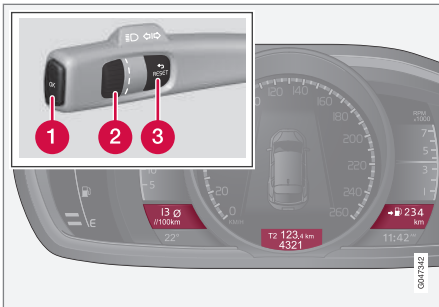
- Trip computer - trip statistics* (p. 112)
- Trip computer - supplementary information (p. 111)



Trip computer - combined instrument panel "Digital"

The car's trip computer can record, calculate and show information while driving.

The trip computer's menu is in a variable loop. One of the alternatives is that the trip computer's three displays extinguish - this also marks the start/end of the loop.



Information displays and stalk switch controls.

- 1 **OK** - Opens the loop with the trip computer's functions + Activates the selected option.
- 2 **Thumbwheel** - Opens the loop with the trip computer's headings + Scrolls through the options.
- 3 **RESET** - Undoes, zeroes or backs out of a function after making a selection.

Functions

Proceed as follows to open and check/adjust functions:

1. To ensure that no control is in the middle of a sequence - "Reset" them first with 2 presses on **RESET**.
2. Press **OK** - loop with all functions opens.
3. Browse through the functions with the **thumbwheel** and select/confirm with **OK**.
4. Finish by pressing **RESET** twice after completed checking/ adjustment.

The different functions of the trip computer are listed in the following table:



| Functions | Information |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Trip computer reset <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Average • Average speed | Note that this function does not reset both trip meters T1 and T2 - see the table under the next section "Headings" or the section "Resetting" (p. 111) for information on the process. |
| Messages | For more information, see Messages - handling (p. 105). |
| Themes | The appearance of the combined instrument panel (p. 62) is selected here. |
| Settings* | Select Auto On or Off . For more information, see General information about heaters (p. 137). |
| Contrast mode/Colour mode | Adjusting the combined instrument panel's brightness and colour intensity. |
| Preconditioning <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Direct start • - Symbol Timer 1 - leads to the menu for selecting time. • - Symbol Timer 2 - leads to the menu for selecting time. | For a description of programming the timer, see Timer - setting (p. 133). |
| Service status | Shows the number of months and mileage to next service. |
| Oil level^A | For more information, see Engine oil - checking and filling (p. 333). |

^A Certain engines.

Headings

Three trip computer headings can be displayed simultaneously - one in each "window" (see previous figure).

One of the heading combinations in the following table can be selected for constant dis-

play in the combined instrument panel. Proceed as follows to determine which:



03 Instruments and controls



1. To ensure that no control is in the middle of a sequence - "Reset" them first with 2 presses on **RESET**.
2. Turn the **thumbwheel** - selectable heading combinations are shown in a loop.
3. Stop on desired heading combination.

| Heading combinations | | | Information |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Battery status | Trip meter T1 + Meter reading | Distance to empty battery | • Long press on RESET resets trip meter T1. |
| Average | Trip meter T1 + Meter reading | Average speed | • Long press on RESET resets trip meter T1. |
| Instantaneous | Trip meter T2 + Meter reading | Distance to empty tank | • Long press on RESET resets trip meter T2. |
| Instantaneous | Meter reading | kmh<>mph | kmh<>mph - see section "Digital speed display" (p. 111). |
| | No trip computer information. | | This option extinguishes all three trip computer displays - it also marks the beginning/end of the loop. |

The combined instrument panel's heading combination for the trip computer can be changed to another option at any time during the journey. Proceed as follows:

- Turn the **thumbwheel** - stop on the desired heading.

Related information

- Trip computer - supplementary information (p. 111)
- Trip computer - trip statistics* (p. 112)



Trip computer - supplementary information

The car's trip computer can record, calculate and show information while driving. Supplementary information of several functions follows below.

Average

Average fuel consumption is calculated from the last resetting.

NOTE

There may be a slight error in the reading if a fuel-driven heater* has been used.

Average speed

The average speed is calculated for the driving distance driven since the last reset to zero.

Instantaneous

The information for current fuel consumption is updated continuously - approximately once per second. When the car is driven at low speed the consumption is shown per time unit - at a higher speed it is shown related to mileage.

Different units (km/miles) can be selected for the display - see the section "Change unit" (p. 111).

Range - distance to empty tank

The trip computer shows the approximate distance that can be driven with the fuel quantity remaining in the tank.

No guaranteed range remains when the heading **Distance to empty** shows "----".

– In which case, refuel as soon as possible.

The calculation is based on the average fuel consumption over the last 30 km and the remaining driveable fuel quantity.

NOTE

There may be a slight error in the reading if the driving style has been changed.

An economic driving style generally results in a longer driving distance. For more information on how fuel consumption can be influenced, see Volvo Car Corporation 's Environmental Philosophy (p. 19).

Distance to empty battery

No guaranteed range remains when the display shows "---- **km to empty battery**". The display shows the approximate distance that can be driven with the energy quantity remaining in the hybrid battery.

The calculation is based on the average fuel consumption with normally loaded car, with normal driving and not too many power consumers (stereo, AC, seat heating, etc).

NOTE

There may be a slight error in the reading if the driving style has been changed.

An economic driving style generally results in a longer driving distance. For more information on how energy consumption can be influenced, see Volvo Car Corporation 's Environmental Philosophy (p. 19).

Mileage for electric operation

In order to achieve the longest possible mileage for electric operation, the driver of an electric car also has to think about energy conservation. The more consumers there are (stereo, electric heating in windows/mirrors/seats, very cold air from the climate control system, etc.) that are active - the shorter the potential mileage.

NOTE

In addition to high current take-off in the passenger compartment, sudden acceleration and braking, high speed, heavy loads, low outside temperature and uphill gradients also reduce the possible driving distance.

Digital speed display

The speed is shown in the opposite unit (kmh/mph) in relation to the main instrument. If it is calibrated in mph then the trip com-



03 Instruments and controls



puter shows the corresponding speed in km/h and vice versa.

Resetting

Trip meter:

1. Turn with the **thumbwheel** to the heading combination containing the trip meter to be reset.
2. Give a long press on **RESET** - selected trip meter is zeroed.

Average speed & Average consumption:

1. Select function **Trip computer reset** and activate with **OK**.
2. Select one of the following options with the **thumbwheel** and activate with **OK**:
 - l/100 km
 - km/h
 - Reset both
3. Finish with **RESET**.

Change unit

You can change unit (km/miles) for distance and speed in the menu system My Car, see MY CAR (p. 105).



NOTE

In addition to in the trip computer, these units are also changed in Volvo's navigation system*.

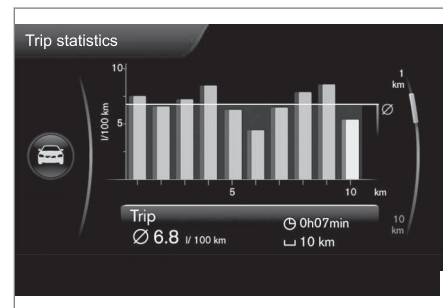
Related information

- Trip computer - trip statistics* (p. 112)

Trip computer - trip statistics*

Information is stored about completed trips containing average fuel consumption and average speed, which can be viewed in the centre console's screen as a bar chart.

Function



Trip statistics²⁰.

Fuel and electricity consumption are shown in separate graphs. Electricity consumption is "net" consumption, i.e. energy consumed minus regenerated energy created during braking.

Each bar symbolises 1 km or 10 km driven distance, depending on the scale selected - the bar at the far right shows the value for the current kilometre or 10 km.

Using the **TUNE** control, the scale for the bars can be changed between 1 km and

²⁰ The figure is schematic - layout may vary depending on car model or updated software.



10 km - the cursor on the far right changes position between up and down in relation to the scale selected.

Operation

Different settings can be made in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105)

- **Start new trip - ENTER** is used to delete all previous statistics, go back out of the menu by selecting **EXIT**.
- **Reset for every driving cycle** - check the box by selecting **ENTER** and go back out of the menu by selecting **EXIT**.

With the "**Reset for every driving cycle**" option checked, all statistics are deleted automatically once driving is complete and the car has been stopped for 4 hours. Trip statistics start again from zero the next time the engine is started.

If a new driving cycle is started before 4 hours have elapsed then the current period must first be deleted manually using the "**Start new trip**" option.

See also information on Eco guide (p. 67).

Related information

- Trip computer - supplementary information (p. 111)

04



CLIMATE CONTROL





General information on climate control

The car is equipped with electronic climate control (p. 121). The climate control system cools or heats as well as dehumidifies the air in the passenger compartment.

When the climate control system is activated it is recommended that the panel's air vents are fully open in order to obtain the most efficient air conditioning possible.

If there is no heat from the coolant then the electrically-driven heater is used primarily. In colder weather the car's fuel-driven heater can also be started.

The engine block heater, fuel-driven heater and electrically-driven heater are used as heat sources during driving. The heat source(s) used depends on the prevailing conditions, e.g. ambient temperature.

During driving the car automatically starts the systems needed to maintain comfort inside the passenger compartment - except in drive mode (p. 258) PURE, when climate comfort is deprioritised, e.g. **AC** and certain electrically-driven sources are switched off.

The climate in the car's passenger compartment can be preconditioned (p. 129) (acclimatised) before departure, in both hot and cold climates.

NOTE

Air conditioning (AC) (p. 124) can be switched off, but to ensure the best possible climate comfort in the passenger compartment, and to prevent the windows from misting, it should always be switched on.

To bear in mind

- To ensure that the air conditioning works optimally, the side windows and sunroof* should be closed.
- Total airing function (p. 169) opens/closes all side windows simultaneously and can be used for example to quickly air the car during hot weather.
- Remove ice and snow from the climate control system air intake (the grille between the bonnet and the windscreen).
- When running at idling speed, preconditioning or charging the hybrid battery (p. 293) in hot weather, condensation from the air conditioning may drip under the car. This is normal.
- When the engine requires full power, e.g. for full acceleration or driving uphill with a trailer, the air conditioning can be temporarily switched off. There may then be a temporary increase in temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Remove misting on the insides of the windows primarily by using the defroster function (p. 125). To reduce the risk of

misting, keep the windows clean and use window cleaner.

Related information

- Actual temperature (p. 116)
- Menu settings - climate control (p. 118)
- Electronic climate control - ECC (p. 121)
- Air distribution in the passenger compartment (p. 119)
- Air cleaning (p. 116)



04 Climate control

Actual temperature

The temperature you select in the passenger compartment corresponds to the physical experience with reference to factors such as air speed, humidity and solar radiation etc. in and around the car.

The system includes a sun sensor (p. 116) which detects on which side the sun is shining into the passenger compartment. This means that the temperature can differ between the right and left-hand air vents despite the controls being set for the same temperature on both sides.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)
- Temperature control in the passenger compartment (p. 124)

Sensors - climate control

The climate control system has a number of sensors to help control the temperature (p. 116) in the car.

- The sun sensor is located on the top side of the dashboard.
- The temperature sensor for the passenger compartment is located below the climate control panel.
- The outside temperature sensor is located in the door mirror.
- The humidity sensor* is located by the interior rearview mirror.



NOTE

Do not cover or block the sensors with clothing or other objects.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)

Air cleaning

The interior in a passenger compartment is designed to be pleasant and comfortable, even for people with contact allergies and for asthma sufferers.

- Passenger compartment filter (p. 117)
- Material in the passenger compartment (p. 118)
- Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP) (p. 117)*
- Interior Air Quality System (IAQS) (p. 118)*

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)



Air cleaning - passenger compartment filter

All air entering the car's passenger compartment is cleaned with a filter.

The filter must be replaced at regular intervals. Follow the Volvo Service Programme for the recommended replacement intervals. If the car is used in a severely contaminated environment, it may be necessary to replace the filter more often.

NOTE

There are different types of passenger compartment filter. Make sure that the correct filter is fitted.

Related information

- Air cleaning (p. 116)

Air cleaning - Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)*

CZIP comprises a series of modifications that keep the passenger compartment even clearer from allergy and asthma-inducing substances.

The following is included:

- An enhanced fan function that means that the fan starts when the car is opened with the remote control key. The fan fills the passenger compartment with fresh air. The function starts when required and is disengaged automatically after a time or when one of the passenger compartment doors is opened.
- The air quality system IAQS (p. 118) is a fully automatic system that cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone.

NOTE

To keep the CZIP standard in cars with CZIP the IAQS filter must be changed after 15 000 km or once per year depending on whichever occurs first. However, up to 75 000 km over 5 years. In cars without CZIP and where the customer does not want to keep the CZIP standard the IAQS filter must be changed at a regular service.

For more information on CZIP, see the brochure included with the purchase of the car.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)
- Air cleaning (p. 116)



Air cleaning - IAQS*

The air quality system IAQS separates gases and particles to reduce the levels of odours and pollution in the passenger compartment.

If the outside air is contaminated then the air intake is closed and the air is recirculated.

It is possible to activate/deactivate the function in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

NOTE

The air quality sensor must always be enabled to ensure the best air in the passenger compartment.

In a cold climate recirculation is limited so as to prevent misting.

In the event of misting, the air quality sensor should be disengaged, and the defroster functions for the windscreen and side windows, as well as the rear window, should be used.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)
- Air cleaning (p. 116)
- Air cleaning - Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)* (p. 117)

Air cleaning - material

Tested materials have been developed in order to minimise the quantity of dust in the passenger compartment and to contribute to making the passenger compartment easier to keep clean.

The carpets in both the passenger compartment and the cargo area are removable and easy to remove and clean. Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo to clean the interior (p. 367).

Related information

- Air cleaning (p. 116)

Menu settings - climate control

It is possible to activate/deactivate or change the default settings for six of the climate control system's functions via the centre console.

- Fan level during automatic climate control (p. 123).
- Recirculation timer (p. 125).
- Automatic start of rear window defroster (p. 99).
- Interior air quality system (p. 118)*.
- Automatic start of seat heating driver (p. 122).
- Automatic start of steering wheel heating (p. 80).

More information is available in the description of the menu system (p. 105).

The climate control system's functions can be reset to default settings in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

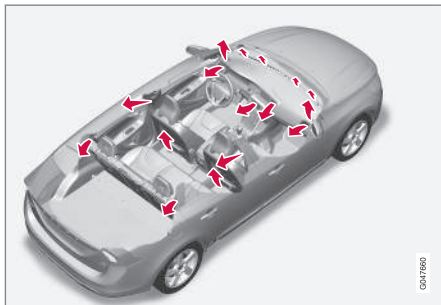
Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)



Air distribution in the passenger compartment

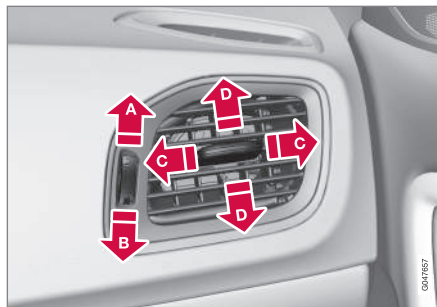
The incoming air is divided between a number of different vents in the passenger compartment.



Air distribution is fully automatic in **AUTO** mode.

If necessary it can be controlled manually; see the air distribution table (p. 127).

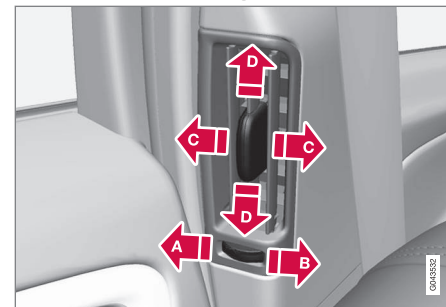
Air vents in the dashboard



- A** Open
- B** Closed
- C** Lateral airflow
- D** Vertical airflow

Aim the outer vents at the side windows to remove misting.

Air vents in the door pillars



- A** Closed
- B** Open
- C** Lateral airflow
- D** Vertical airflow

Aim the vents at the windows to remove misting in cold weather.

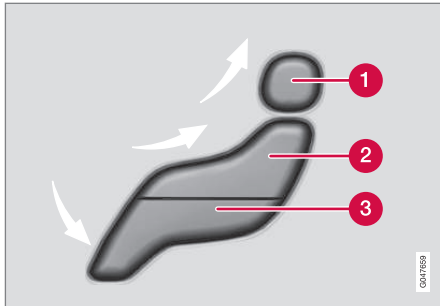
Aim the vents into the passenger compartment to maintain a comfortable climate in the rear seat in hot weather.

i NOTE

Remember that small children may be sensitive to air flows and draughts.

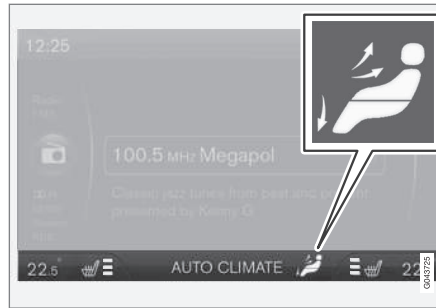


Air distribution



- 1 Air distribution - defroster windscreen
- 2 Air distribution - air vent instrument panel
- 3 Air distribution - ventilation floor

The figure consists of three buttons. When pressing the buttons the corresponding figure is illuminated in the display screen (see following figure) and an arrow in front of each part of the figure shows the air distribution that is selected. For more information, see the air distribution table (p. 127).



The selected air distribution is shown in the centre console display screen.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)
- Auto-regulation (p. 123)
- Air distribution - recirculation (p. 125)

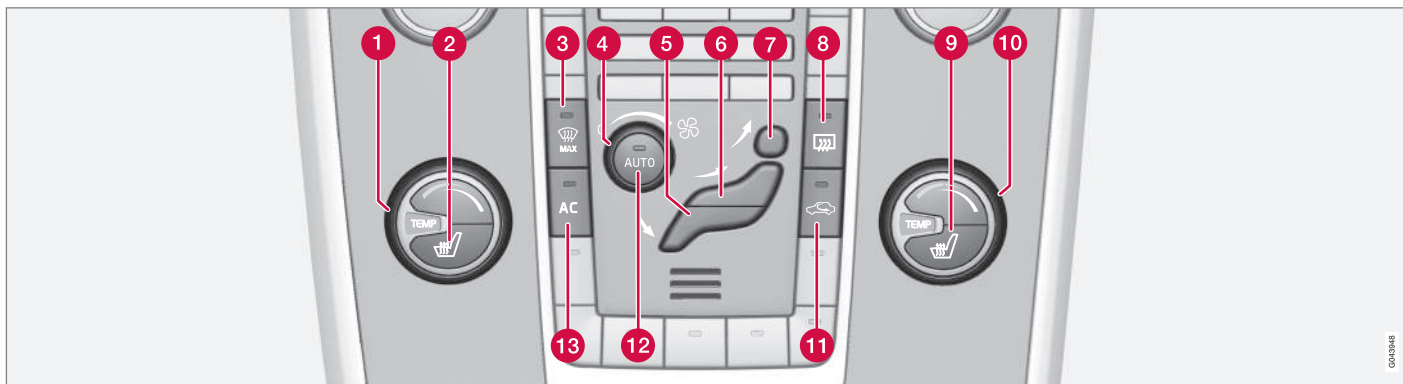


Electronic climate control - ECC

ECC (Electronic Climate Control) maintains the temperature selected in the passenger

compartment and can be set separately for the driver's side and passenger side.

The auto function is used to automatically control temperature, air conditioning, fan speed, recirculation and air distribution.



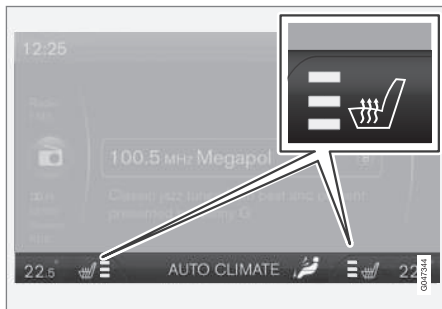
- 1 Temperature control (p. 124), left-hand side
- 2 Electrically heated front seat (p. 122), left side
- 3 Max. defroster (p. 125)
- 4 Fan (p. 123)
- 5 Air distribution (p. 119) - ventilation floor
- 6 Air distribution - air vent instrument panel
- 7 Air distribution - defroster windscreen
- 8 Rear window and door mirror defrosters (p. 99)
- 9 Electrically heated front seat (p. 122), right side
- 10 Temperature control (p. 124), right-hand side
- 11 Recirculation (p. 125)
- 12 **AUTO** - Automatic climate control (p. 123)
- 13 **AC** - Air conditioning on/off (p. 124)



04 Climate control

Heated front seats*

The front seat heating has three positions for increasing the comfort for driver and passenger when it is cold.



Current heat level is shown in the centre console display screen.



Press the button repeatedly in order to activate the function:

- Highest heat level - three orange fields illuminate in the centre console's screen (see figure above).
- Lower heat level - two orange fields illuminate in the screen.

- Lowest heat level - one orange field illuminates in the screen.
- Switch off the heat - no field illuminates.

WARNING

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats. Otherwise they may suffer burn injuries.

Automatic start of driver's seat heating

With the automatic start of the driver's seat heating activated, the driver's seat will have the highest heat level when the engine is started.

Automatic start takes place when the car is cold and the ambient temperature is lower than approx. +7 °C.

It is possible to activate/deactivate the function in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)
- Heated rear seat* (p. 122)

Heated rear seat*

The heating for the rear seat's¹ outer positions has three positions for increasing the comfort for passengers when it is cold.



Current heat level is shown in the pushbutton's lamps.

Press the button repeatedly in order to activate the function:

- Highest heat level - three lamps illuminate.
- Lower heat level - two lamps illuminate.
- Lowest heat level - one lamp illuminates.
- Switch off the heat - no lamp illuminates.



WARNING

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats. Otherwise they may suffer burn injuries.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)
- Heated front seats* (p. 122)

Fan

The fan should always be activated in order to avoid misting on the windows.

NOTE

If the fan is fully switched off then the air conditioning is not engaged - which can cause a risk of misting on the windows.

Fan knob



Turn the knob to increase or decrease fan speed. If **AUTO** is selected, then the fan speed is regulated automatically (p. 123) - the fan speed previously set is disengaged.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)
- Electronic climate control - ECC (p. 121)

Auto-regulation

The auto function automatically regulates temperature (p. 124), air conditioning (p. 124), fan speed (p. 123), recirculation (p. 125) and air distribution (p. 119).



If you select one or more manual functions, the other functions continue to be controlled automatically. All manual settings are disengaged when **AUTO** is pressed. The display screen

shows **AUTO CLIMATE**.

Fan speed in automatic mode can be set in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)

¹ Heated rear seat is not specified with the option for integrated two-stage booster seat (p. 47).



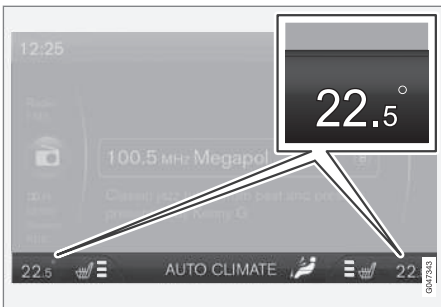
04 Climate control

Temperature control in the passenger compartment

When the car is started, the most recent temperature setting is resumed.

NOTE

Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher or lower temperature than the actual desired temperature.



Current temperature for each side is shown in the centre console's display screen.



The temperature can be adjusted with the knob - separately for the driver's side and the passenger side.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)
- Actual temperature (p. 116)
- Electronic climate control - ECC (p. 121)

Air conditioning

The air conditioning cools and dehumidifies incoming air as required.



In drive mode (p. 258) PURE the **AC** is preset not to start.

When the lamp in the **AC** button illuminates, the air conditioning is controlled by the system's automatic function.

tion.

When the lamp in the **AC** button is switched off the air conditioning is disconnected. Other functions are still controlled automatically. When the max. defroster function (p. 125) is activated, the air conditioning is switched on automatically so that the air is dehumidified at the maximum setting.



Demisting and defrosting the windscreen

Max. defroster is used to quickly remove misting and ice from the windscreen and side windows.



Air flowing to the windows. The light in the defroster button illuminates when the function is active.

The following also takes place in order to provide maximum dehumidification in the passenger compartment:

- the air conditioning is automatically engaged
- recirculation and the air quality system are automatically disengaged.

NOTE

The noise level increases as the fan is operating at max.

When the defroster is switched off the climate control returns to the previous settings.

In drive mode PURE, activation of the defroster function may cause the internal combustion engine to start and change to drive mode (p. 258) HYBRID.

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)

Air distribution - recirculation

Select recirculation to shut out bad air, exhaust gases etc. from the passenger compartment, i.e. no outside air is taken into the car when this function is activated.



When recirculation is engaged the orange lamp in the button illuminates.



IMPORTANT

If the air in the car recirculates for too long, there is a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

Timer

With the timer function activated the system will exit manually activated recirculation mode according to a time that depends on the outside temperature. This reduces the risk of ice, misting and bad air.

It is possible to activate/deactivate the function in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).



NOTE

When max. defroster is selected, recirculation is always deactivated.



04 Climate control







Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)
- Air distribution in the passenger compartment (p. 119)
- Air distribution - table (p. 127)



Air distribution - table





Three buttons are used to select the distribution (p. 119) of the air.

| | Air distribution | Use |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  G047420 | Air to windows. Some air flows from the air vents. The air is not recirculated. Air conditioning is always engaged. | to remove ice and misting quickly. |
|  G047420 | Air to windscreen, via defroster vent, and side windows. Some air flows from the air vents. | to prevent misting and icing in a cold and humid climate, (not at too low fan speed to enable this). |
|  G047420 | Airflow to the windows and from the dashboard air vents. | to ensure good comfort in warm, dry weather. |
|  G047420 | Airflow to the head and chest from dashboard air vents. | to ensure efficient cooling in warm weather. |



04 Climate control



| | Air distribution | Use |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Air to the floor and windows. Some air flows from the dashboard air vents. | to ensure comfortable conditions and good demisting in cold or humid weather. |
|  | Air to floor and from dashboard air vents. | in sunny weather with cool outside temperatures. |
|  | Air to floor. Some air flows to the dashboard air vents and windows. | to direct heat or cold to the floor. |
|  | Airflow to windows, from dashboard air vents and to the floor. | to provide cooler air along the floor or warmer air higher up in cold weather or hot, dry weather. |

04

Related information

- General information on climate control (p. 115)
- Air distribution - recirculation (p. 125)



General information about preconditioning

The climate in the car's passenger compartment can be preconditioned (p. 129) (acclimatised) before departure, in both hot and cold climates.

With preconditioning of the V60 Plug-in Hybrid the energy needs during the journey are reduced - the electricity mileage is extended. For this reason, use preconditioning to enable the use of the battery power² for driving.

NOTE

During preconditioning of the passenger compartment, the car works to reach comfort temperature and not the temperature set in the climate control system.

Warming-up includes the passenger compartment, windows and front seats if desired.

When the passenger compartment is being cooled (when the car is not plugged into the mains power circuit)* energy is drawn from the hybrid battery, correspondingly reducing mileage on electricity.

NOTE

The car's doors and windows should be closed during the preconditioning of the passenger compartment.

Related information

- Preconditioning - setting (p. 130)

Preconditioning the car

Preconditioning of the car is possible when it is plugged into the mains power circuit (p. 293).

- In a cold climate the fuel-driven heater heats both the engine and the passenger compartment - the electrically-driven heater only heats the passenger compartment before departure.
- In a hot climate the AC system cools the passenger compartment.

Preconditioning the car reduces wear.

Condensation may form during preconditioning, see General information about preconditioning (p. 129).

NOTE

Preconditioning is possible even when the car is not connected to the mains.*

NOTE

During preconditioning of the passenger compartment, the car works to reach comfort temperature and not the temperature set in the climate control system.

² If the car is cooled when it is not plugged into the mains power circuit then preconditioning draws energy from the hybrid battery.



04 Climate control



NOTE

The compressor can operate and cool the hybrid battery even when passenger compartment cooling is not selected or required. The compressor emits noise.

Select from the following:

- parking inside
- parking outside.

Preconditioning can be activated:

- directly (p. 132) via the information display, remote control key* or mobile*
- with timer (p. 133).

NOTE

Volvo recommends that you activate preconditioning via the timer, and then have the car connected to the mains power circuit (p. 130).

Related information

- Preconditioning - messages (p. 135)

Preconditioning - setting

The car can be preconditioned (p. 129) both when connected and not connected to the mains power circuit.*

Select from the following:

- Parking inside (p. 130)
- Parking outside (p. 131).

When the car is plugged into the mains power circuit

- Heating/cooling can last up to 50 minutes.

Seat and steering wheel heating can be activated during preconditioning.

When the car is not plugged into the mains power circuit*

- Heating can last up to 50 minutes.
- Cooling takes place for 2-3 minutes.

Related information

- Charging current (p. 286)

Preconditioning - parking inside

*With the **Indoor parking** option the electrically-driven heater is activated during preconditioning, see page (p. 129).*



If you select the **Indoor parking** setting then the fuel-driven heater is deactivated during preconditioning.


This heating will have a slightly lower performance than the **Outdoor parking** setting in outside temperatures lower than 5 °C.

NOTE

The car must be connected to the mains power circuit before the electrically-driven heater can be activated.

1. Press **OK** to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Preconditioning** and select with **OK**.
3. If the setting **Indoor parking** has already been made then the symbol for this is shown in the display, in which case continue from point 7.
4. If **Outdoor parking** is selected then the symbol for this (p. 131) is shown instead. Scroll with the thumbwheel to the symbol and select with **OK**.



5. Scroll forward in the next menu to **Indoor parking** and select with **OK**.
6. Go back in the menu with **RESET**.
7. Select whether or not seat and steering wheel heating³ should be activated. Scroll with the thumbwheel to  and select with **OK**.
8. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Driver seat** or **Passenger seat** and select with the **OK** button if they should be activated⁴ during preconditioning.
9. Exit the menu with **RESET**.

WARNING

Do not use the fuel-driven auxiliary heater indoors in unventilated areas. Exhaust fumes are given off.

Related information

- Preconditioning - setting (p. 130)

Preconditioning - parking outside

With the **Outdoor parking** option, both the electrically-driven heater and the fuel-driven heater⁵ are activated during preconditioning (p. 129).



With the **Outdoor parking** option, in addition to the electrically-driven heater, the fuel-driven heater is also permitted during preconditioning.


WARNING

Do not use the fuel-driven auxiliary heater indoors in unventilated areas. Exhaust fumes are given off.

NOTE

The car can be started and driven even when the fuel-driven auxiliary heater is running.

1. Press **OK** to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Preconditioning** and select with **OK**.
3. If the setting **Outdoor parking** has already been made then the symbol for this is shown in the display, in which case continue from point 7.

4. If **Indoor parking** is selected then the symbol for this (p. 130) is shown instead. Scroll with the thumbwheel to the symbol and select with **OK**.
5. Scroll forward in the next menu to **Outdoor parking** and select with **OK**.
6. Go back in the menu with **RESET**.
7. Select whether or not seat and steering wheel heating⁶ should be activated. Scroll with the thumbwheel to  and select with **OK**.
8. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Driver seat** or **Passenger seat** and select with the **OK** button if they should be activated⁶ during preconditioning.
9. Exit the menu with **RESET**.

Related information

- Preconditioning - setting (p. 130)

³ Seat and steering wheel heating can only be activated when the car is plugged into the mains power circuit.

⁴ Tick the box to activate.

⁵ The fuel-driven heater is not activated if the outside temperature exceeds 15 °C.

⁶ Seat and steering wheel heating can only be activated when the car is plugged into the mains power circuit.



04 Climate control

Preconditioning - direct start

Preconditioning of the car can be started directly.

Direct start can be performed via:

- Information display
- remote control key*
- mobile*.

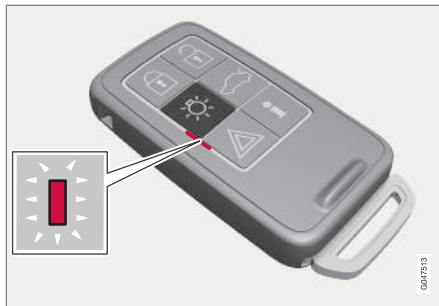
NOTE

In the event of direct start of preconditioning, Volvo recommends that you activate via the remote control key or mobile.

Direct start via the information display


1. Press **OK** to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Preconditioning** and select with **OK**.
3. Scroll forward in the next menu to **Direct start** in order to activate the preconditioning and select with **OK**.
4. Exit the menu with **RESET**.


Direct start via the remote control key*



Indicator lamp on remote control key with PCC*.

Preconditioning can be activated via the remote control key:

- Hold the button for approach lighting  depressed for 2 seconds.
Hazard warning flashers provide information in accordance with the following:
 - 5 short flashes followed by a constant glow for approx. 3 seconds - the signal has reached the car and preconditioning has been activated.
 - 5 short flashes - the signal has reached the car but preconditioning has not been activated.
 - Hazard warning flashers remain switched off - the signal has not reached the car.

If the button for information  is depressed when preconditioning is active then the indicator lamp will show the status for this - at the same time the car's lock status (p. 156) is shown. While the status is being investigated the indicator lamp emits a pair of short flashes followed by a constant glow if preconditioning is active.

Status is also shown in the trip computer while preconditioning is in progress.

Direct start via a mobile*

Activation and information about the selected settings that can be managed from a mobile phone will be available via Volvo On Call*, see separate owner's manual for Volvo On Call*.

Related information

- Preconditioning - immediate stop (p. 133)
- Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103)



Preconditioning - immediate stop

Preconditioning of the car can be switched off directly via the information display.

1. Press **OK** to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Preconditioning** and select with **OK**.
3. Scroll forward in the next menu to **Stop** in order to deactivate the preconditioning and select with **OK**.
4. Exit the menu with **RESET**.

Related information

- Preconditioning - direct start (p. 132)
- Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103)

Preconditioning - timer

Preconditioning (p. 129) timer is connected to the car's clock.

The time when the car shall be used and acclimatised is specified with the timer.

Two different times can be selected using the timer (p. 133). The car's electronics select when preconditioning should be activated based on prevailing outside climatic conditions.

NOTE

All timer programming will be cleared if the car's clock is reset.

Related information

- Timer - starting (p. 134)
- Timer - switching off (p. 134)

Timer - setting

Two different times can be selected using the timer. Here, "time" refers to the time when the car shall be used and acclimatised.

NOTE

All timer programming will be cleared if the car's clock is reset.

1. Press **OK** to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel (p. 103) to **Preconditioning** and select with **OK**.
3. Select one of the two timers using the thumbwheel and confirm with **OK**.
4. Briefly press **OK** to move to the lit hours setting.
5. Select the required hour using the thumbwheel.
6. Briefly press **OK** to move to the lit minutes setting.
7. Select the required minute using the thumbwheel.
8. Press **OK**⁷ to confirm the setting.
9. Go back in the menu structure using **RESET**.
10. Select the other time (continue from step 2) or exit the menu with **RESET**.

⁷ Press **OK** again to activate the timer.



Related information

- Preconditioning - timer (p. 133)
- Timer - starting (p. 134)
- Timer - switching off (p. 134)

Timer - starting

The time when the car shall be used and acclimatised is specified with the timer.

When the timer is activated the car's electronics choose when preconditioning should be activated based on prevailing outside climatic conditions.

1. Press **OK** to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Preconditioning** and select with **OK**.
3. Select one of the two timers using the thumbwheel and activate with **OK**.
4. Exit the menu with **RESET**.

Related information

- Preconditioning - timer (p. 133)
- Timer - setting (p. 133)
- Timer - switching off (p. 134)
- Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103)

Timer - switching off

An activated timer for preconditioning, can be switched off manually.

1. Press **OK** to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Preconditioning** and select with **OK**.
 - > If a timer is set then a clock symbol is shown next to the set time.
3. Select one of the two timers using the thumbwheel and confirm with **OK**.
4. Deactivate the timer as follows:
 - long press on **OK** or
 - short press on **OK** to continue in the menu. Then select to stop the timer and confirm with **OK**.
5. Exit the menu with **RESET**.

A timer activated for preconditioning can also be deactivated (p. 133) .

Related information

- Preconditioning - timer (p. 133)
- Timer - starting (p. 134)
- Timer - setting (p. 133)
- Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103)



Preconditioning - messages

Symbols and messages regarding preconditioning.







When the fuel-driven heater has been activated the heat symbol illuminates in the information display.

When one of the timers has been activated, the symbol for activated timer illuminates in the display at the same time as the set time is shown next to the symbol.



Symbol in the display for activated timer.

The table shows symbols and display texts that appear.

| Symbol | Display | Specification |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Auto heater ON | The fuel-driven heater is switched on and running. The heater's timer is activated after the remote control key has been removed from the ignition switch and leaving the car - the engine and passenger compartment are heated at the set time. |
|  | Fuel operated heater stopped Battery saving mode | The fuel-driven heater is stopped by the car's electronics in order to facilitate starting the engine. The starter battery's charge level is too low. |
|  | Fuel operated heater stopped Low fuel level | The fuel-driven heater is stopped. Setting the heater is not possible due to fuel level being too low - this is in order to facilitate starting the engine as well as approx. 50 km driving. |
|  | Fuel operated heater Service required | The fuel-driven heater is fully or partially disengaged. Visit a workshop if the message remains. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop. |
| | Preconditioning interrupted by power supply change | The electrically-driven heater or AC system is stopped. The transfer of energy is interrupted. |



04 Climate control



| Symbol | Display | Specification |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | Preconditioning stopped due to malfunction | The electrically-driven heater or AC system is stopped. Visit a workshop. An authorised workshop is recommended. |
| | Preconditioning stopped Hybrid battery temperature high | The electrically-driven heater or AC system is stopped. The hybrid battery is too hot, wait until the temperature has returned to normal. |

A display text clears automatically after a time or after one press on the indicator stalk (p. 103) **OK** button.

Related information

- Preconditioning the car (p. 129)
- Messages - handling (p. 105)



General information about heaters

The V60 Plug-in Hybrid has a large heat requirement, in particular during electric operation. As a consequence, the car is equipped with electrically-driven heater and fuel-driven heater. These heaters are required in order to achieve the correct operating temperature for the engine and to generate sufficient heat in the passenger compartment.

- Electrically-driven heater (p. 137)
- Fuel-driven heater (p. 137)

Electrically-driven heater

The car is equipped with electrically-driven and fuel-driven heater (p. 137).

The electrically-driven heater cannot be controlled manually but is activated automatically when required.

NOTE

If the electrically-driven heater is activated then the charging time for the hybrid battery will be extended. The time required for heating the car is mainly determined by the outside temperature.

Related information

- Preconditioning the car (p. 129)
- General information about heaters (p. 137)

Fuel-driven heater

The car is equipped with electrically-driven (p. 137) and fuel-driven heater.

In colder weather the car's fuel-driven heater is activated during the heating. The heater starts automatically when extra heat is required and is switched off automatically when not required.

NOTE

When the fuel-driven auxiliary heater is active, exhaust fumes may be given off from the right-hand wheel housing, which is perfectly normal.

If you do not want the car's fuel-driven heater to start during preconditioning, activate **Indoor parking**, see Preconditioning - parking inside (p. 130). However, this may prolong the warming-up time.

The fuel-driven heater cannot be started during driving or preconditioning if the outside temperature exceeds 15 °C. At -5 °C or lower the maximum running time of the heater is 50 minutes during preconditioning.

If the fuel level in the tank is too low then the fuel-driven heater is prevented from starting, with inadequate heating as a result.



NOTE

Make sure that there is sufficient fuel in the car's regular fuel tank when driving at temperatures below +15 °C.

WARNING

Do not use the fuel-driven auxiliary heater indoors in unventilated areas. Exhaust fumes are given off.

Refuelling



Warning label on fuel filler flap.

WARNING

Fuel which spills out could be ignited. Switch off the fuel-driven auxiliary heater before starting to refuel.

Check in the combined instrument panel that the heater is switched off. The heat symbol is shown when it is operating.

Parking on a hill

If the car is parked on a steep hill, the front of the car should point downhill to ensure that there is a supply of fuel to the fuel-driven heater.

Starter battery and fuel

If the starter battery has insufficient charge or if the fuel level is too low, the heater will be switched off automatically and a message is shown in the combined instrument panel. Acknowledge the message by pressing the indicator stalk (p. 103) **OK** button once.

Related information

- Preconditioning the car (p. 129)
- General information about heaters (p. 137)

Fuel-driven heater - auto mode/ deactivation

The fuel-driven heater's automatic start sequence can be deactivated if required.

NOTE

If the fuel-driven auxiliary heater is deactivated, the diesel engine will start more frequently in order to meet the need for heat in drive mode PURE or HYBRID, i.e. electrical operation will be restricted.

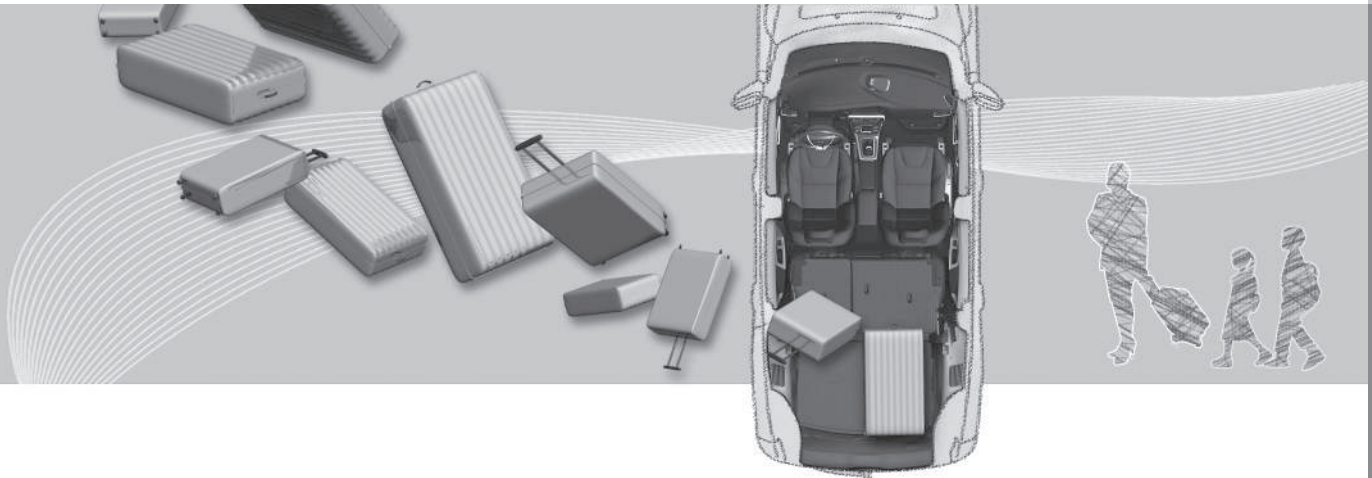
1. Press **OK**, see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103), to access the menu.
2. Scroll with the thumbwheel to **Settings** and select with **OK**.
3. Select one of the options **Auto heater ON** or **Auto heater OFF** using the thumbwheel and confirm with **OK**.
4. Exit the menu with **RESET**.

Related information

- Preconditioning the car (p. 129)
- General information about heaters (p. 137)
- Fuel-driven heater (p. 137)
- Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 73)

05

LOADING AND STORAGE

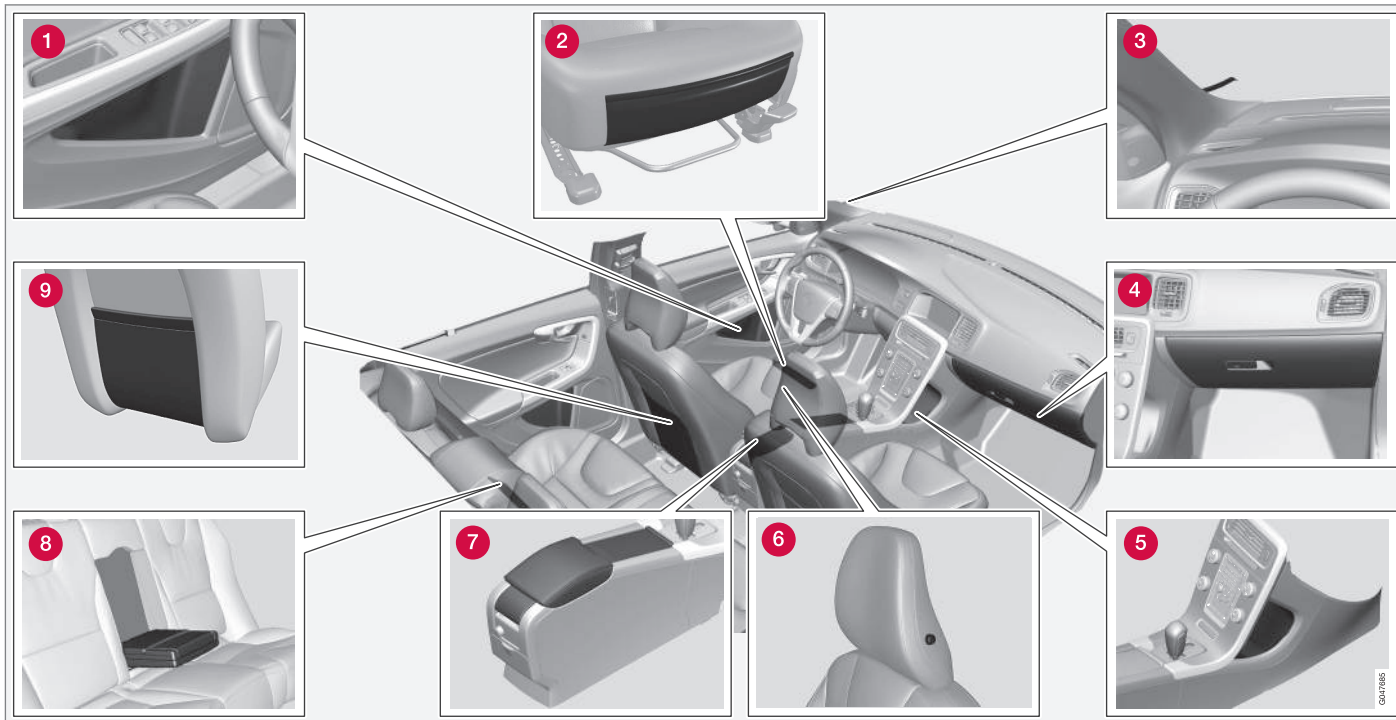




05 Loading and storage

Storage spaces

Overview of storage spaces in the passenger compartment.



05



- 1 Storage compartment in door panel
- 2 Storage pocket* on front edge of front seat cushions
- 3 Ticket clip
- 4 Glovebox (p. 143)
- 5 Storage compartment
- 6 Jacket holder (p. 142)
- 7 Storage compartment, cup holder (p. 142)
- 8 Cup holder* in armrest, rear seat
- 9 Storage pocket



WARNING

Keep loose objects such as mobile phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.



Jacket holder

The coat hanger is located on the left-hand side of the passenger seat's head restraint.

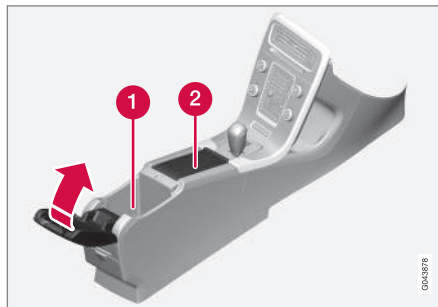
The jacket holder is only designed for light clothing.

Related information

- Storage spaces (p. 140)

Tunnel console

The tunnel console is located between the front seats.



- 1 Storage compartment (e.g. for CDs) and USB*/AUX input under the armrest.
- 2 Includes cup holder for driver and passenger. (If ashtray and cigarette lighter (p. 142) are specified, then there is a cigarette lighter in the 12 V socket (p. 144) for the front seat, and a detachable ashtray in the cup holder.)

Related information

- Storage spaces (p. 140)

Tunnel console - cigarette lighter and ashtray*

A detachable ashtray is fitted in the cup holder under the armrest. The cigarette lighter is fitted in the 12 V socket (p. 144) for the front seat.

The ashtray in the tunnel console (p. 142) is detached by lifting the tray straight up.

Activate the lighter by pushing in the button. The button pops out when the lighter is hot. Pull out the lighter and light a cigarette on the heated coils.

Related information

- Storage spaces (p. 140)



Glovebox

The glovebox is located on the passenger side.



The owner's manual and maps can be kept in here for example. There are also holders for pens on the inside of the lid. The glovebox can be locked (p. 170)* using the key blade (p. 158).

Related information

- Storage spaces (p. 140)

Inlay mats*

Inlay mats collect e.g. rubbish and slush. Volvo supplies specially manufactured inlay mats.

WARNING

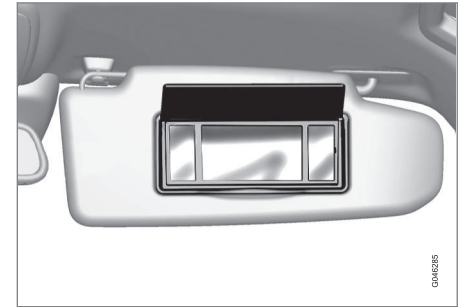
Before setting off check that the inlay mat in the driver area is firmly affixed and secured in the bosses in order to avoid getting caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

Related information

- Cleaning the interior (p. 367)

Vanity mirror

The vanity mirror is located on the rear of the sun visor.



Vanity mirror with lighting.

The light illuminates automatically when the cover is lifted.

Related information

- Lamp replacement - vanity mirror lighting (p. 343)



Tunnel console - 12 V-sockets

The electrical sockets (12 V) are located next to the cup holder¹ and rear of the tunnel console.



12 V socket in tunnel console, front seat.



12 V socket in tunnel console, rear seat.

The electrical socket can be used for various accessories designed for 12 V, e.g. display screens, music players and mobile phones. For the socket to supply current, the remote control key must be in at least key position I (p. 73).

WARNING

Always leave the plug in the socket when the socket is not in use.

NOTE

Optional equipment and accessories - e.g. display screens, music players and mobile phones - which are connected to one of the passenger compartment's 12V electrical sockets, could be activated by the climate control system, even when the remote control key has been removed or when the car is locked, for example, when the parking heater is activated at a preset time.

For this reason remove the plugs from the electrical sockets for optional equipment or accessories when not in use because the battery could be drained in the event of such an occurrence!

IMPORTANT

Max. socket is 10 A (120 W) if one socket is used at a time. If both sockets in the tunnel console are used simultaneously, 7.5 A (90 W) per socket is applicable.

If the compressor for emergency puncture repair is connected to one of the two sockets, no other current consumer must be connected to the other one.

NOTE

The compressor for emergency puncture repair (p. 318) has been tested and approved by Volvo.

Related information

- Tunnel console - cigarette lighter and ashtray* (p. 142)
- 12 V electrical socket - cargo area* (p. 147)

¹ If ashtray and cigarette lighter are specified then there is no cup holder and adjacent 12 V socket.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



Loading

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight. For more detailed information on weights, see Weights (p. 376).



The tailgate is opened via a button on the lighting panel or the remote control key, see Locking/unlocking - tailgate (p. 170).

WARNING

The car's driving properties change depending on the weight and positioning of the load.

To bear in mind when loading

- Position the load firmly against the rear seat's backrest.

Note that objects must not prevent the function of the WHIPS system for the front seats if any of the rear seat's backrests is folded down, see WHIPS - seating position (p. 38).

- Centre the load.
- Heavy objects should be placed as low as possible. Avoid placing heavy loads on lowered backrests.
- Cover sharp edges with something soft to avoid damaging the upholstery.

- Secure all loads to the load retaining eyelets with straps or web lashings.

WARNING

A loose object weighing 20 kg can, in a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, carry the impact of an item weighing 1000 kg.

WARNING

The protection provided by the inflatable curtain in the headlining may be compromised or eliminated by high loads.

- Never load cargo above the backrest.

WARNING

Always secure the load. During heavy braking the load may otherwise shift, causing injury to the car's occupants.

Cover sharp edges and sharp corners with something soft.

Switch off the engine and apply the parking brake when loading/unloading long items. Otherwise you may accidentally knock the gear lever or gear selector with the load into a drive position - and the car could then move off.

Related information

- Load retaining eyelets (p. 146)
- Safety net* (p. 147)

- Loading - long load (p. 146)
- Roof load (p. 146)



Loading - long load

To simplify loading (p. 145) in the cargo area, the rear seat backrest can be folded down. The passenger seat backrest can also be folded for an extra long load².

Lowering the rear seat backrest

To simplify loading in the cargo area, the rear seat backrest can be folded down, see Seats, rear (p. 77).

Roof load

The load carriers recommended for roof loads are the ones developed by Volvo. This is in order to avoid damage to the car and in order to achieve the maximum possible safety during a journey.

Carefully follow the installation instructions supplied with the carriers.

- Check periodically that the load carriers and load are properly secured. Lash the load securely with retaining straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the load carriers. Put the heaviest objects at the bottom.
- The size of the area exposed to the wind, and therefore fuel consumption, increase with the size of the load.
- Drive gently. Avoid quick acceleration, heavy braking and hard cornering.

WARNING

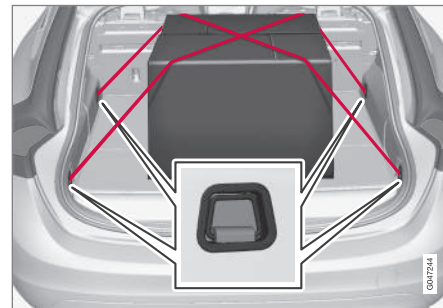
The car's centre of gravity and driving characteristics are altered by roof loads. For information about the maximum allowable load on the roof, including load carriers and any space box, Weights (p. 376).

Related information

- Loading (p. 145)

Load retaining eyelets

The folding load retaining eyelets are used to fasten straps in order to anchor items in the cargo area.



WARNING

Hard, sharp and/or heavy objects which protrude may cause injury under violent braking.

Always secure large and heavy objects with a seatbelt or cargo retaining straps.

Related information

- Loading (p. 145)

² Only applies to comfort seats.



12 V electrical socket - cargo area*

The electrical socket can be used for various accessories designed for 12 V, e.g. display screens, music players and mobile phones.



Lower the cover to access the electrical socket.

- The socket also provides voltage when the remote control key is not in the ignition switch.

! IMPORTANT

Max. power takeoff is 10 A (120 W).

i NOTE

Remember that using the electrical socket with the engine switched off involves the risk of discharging the car's battery.

i NOTE

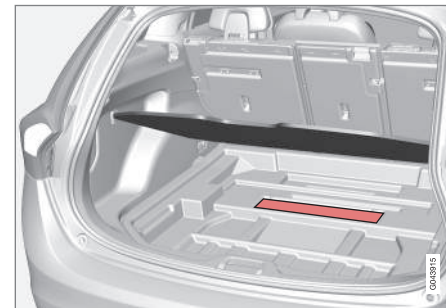
The compressor for temporary emergency puncture repair has been tested and approved by Volvo. For information on the use of Volvo's recommended temporary emergency puncture repair (TMK), Emergency puncture repair (p. 318).

Related information

- Tunnel console - 12 V-sockets (p. 144)

Safety net*

A safety net prevents loads from being thrown forward in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden braking.

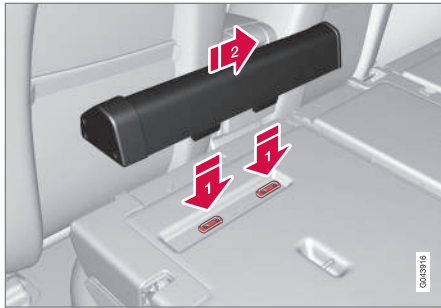


Storage space, safety net cassettes.

A rollable safety net comprising two cassettes has a storage space under the cargo area floor hatch.

Securing the net cassettes

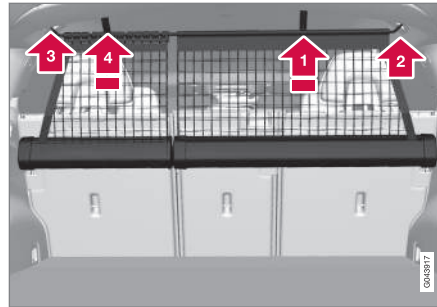
A rollable safety net comprising two cassettes has a storage space under the cargo area floor hatch.



The two-part safety net cassette is secured on the rear of the backrest. The narrowest cassette is secured on the left-hand side (seen from the tailgate).

1. Fold the rear seat's backrest forward, see Seats, rear (p. 77).
 2. Align the cassette's anchor rails in front of the backrest attachment lugs **1**.
 3. Slide the cassette into the attachment lugs **2**.
 4. Fold back and lock the backrests.
- Removing the cassette takes place in reverse order.

Using the safety net



Pull the net up from the cassettes. The net is self-locking after about 1 minute if the rear seat's backrests are raised.

- 1** Pull up the right-hand section of the net using its strap.
 - 2** Insert the rod in the mounting on the right-hand side and then press it forward – the rod locks in with a click.
 - 3** Pull out the rod's telescope section and click it in on the other side.
 - 4** Pull up the left-hand safety net and hook it into the rod.
- Folding up takes place in reverse order.

The net can also be used when the rear seat's backrests are folded forward.

Removing the net cassettes

1. Roll the safety nets into the cassettes in accordance with the procedure in the section entitled "Using the safety net", but in reverse.
2. Fold the whole backrest forward.
3. Slide the cassettes out until they loosen from the anchor rails.

Store the cassettes in their compartment under the cargo area floor hatch.



WARNING

Loads in the luggage compartment must be anchored well, and also using a correctly fitted safety net.

Related information

- Loading (p. 145)
- Safety grille (p. 149)



Safety net* combined with cargo cover

A safety net prevents loads from being thrown forward in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden braking.



Puller-straps for raising the net.

The safety net can also be raised from the rear seat when the cargo cover is extended.

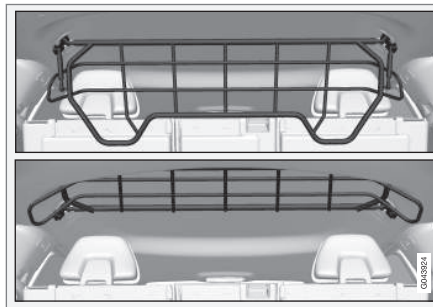
Follow the procedure described in the section "Using the safety net" (p. 147). The straps for folding up are located by the arrows.

Related information

- Safety net* (p. 147)
- Loading (p. 145)
- Load retaining eyelets (p. 146)

Safety grille

A safety grille prevents loads or pets from being thrown forward in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden braking.



Folding up

Take hold of the bottom of the safety grille and pull back/up.

! IMPORTANT

The protective grille cannot be folded up or down when a cargo cover is fitted.

Fitting/removal

The safety grille is normally permanently installed in the car because it can easily be folded up in the roof and so be out of the way if a longer cargo area is required. However, if desired, the safety grille can be dismantled and removed from the car.

For information about the tools required and methods for fitting/removal, see the installation instructions that were included with the initial purchase.

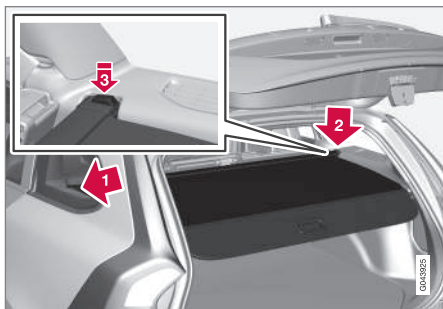
For safety reasons, the safety grille must always be correctly fastened and secured when being refitted.

Related information

- Safety net* (p. 147)
- Loading (p. 145)
- Load retaining eyelets (p. 146)



Cargo cover



Pull the cargo cover over the load and hook it into the recesses at the cargo area's rear posts.

! IMPORTANT

The protective grille cannot be folded up or down when the cargo cover is fitted.

Attaching the cargo cover

- 1** Move one end piece of the cover into the recess on the side panel.
- 2** Move the other end piece into the corresponding recess.
- 3** Press both sides in. A "click" should be audible and the red marking should disappear.
 - > Check that both end pieces are locked.

Removing the cargo cover

1. Press in one end piece button and lift it out.
2. Carefully angle the cover up/out and the other end piece loosens automatically.

Lowering the cargo cover's rear sealing disc

In its rolled-in position, the cargo cover's rear sealing disc protrudes horizontally into the cargo area when it is fitted.

- Pull the sealing disc back gently, free from its support shelves, and lower.

Related information

- Loading (p. 145)
- Loading - long load (p. 146)

06

LOCKS AND ALARM





Remote control key with key blade

The remote control key is used to start the car and for locking and unlocking. It contains a detachable key blade (p. 158) made of metal. The visible section is available in two versions so that it is possible to distinguish between the remote control keys.

The car is supplied with 2 remote control keys or PCCs* (Personal Car Communicator).

Additional remote control keys can be ordered - up to 6 can be programmed and used for the same car.

WARNING

If there are children in the car:

Remember to switch off the supply to the power windows and sunroof by removing the remote control key if the driver leaves the car.

Remote control key with PCC (p. 156) has increased functionality compared with the remote control key, see PCC* - unique functions (p. 156).

Related information

- Remote control key - functions (p. 154)

Remote control key - losing

If you lose a remote control key then a new one can be ordered at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

The remaining remote control keys must be taken to the Volvo workshop. The code of the missing remote control key must be erased from the system as a theft prevention measure. The current number of keys registered to the car can be checked in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Related information

- Remote control key - functions (p. 154)

Key memory*

The key memory in the remote control key (p. 152) means that certain settings in the car can be individually adapted for different people.

The key memory function is available in combination with power seat and power rearview and door mirrors. Settings for door mirrors, driver's seat and steering force can be saved in the key memory.

Key memory – door mirrors and driver's seat

The settings are automatically connected to each respective remote control key, see Key memory* in remote control key (p. 77) and Adjustable steering force* (p. 247). After locking with the remote control key the setting of the combined instrument panel's theme is also saved in the key, see MY CAR (p. 105).

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

For cars with the Keyless drive function, see Keyless drive* (p. 162).



Indication locking/unlocking - adjusting

When the car is locked or unlocked using the remote control key (p. 152) the direction indicators confirm that locking/unlocking was correctly performed.

- Locking - one flash and the door mirrors are folded¹ in.
- Unlocking - two flashes and the door mirrors are folded¹ out.

After locking the indication is only given if all locks are activated once the doors have been closed.

Selecting the function

Different options for indicating locking/unlocking with light can be set in the car's menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

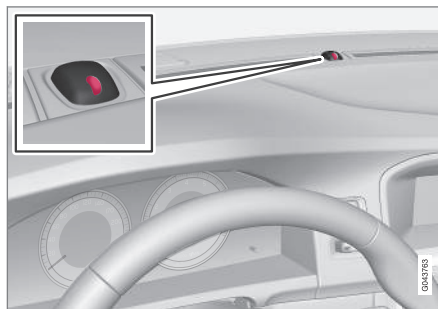
Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 162)
- Lock indicator (p. 153)
- Alarm indicator (p. 175)

¹ Only for cars with retractable power door mirrors.

Lock indicator

A flashing LED by the windscreen verifies that the car is locked.



Same LED as alarm indicator (p. 175).

i NOTE

Cars that are not equipped with alarm also have this indicator.

Related information

- Indication locking/unlocking - adjusting (p. 153)

Immobiliser

The electronic immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents an unauthorised person from starting the car.

Each remote control key (p. 152) has a unique code. The car can only be started with the correct remote control key with the correct code.

The following error messages in the combined instrument panel's information display are related to the electronic immobiliser:



| Message | Specification |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Insert car key | Error when reading the remote control key during starting - Remove the key from the ignition switch, press it in again and make a new start attempt. |
| Car key not found | Error reading the remote control key during starting - Try to start again. If the error persists: Insert the remote control key into the ignition switch and try to start again. |
| Immobiliser Try start again | Error in immobiliser system during starting. If the error persists: Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |

For starting the car, see Starting the engine (p. 254).

Related information

- Remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system (p. 154)

Remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system

Remote-controlled immobiliser with tracking system makes it possible to track and locate the car, and to remotely activate the immobiliser to switch off the engine.

Contact your nearest Volvo dealer for more information and assistance with activating the system.

Related information

- Remote control key with key blade (p. 152)
- Immobiliser (p. 153)

Remote control key - functions

The remote control key has functions such as locking and unlocking the doors.



Remote control key, standard version.

- Locking
- Unlocking
- Approach light duration
- Tailgate
- Panic function

06A5797



Remote control key with PCC* - Personal Car Communicator.

Information

Function buttons

Locking – Locks the doors and tailgate while the alarm is activated.

A long press also closes all windows and sunroof* simultaneously (see also Total airing function (p. 169)).

WARNING

If the sunroof and windows are closed using the remote control key, check that nobody's hands are trapped.

Unlocking – Unlocks the doors and tailgate while the alarm is deactivated.

A long press also opens all windows simultaneously (see also Total airing function (p. 169)).

The function can be changed from unlocking all doors simultaneously, to unlocking the driver's door only with one press of the button and, after a further press of the button - within 10 seconds - unlocking the remaining doors.

The function can be changed in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Approach light duration – Used to switch on the car's lighting at a distance. For more information, see Approach light duration (p. 92).

The button can also be used for activating preconditioning (p. 132).

Tailgate (p. 170) - Unlocks and disarms the alarm for the tailgate only.

Panic function – Used to attract attention in an emergency.

Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the direction indicators and the horn.

The function can be turned off with the same button once it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise the function switches off automatically after approx. 3 minutes.

Related information

- Remote control key with key blade (p. 152)
- PCC* - unique functions (p. 156)
- Locking/unlocking - from the outside (p. 167)



Remote control key - range

Remote control key (p. 152) functions have a range of about 20 metres from the car.

If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

NOTE

The remote control key functions may be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc. The car can always be locked/unlocked with the key blade, Detachable key blade - unlocking doors (p. 159).

If the remote control key is removed from the car when the engine is running or key position (p. 73) I or II is active, and if all doors are closed, then a warning message is shown in the information display in the combined instrument panel and an audio reminder signal sounds at the same time.

The message is extinguished and the audible reminder signal stops when the remote control key is brought back to the car after either/or:

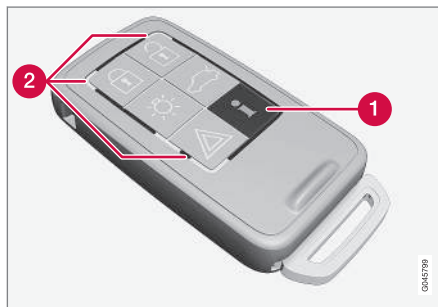
- The remote control key has been inserted into the ignition switch.
- Speed exceeds 30 km/h.
- the **OK** button has been pressed.

Related information

- Remote control key - functions (p. 154)

PCC* - unique functions

Remote control key with PCC has extended functionality compared with remote control key without PCC (p. 152) in the form of an information button and indicator lamps.



Remote control key with PCC* - Personal Car Communicator.

- 1 Information button
- 2 Indicator lamps

Using the information button enables access to certain information from the car via the indicator lamps.

Using the information button

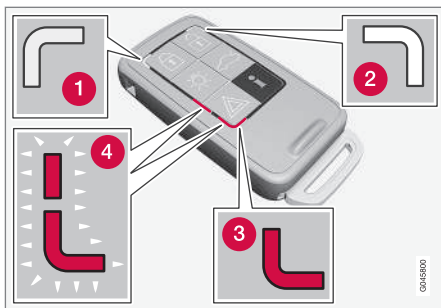
- Press the information button .
 - > All indicator lamps flash for approximately 7 seconds and the light travels around on the PCC. This indicates that information from the car has been read.

If any of the other buttons are pressed during this time then the reading is interrupted.

NOTE

If none of the indicator lamps illuminates with repeated use of the information button and in different locations (as well as after 7 seconds and after the light has travelled around on the PCC), contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Indicator lamps display information in accordance with the following illustration:



- 1 Green continuous light – the car is locked.
- 2 Yellow continuous light – the car is unlocked.
- 3 Red continuous light – the alarm has been triggered since the car was locked.
- 4 Red light flashing alternately in both indicator lamps – The alarm was triggered less than 5 minutes ago.

Related information

- PCC* - range (p. 157)

PCC* - range

The PCC's range for locking, unlocking and tailgate is approx. 20 m from the car - for other functions up to approx. 100 m.

If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

i NOTE

The information button function may be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc.

Out of PCC range

If the PCC is too far away from the car for the information to be read then the status the car was last left in is shown, without the light travelling around on the PCC.

If several PCCs are used for the car then it is only the PCC last used for locking/unlocking that shows correct status.

i NOTE

i If no indicator lamps illuminate when the information button is used within range then this may be because the last communication between the PCC and the car was disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions etc.

Related information

- Keyless drive* - PCC range (p. 162)
- Remote control key - range (p. 156)



Detachable key blade

A remote control key (p. 152) contains a detachable key blade of metal with which some functions can be activated and some operations carried out.

The key blade's unique code is provided by authorised Volvo workshops, which are recommended when ordering new key blades.

Key blade functions

Using the remote control key's detachable key blade:

- the left-hand front door can be opened manually if central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key, see Detachable key blade - unlocking doors (p. 159).
- the rear doors' mechanical child safety locks can be activated/deactivated (p. 172).
- the right-hand front door and the rear doors can be locked manually (p. 168), e.g. in the event of power failure.
- access to the glovebox and cargo area (privacy locking (p. 159)*) can be blocked.
- the airbag for front passenger seat (PACOS*) can be activated/deactivated (p. 33).

Related information

- Remote control key - functions (p. 154)
- Remote control key with key blade (p. 152)

Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching

Detaching/attaching the detachable key blade (p. 158) is carried out as follows:

Removing the key blade



- 1 Slide the spring-loaded catch to the side.
- 2 At the same time pull the key blade straight out backwards.

Attaching the key blade

Carefully refit the key blade into its location in the remote control key (p. 152).

1. Hold the remote control key with the slot pointed up and lower the key blade into its slot.
2. Lightly press the key blade. You should hear a "click" when the key blade is locked in.



Related information

- Detachable key blade - unlocking doors (p. 159)
- Child safety locks - manual activation (p. 172)
- Passenger airbag - activating/deactivating* (p. 33)

Detachable key blade - unlocking doors

The detachable key blade (p. 158) can be used if central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key (p. 152), e.g. if the key's battery has run out.

If central locking cannot be activated with the remote control key - e.g. if the batteries are discharged - then the left-hand front door can be opened as follows:

1. Unlock the left-hand front door with the key blade in the door handle's lock cylinder. For illustration and more information, see Keyless drive* - unlocking with the key blade (p. 165).

NOTE

When the door has been unlocked using the key blade and is opened, the alarm is triggered.

2. Deactivate the alarm by inserting the remote control key in the ignition switch.

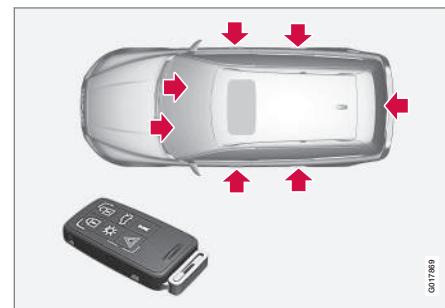
For cars with the Keyless system, see Keyless drive* - unlocking with the key blade (p. 165).

Related information

- Remote control key with key blade (p. 152)
- Remote control key/PCC - replacing the battery (p. 161)

Privacy locking*

Privacy locking is intended for when the car is left for service, with a hotel parking valet or similar. The glovebox is then locked and the tailgate lock is disconnected from the central locking - the tailgate cannot be opened with either the central locking button in the front doors or the remote control key (p. 152).



Active locks for remote control key **with** key blade.



06 Locks and alarm



Active locks for remote control key, **without** key blade and privacy locking **activated**.

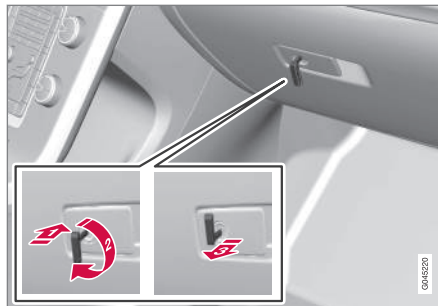
This means that the remote control key without key blade can only be used to activate/deactivate the alarm (p. 174), to open the doors and to drive the car.

The remote control key without key blade can then be handed over to the service or hotel staff - the loose key blade is retained by the car owner.

NOTE

Do not forget to pull out the cargo cover (p. 150) over the cargo area before closing the tailgate.

Activate/deactivate



Activating privacy locking.

To activate privacy locking:

- 1 Insert the key blade in the glovebox lock cylinder.
- 2 Turn the key blade 180 degrees clockwise. The keyhole is vertical in the locked position for privacy locking.
- 3 Pull out the key blade. The combined instrument panel's information display shows a message at the same time.

The glovebox is then locked and the tailgate can no longer be unlocked with the remote control key or the central locking button.

NOTE

Do not reinsert the key blade into the remote control key, but keep it in a safe place instead.

- Deactivation takes place in reverse order. For information on locking the glovebox only, see Locking/unlocking - glovebox (p. 170).

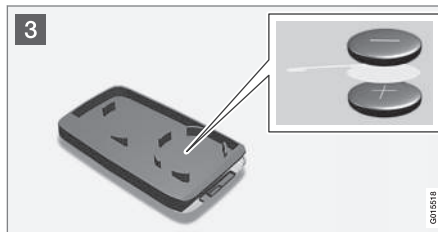


Remote control key/PCC - replacing the battery

The batteries for the remote control key/PCC can be replaced.

The batteries for the remote control key/PCC should be replaced if:

- the information symbol in the combined instrument panel illuminates and the display shows **Low battery in remote control. Please change batteries.**
- and/or
- the locks repeatedly do not react to signals from the remote control key within 20 metres from the car.



Opening

- 1 Slide the spring-loaded catch to the side.
- 2 At the same time pull the key blade straight out backwards.
- 2 Insert a 3 mm slot screwdriver in the hole behind the spring-loaded catch and gently prize the remote control key up.

NOTE

Turn the remote control key over with the buttons facing up, this is to avoid the batteries falling out when it is opened.

IMPORTANT

Avoid touching new batteries and their contact surfaces with your fingers as this may impair their function.

Battery replacement

- 3 Closely study how the battery/batteries are secured on the inside of the cover, with regard to their (+) and (-) sides.

Remove control key (1 battery)

- 1 Carefully prize out the battery.
- 2 Install a new one with the (+) side down.

PCC* (2 batteries)

- 1 Carefully prize out the batteries.
- 2 First install one new one with the (+) side up.
- 3 Position the white plastic tab in between and finally install a second new battery with the (+) side down.

Battery type

Use batteries with the designation CR2430, 3V - one in the remote control key and two in the PCC.



NOTE

Volvo recommends that the batteries to be used in the remote control key/PCC fulfil UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, sub-section 38.3. Batteries fitted in the factory or replaced by an authorised Volvo workshop fulfil the above criteria.

Assembly

1. Press the remote control key together.
2. Hold the remote control key with the slot pointed up and lower the key blade into its slot.
3. Lightly press the key blade. You should hear a "click" when the key blade is locked in.

IMPORTANT

Make sure that exhausted batteries are disposed of in a manner which is kind to the environment.

Related information

- Remote control key with key blade (p. 152)
- Remote control key - functions (p. 154)

Keyless drive*

Keyless drive, only with PCC (p. 156)² means that the car's lock and starting systems can be operated keylessly.

The Keyless drive function in the PCC allows the car to be unlocked (p. 164), driven and locked without the need for a key. You simply have to have the PCC with you. The system makes it easier and more convenient to open the car, e.g. when your hands are full.

Both of the car's PCCs incorporate the Keyless function. Additional PCCs can be ordered, see Remote control key with key blade (p. 152).

The car's electrical system can be set to three different levels - key position **0**, **I** and **II** (p. 73) - with the remote control key.

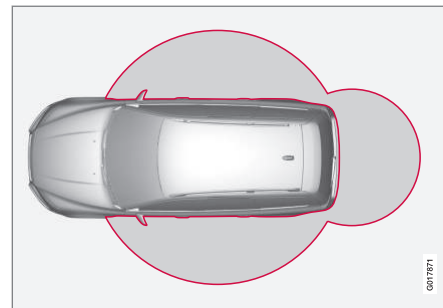
Related information

- Keyless drive* - PCC range (p. 162)
- Keyless drive* - handling the PCC safely (p. 163)
- Keyless drive* - interference to PCC function (p. 163)

Keyless drive* - PCC range

In order to open a door or the tailgate, a PCC must be no more than approx. 1.5 metres from the car door handle or tailgate.

The person who wishes to lock or unlock a door must have the PCC with him or her. It is not possible to lock or unlock a door if the PCC is on the opposite side of the car.



The red rings in the above figure indicate the range covered by the system's antennas.

If all PCCs are removed from the car when the engine is running or key position **I** or **II** (p. 73) is active, and if all doors are closed, then a warning message is shown in the information display in the combined instrument panel and an audio reminder signal sounds at the same time.

² Personal Car Communicator.



When the PCC has been returned to the car, the warning message goes off and the audible reminder ceases once either/or:

- a door has been opened and closed
- the PCC is inserted into the ignition switch
- the **OK** button has been pressed.

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 162)
- Keyless drive* - antenna location (p. 166)

Keyless drive* - handling the PCC safely

It is important to handle all remote control keys with great care.

If a PCC with keyless function is left in the car, it is deactivated temporarily when the car is locked. This prevents unauthorised entry.

However, if someone breaks into the car and finds the PCC, it can be reactivated. It is therefore important to handle all PCCs with great care.



IMPORTANT

Never leave a PCC in the car.

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 162)

Keyless drive* - interference to PCC function

Electromagnetic fields and screening can interfere with the Keyless function.



NOTE

Do not place/store the PCC near a mobile phone or metal object - no closer than 10-15 cm.

If interference is experienced nonetheless, use the PCC and the key blade as a remote control key, see Remote control key - functions (p. 154).

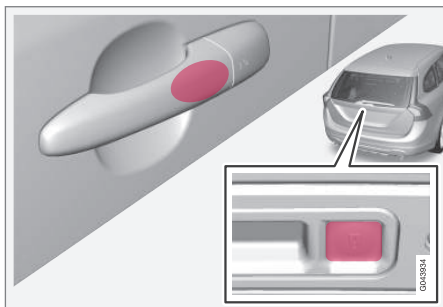
Related information

- Remote control key/PCC - replacing the battery (p. 161)
- Keyless drive* - handling the PCC safely (p. 163)
- Keyless drive* - PCC range (p. 162)



Keyless drive* - locking

Cars with the Keyless-drive system have a touch-sensitive area on the outer handle of the doors and a rubberised button next to the tailgate's rubberised pressure plate for locking/unlocking.



The touch-sensitive area on the outer door handles and the rubberised button next to the tailgate's rubberised pressure plate.

Lock the doors and the tailgate with one long press on any of the door handles' touch-sensitive areas or press the smaller of the tailgate's two rubberised buttons - the lock indicator (p. 153) in the windscreen confirms that locking has been completed by starting to flash.

All doors and the tailgate must be closed before the car can be locked - otherwise the car is not locked.

NOTE

In cars with automatic gearbox selectors, the gear selector must be set to the **P** position; otherwise the car can be neither locked nor alarmed.

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 162)
- Alarm indicator (p. 175)

Keyless drive* - unlocking

Unlocking takes place when a hand grasps a door handle or the tailgate's rubberised pressure plate is actuated - open the door or tailgate as normal.

NOTE

The door handles normally register a hand that takes hold of the handle, but with thick gloves on or after a very quick hand movement a second attempt may be required, or with the glove taken off.

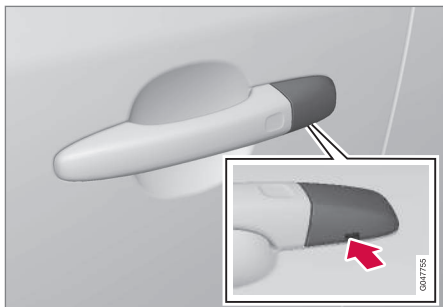
Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 162)
- Keyless drive* - locking (p. 164)



Keyless drive* - unlocking with the key blade

If central locking cannot be unlocked with the PCC, e.g. if the batteries are discharged, then the left-hand front door can be opened with the PCC's detachable key blade (see Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching (p. 158)).



Hole for key blade - to loosen the cover.

To access the lock cylinder, the door handle's plastic cover must be removed - this is also done with the key blade:

1. Press the key blade approx. 1 cm straight up into the hole on the underside of the door handle/cover - do not prize.
 - > The plastic cover loosens automatically by means of the torque when the blade is pushed straight up and into the opening.

2. Then insert the key blade in the lock cylinder and unlock the door.
3. Refit the plastic cover after unlocking.

i NOTE

When the driver's door is unlocked using the key blade and is opened, the alarm is triggered. It is switched off by inserting the PCC in the ignition switch, see Alarm - remote control key not working (p. 175).

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 162)
- Alarm (p. 174)

Keyless drive* - key memory

The key memory³ in the PCC means that certain settings in the car can be individually adapted for different persons.

The key memory function is available in combination with power seat and power rearview and door mirrors. Settings for door mirrors and driver's seat can be saved in the key memory.

PCC memory function

If several people each with a PCC approach the car, then the settings for seat and mirrors are implemented for the person who opens the driver's door.

After the driver's door has been opened by person A with PCC A but person B with PCC B shall drive, the settings can be changed as follows:

- Standing by the driver's door, or sitting behind the steering wheel, person B presses their PCC's unlock button, see Remote control key - functions (p. 154).
- Select one of three possible memories for seat adjustment with seat button 1-3, see Seats, front - electrically operated (p. 76).
- Adjust seat and mirrors manually, see Seats, front - electrically operated (p. 76) and Door mirrors (p. 97).

³ Only in combination with power driver's seat* and power mirrors.



Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 162)
- Remote control key - functions (p. 154)

Keyless drive* - lock settings

Lock settings for the Keyless function can be adapted.

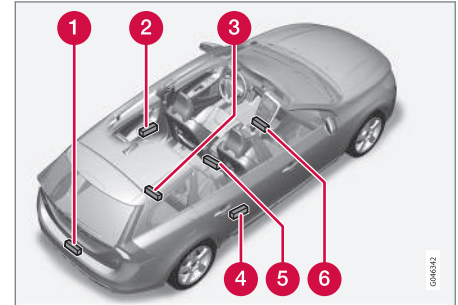
Lock settings for the Keyless function can be adapted by indicating in the menu system for **MY CAR** which doors are to be unlocked. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 162)

Keyless drive* - antenna location

The Keyless system has a number of integrated antennae located around the car.



- 1 Rear bumper, centre
- 2 Door handle, left rear
- 3 Cargo area, central and furthest in under the floor
- 4 Door handle, right rear
- 5 Centre console, under the rear section
- 6 Centre console, under the front section.

**WARNING**

People who have had a pacemaker operation should not come closer than 22 cm to the Keyless system's antennas with their pacemaker. This is to prevent interference between the pacemaker and the Keyless system.

Related information

- Keyless drive* (p. 162)

Locking/unlocking - from the outside

Locking/unlocking from the outside is carried out using the remote control key (p. 152). The remote control key can lock/unlock all doors and the tailgate simultaneously. Different sequences for unlocking can be selected, see Remote control key - functions (p. 154).

In order that the lock sequence can be activated, the driver's door must be closed - if any of the other doors or the tailgate is open, then it/they is/are locked and the alarm is activated only when it/they are closed. With the Keyless* system all the doors and tailgate must be closed.

NOTE

Be aware of the risk of locking the remote control key in the car.

If it is not possible to lock/unlock with the remote control key, the battery may be discharged - lock or unlock the left-hand front door with the detachable key blade, see Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching (p. 158).

NOTE

Remember that the alarm is triggered when the door is opened after being unlocked with the key blade - the alarm is switched off when the remote control key is inserted into the ignition switch.

WARNING

Be aware of the risk of being locked in the car when it is locked from the outside using the remote control key - it is then not possible to open any of the doors from the inside with the door controls. For more information, see Deadlocks* (p. 171).

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within two minutes of unlocking, all are locked again automatically. This function reduces the risk that the car is left unlocked unintentionally. (For cars with alarm, see Alarm (p. 174).)

Related information

- Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 168)
- Locking/unlocking - from the outside (p. 167)



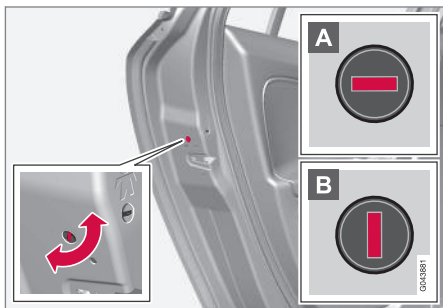
06 Locks and alarm

Manual locking of the door

In certain situations the car must be lockable manually, e.g. in the event of power failure.

The left-hand front door can be locked with its lock cylinder and the remote control key's detachable key blade, see Keyless drive* - unlocking with the key blade (p. 165).

Other doors do not have lock cylinders and instead have lock knobs on each door's end face which must be re-turned - then they are mechanically locked/blocked against opening from the outside. The doors can still be opened from the inside.



Manual locking of the door. Not to be mixed up with child safety locks (p. 172).

- Use the remote control key's detachable key blade to turn the knob, see Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching (p. 158).

- A** The door is blocked against opening from the outside.
- B** The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

i NOTE

- A door's knob control only locks that particular door - not all doors simultaneously.
- A manually locked rear door with an activated manual child safety lock cannot be opened from either the outside or the inside, see Child safety locks - manual activation (p. 172). A rear door that is locked in this way can only be unlocked with the remote control key or central locking button.

Related information

- Remote control key/PCC - replacing the battery (p. 161)

Locking/unlocking - from the inside

All of the doors and the tailgate are locked or unlocked simultaneously using the central locking button on the driver's door and passenger door.*

Central locking



Central locking.

- Press one side of the button to lock - the other side to unlock.

Press and hold to also open all side windows* simultaneously.

Unlocking

A door can be unlocked from the inside in two different ways:

- Press the central locking button .

A long press also opens all the side windows* simultaneously (see also Total airing function (p. 169)).



- Pull the door handle and open the door - the door is unlocked and opened in one operation.

Lamp in lock button

Central locking is available in two variants - the lamp in the central locking button for the driver's door has different meanings dependent on the variant.


With central locking button only in the driver's door, other doors have no button:

- Illuminated lamp means that all doors are locked.

With central locking button on both front doors and electric lock button in each rear door:

- Illuminated lamp means that only that particular door is locked. When all buttons are illuminated all doors are locked.

Locking

- Press the central locking button  - all closed doors are locked.

A long press also closes all side windows and sunroof simultaneously (see also Total airing function (p. 169)).

Lock button* rear doors



The button's lamp illuminates when the door is locked.

The rear door lock buttons only lock their respective rear door.

To unlock the door:

- Pull the door handle - the door is unlocked and opened.

Automatic locking

The doors and tailgate are locked automatically when the car starts to move.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Related information



- Locking/unlocking - from the outside (p. 167)
- Alarm (p. 174)
- Remote control key - functions (p. 154)

Total airing function

The total airing function opens or closes all side windows simultaneously and can be used for example to quickly air the car during hot weather.



Central locking button

A long press on the  symbol in the central locking button **opens** all side windows simultaneously. The same procedure on the  symbol **closes** all side windows simultaneously.

Related information

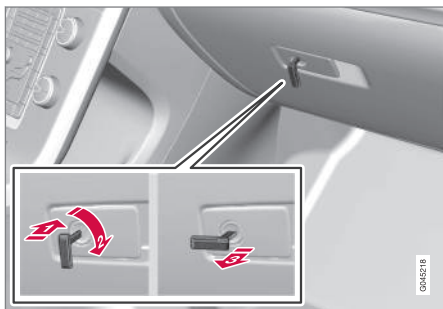
- Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 168)
- Power windows (p. 95)



Locking/unlocking - glovebox

The glovebox (p. 143) can only be locked/unlocked using the detachable key blade from the remote control key.

For information on the key blade, see Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching (p. 158).



Locking the glovebox:

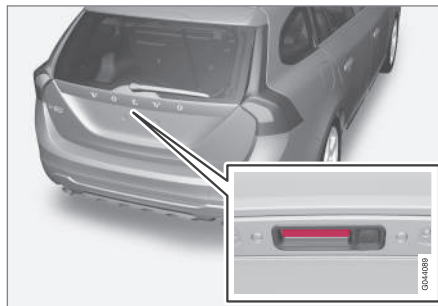
- 1 Insert the key blade in the glovebox lock cylinder.
 - 2 Turn the key blade 90 degrees clockwise. The keyhole is horizontal in the locked position.
 - 3 Pull out the key blade.
- Unlock by carrying this out in reverse order.

For information on privacy locking, see Privacy locking* (p. 159).

Locking/unlocking - tailgate

The tailgate can be opened, locked and unlocked in several ways.

Manual opening



Rubber plate with electrical contact.

The tailgate is held closed by an electrical lock. To open:

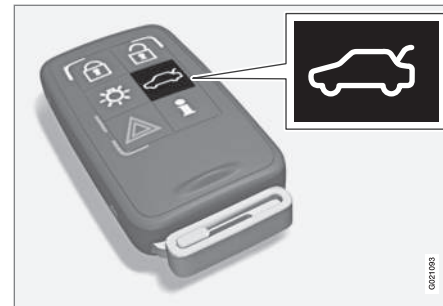
1. Push down gently on the wider of the two rubberised pressure plates under the outer handle - the lock is released.
2. Lift the outside handle in order to fully open the tailgate.




IMPORTANT

- Minimal force is required to release the rear hatch lock - just gently press the rubberised panel.
- Do not place the lift force on the rubber panel when opening the rear hatch - lift the handle. Using too much force may damage the electrical contacts on the rubber panel.

Unlocking with the remote control key



The alarm for the tailgate can be disarmed* and the tailgate unlocked on its own by using the remote control key's  button.

The lock indicator (p. 153) on the instrument panel stops flashing in order to show that not all of the car is locked and the alarm's* level and movement sensors and the sensors for opening the tailgate are disconnected.



The doors remain locked and armed.

- The tailgate is unlocked, but remains closed - press lightly on the rubberised pressure plate under the outer handle and lift the tailgate.

If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

Unlocking the car from inside




1 Unlocking, tailgate

To unlock the tailgate:

- Press the lighting panel button. (1)
 - > The tailgate is unlocked and can be opened within 2 minutes (if the car is locked from the inside).

Locking with the remote control key

- Press the remote control key's button for locking , see Remote control key - functions (p. 154).
 - > The lock indicator on the instrument panel starts flashing, which means that the car is locked and the alarm* has been activated.

Related information

- Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 168)
- Locking/unlocking - from the outside (p. 167)

Deadlocks*

Deadlocks⁴ means that all door handles are mechanically disengaged, which prevents doors being opened from both inside and outside.

The deadlocks are activated with the remote control key (p. 152) and are set after an approximately 10 second delay after the doors have been locked.



NOTE

If a door is opened within the delay time then the sequence is interrupted and the alarm is deactivated.

The car can only be unlocked from a deadlock state with the remote control key. The front left door can also be unlocked with the detachable key blade (p. 158). In addition, it is possible to unlock/open the doors and tailgate on cars equipped with the Keyless drive* by touching door handles or the tailgate's handle.



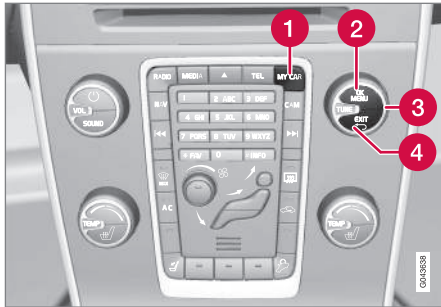
WARNING

Do not allow anyone to remain in the car without first deactivating the deadlocks in order to avoid the risk of anyone being locked in.

⁴ Only in combination with alarm.



Temporary deactivation



Active menu options are indicated with a cross.

- 1 **MY CAR**
- 2 **OK MENU**
- 3 **TUNE** knob control
- 4 **EXIT**

If someone is going to stay in the car but the doors must be locked from the outside, then the deadlocks function can be temporarily switched off. This takes place the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

NOTE

- Remember that the alarm is activated when the car is locked.
- If any of the doors are opened from the inside then the alarm is triggered.

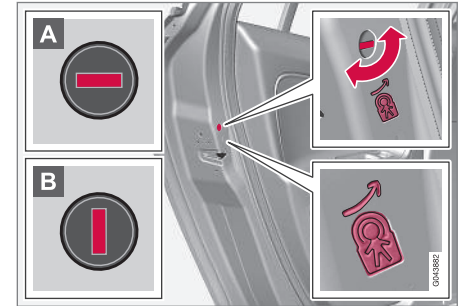
Related information

- Keyless drive* - unlocking with the key blade (p. 165)
- Remote control key with key blade (p. 152)

Child safety locks - manual activation

The child safety locks prevent children from being able to open a rear door from the inside.

Activate/deactivate child safety locks



Manual child safety locks. Not to be mixed up with manual door lock (p. 168).

The child safety locks are located on the trailing edge of the rear doors and are only accessible when the doors are open.

To activate/deactivate the child safety locks:

- Use the remote control key's detachable key blade (p. 158) to turn the knob.
- A The door is blocked against opening from the inside.
 - B The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.



WARNING

Each rear door has two knob controls - do not mix up the child safety locks with manual door locks.

NOTE

- A door's knob control only blocks that particular door - not both rear doors simultaneously.
- Cars with an electric child safety lock do not have a manual child lock.

Related information

- Child safety locks - electrical activation* (p. 173)
- Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 168)
- Locking/unlocking - from the outside (p. 167)

Child safety locks - electrical activation*

Child safety locks with electrical activation prevent children from opening the rear doors or windows from the inside.

Activation

The child safety locks can be activated/deactivated in all key positions (p. 73) higher than **0**. Activation/deactivation can be performed up to 2 minutes after switching off the engine, provided that no door is opened.

To activate the child safety locks:



Control panel driver's door.

1. Start the engine or choose a key position higher than **0**.

2. Press the button in the driver's door control panel.
 - > The combined instrument panel's information display shows the message **Rear child locks Activated** and the button's lamp illuminates - the locks are active.

When the child safety lock is active then the rear:

- windows can only be opened with the driver's door control panel
- doors cannot be opened from inside.

The current setting is stored when the engine is switched off - if the child safety locks are activated at engine shutdown, the function will remain activated the next time the engine is started.

Related information

- Child safety locks - manual activation (p. 172)
- Locking/unlocking - from the inside (p. 168)



Alarm

The alarm is a device that warns in the event of e.g. a break-in in the car.

Activated alarm is triggered if:

- a door, the bonnet or the tailgate is opened
- a movement is detected in the passenger compartment (if fitted with a movement detector*)
- the car is raised or towed away (if fitted with a tilt detector*)
- the battery's cable is disconnected
- the siren is disconnected.

If there is a fault in the alarm system then the information display in the combined instrument panel shows a message. In which case, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.



NOTE

The movement sensors trigger an alarm in the event of movement in the passenger compartment - air currents are also registered. For this reason the alarm is triggered if the car is left with a window or the sunroof open or if the passenger compartment heater is used.

To avoid this: Close the window/sunroof when leaving the car. If the car's integrated passenger compartment heater (or a portable electric heater) shall be used - direct the airflow from the air vents so that they are not pointing upwards in the passenger compartment. Alternatively, reduced alarm level can be used, see Reduced alarm level (p. 176).



NOTE

Do not attempt to repair or alter components in the alarm system yourself. Any such attempts may affect the terms of the insurance.

Deactivating a triggered alarm

- Press the remote control key unlock button or insert the remote control key in the ignition switch.

Related information

- Alarm indicator (p. 175)
- Alarm - automatic re-arming (p. 175)
- Alarm - remote control key not working (p. 175)

Arming the alarm

- Press the remote control key lock button.

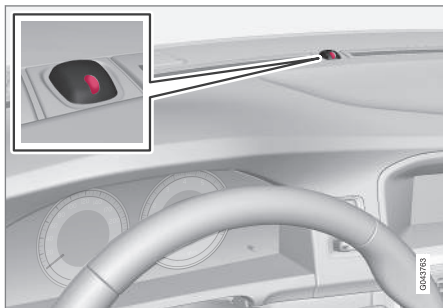
Deactivate the alarm

- Press the remote control key unlock button.



Alarm indicator

The alarm indicator shows alarm system (p. 174) status.



Same LED as lock indicator (p. 153).

A red LED on the instrument panel indicates the alarm system's status:

- LED not lit – Alarm not armed
- The LED flashes once every other second – Alarm is armed
- The LED flashes rapidly after disarming the alarm (and until the remote control key is inserted in the ignition switch and key position I is selected) – Alarm has been triggered.

Alarm - automatic re-arming

Automatic re-arming of the alarm (p. 174) prevents the car being left with the alarm disarmed unintentionally.

If the car is unlocked with the remote control key (and the alarm is disarmed) but none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes, then the alarm is automatically re-armed. The car is relocked at the same time.

Related information

- Reduced alarm level (p. 176)

Alarm - remote control key not working

If the alarm (p. 174) cannot be deactivated with the remote control key, e.g. if the key's battery (p. 161) is discharged - the car can be unlocked, disarmed and the engine started as follows:

1. Open the driver's door with the detachable key blade (p. 165).
 - > The alarm is triggered, the alarm indicator (p. 175) flashes rapidly and the siren sounds.



2. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch.
 - > The alarm is deactivated and the alarm indicator goes out.
3. Start the engine.



Alarm signals

When the alarm (p. 174) is triggered a siren sounds and all direction indicators flash.

- A siren sounds for 30 seconds or until the alarm is switched off. The siren has its own battery and works independently of the car battery.
- The direction indicators flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is switched off.

Reduced alarm level

Reduced guard means that the movement and tilt detectors can be temporarily deactivated.

To avoid accidental triggering of the alarm (p. 174) - e.g. if a dog is left in a locked car or during transport on a car train or car ferry - temporarily deactivate the movement and tilt detectors.

The procedure is the same as with the temporary disengaging of deadlocks (p. 171)⁵.

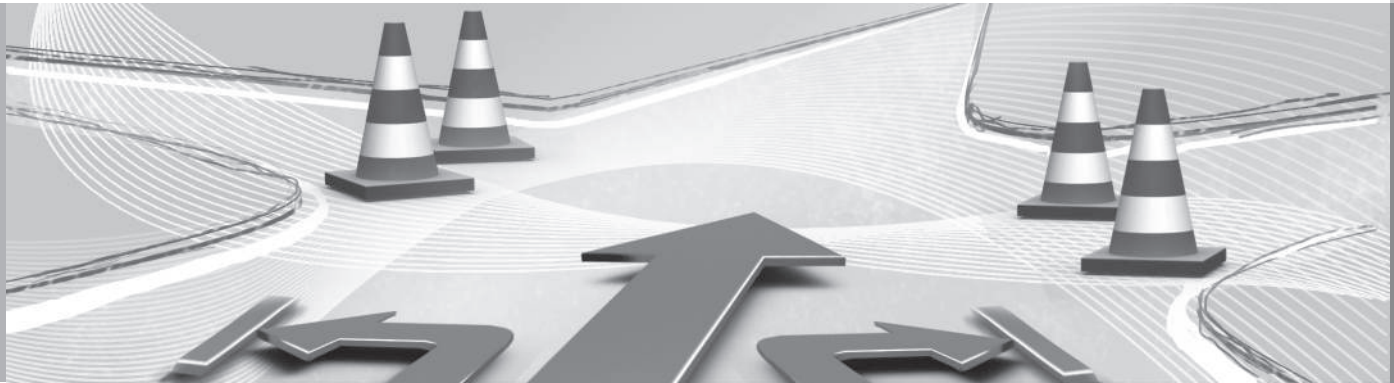
Related information

- Alarm indicator (p. 175)

⁵ Only in combination with alarm.

07

DRIVER SUPPORT





Stability and traction control system (DSTC)

The stability and traction control system, DSTC (Dynamic Stability & Traction Control), helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car's traction.

The activation of the system during braking may be noticed as a throbbing sound. The car may accelerate slower than expected when the accelerator pedal is depressed.

The system consists of the following functions:

- Active Yaw Control
- Spin Control
- Traction control system
- Engine drag control - EDC
- Corner Traction Control - CTC
- Trailer Stability Assist* - TSA

Active Yaw Control

The function checks the driving and brake force of the wheels individually in order to stabilise the car.

Spin Control

The function prevents the driving wheels from spinning against the road surface during acceleration.

Traction control system

The function is active at low speed and transfers power from the driving wheel that is spinning to the one that is not.

Engine drag control (EDC)

EDC (Engine Drag Control) prevents involuntary wheel locking, e.g. after shifting down or engine braking when driving in low gears on slippery road surfaces.

Involuntary wheel locking while driving can, amongst other things, impair the driver's ability to steer the car.

Corner Traction Control (CTC)

CTC compensates for understeer and allows higher than normal acceleration in a bend without wheelspin on the inner wheel, e.g. on an arcing motorway entrance road to quickly reach the prevailing traffic speed.

Trailer Stability Assist¹

Trailer stability assist (p. 301) function is to stabilise the car and trailer combination if it begins to snake. For more information, see Driving with a trailer (p. 296).

Related information

- Stability and traction control system (DSTC) - operation (p. 179)
- Stability and traction control system (DSTC) - symbols and messages (p. 180)



NOTE

The function is deactivated if the driver selects **Sport** mode.

¹ Included in the installation of Volvo genuine towbar.



Stability and traction control system (DSTC) - operation

The stability and traction control system (p. 178) (DSTC - Dynamic Stability & Traction Control), helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car's traction.

Selection of level - Sport mode

The stability and traction control system is always activated - it cannot be switched off.

However, the driver can select the **Sport** mode, which allows for a more active driving experience. In **Sport** mode the system detects whether the accelerator pedal, steering wheel movements and cornering are more active than in normal driving and then allows controlled skidding with the rear section up to a certain level before it intervenes and stabilises the car.

If the driver interrupts a controlled skid by releasing the accelerator pedal then the stability and traction control system intervenes and stabilises the car.

With **Sport** mode, maximum traction is obtained if the car has become stuck, or when driving on a loose surface - e.g. sand or deep snow.

Sport mode is selected in the menu system MY CAR. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

The **Sport** mode is active until the driver deselects it or until the engine is switched off

- after the engine is started the next time the stability and traction control system is back in its normal mode again.

Related information

- Stability and traction control system (DSTC) - symbols and messages (p. 180)



Stability and traction control system (DSTC) - symbols and messages

Control) helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car's traction.

The stability and traction control system (p. 178) (DSTC - Dynamic Stability & Traction

Table

| Symbol | Message | Specification |
|-------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | DSTC Temporarily OFF | The system is temporarily reduced due to excessive brake disc temperature. - The function is reactivated automatically when the brakes have cooled. |
| | DSTC Service required | The system is disengaged. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop the car in a safe place, switch off the engine and start it again. • Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |
| and | "Message" | There is a text message in the combined instrument panel (p. 62) - Read it! |
| | Constant glow for 2 seconds. | System check when the engine is started. |
| | Flashing light. | The system is being activated. |
| | | Sport mode is activated. |

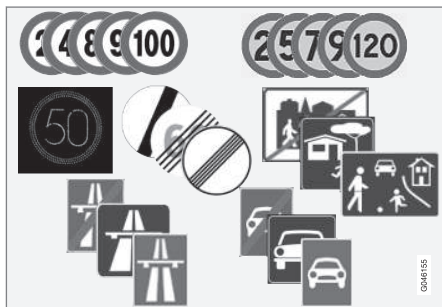
Related information

- Stability and traction control system (DSTC) - operation (p. 179)



Road Sign Information (RSI)*

The road sign information function (RSI – Road Sign Information) helps the driver to remember which speed-related road signs the car has passed.



Examples of readable speed related signs².

The RSI function gives information on current speed, e.g. that a motorway or road is starting/ending and when overtaking is prohibited.

If both a sign for motorway/road for motorised traffic and a sign showing the maximum permitted speed are passed, RSI decides to show the sign symbol for maximum permitted speed.

WARNING

RSI does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

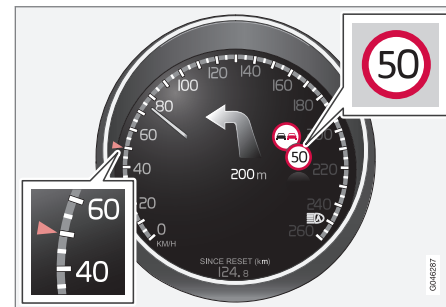
Related information

- Road sign information (RSI)* - operation (p. 181)
- Road sign information (RSI)* - limitations (p. 183)

Road sign information (RSI)* - operation

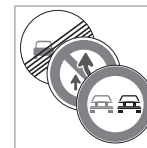
The road sign information function (RSI – Road Sign Information) helps the driver to remember which speed-related road signs the car has passed.

The function is operated as follows



Recorded speed information³.

When RSI has recorded a road sign with an imposed speed, the combined instrument panel displays the sign as a symbol.



Together with the symbol for the current speed limit, a sign showing that overtaking is prohibited may also be displayed where appropriate.

² Road signs shown in the combined instrument panel are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.

³ Road signs shown in the combined instrument panel are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.



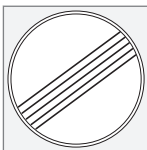
07 Driver support



End of restriction or motorway

A corresponding road sign is shown in the combined instrument panel for approx. 10 seconds in situations where RSI detects a sign that involves the end of a speed limit - or other speed-related information, e.g. end of a motorway.

Examples of such signs are:



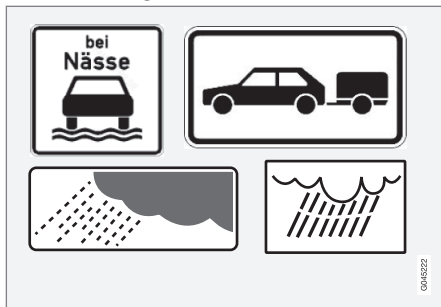
End of all restrictions.



End of motorway.

Following which, the sign information is hidden until the next speed-related sign is detected.

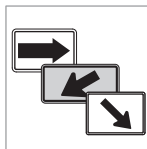
Additional signs



Examples of additional signs³.

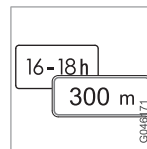
Sometimes different speed limits are signposted for the same road - an additional sign then indicates the circumstances under which the different speeds apply. The road section may be particularly susceptible to accidents in rain and/or fog, for example.

An additional sign relating to rain is displayed only if the windscreen wipers are in use.



The speed applicable on an exit is indicated in certain markets by means of an additional sign containing an arrow.

Speed signs linked to this type of additional sign are displayed only if the driver is using the direction indicator.



Some speeds are applicable only after e.g. a specific distance or at a certain time of day. The driver's attention is drawn to the situation by means of a symbol for an additional sign under the symbol showing speed.

Display of additional information



A symbol for additional sign in the form of an empty frame under the combined instrument panel's speed symbol means that the RSI has detected an additional sign with supplementary information for the current speed limit.

Setting in MY CAR

There are options for RSI in the **MY CAR** menu system; see MY CAR (p. 105).

³ Road signs shown in the combined instrument panel are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.



Road sign information On/Off



The combined instrument panel's speed symbol display can be disabled. The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Speed warning



The driver can opt to receive a warning when the applicable speed limit is exceeded by 5 km/h or more. This warning is given by the symbol showing the applicable maximum speed temporarily flashing when this speed is

exceeded. The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Related information

- Road Sign Information (RSI)* (p. 181)
- Road sign information (RSI)* - limitations (p. 183)
- MY CAR (p. 105)

Road sign information (RSI)* - limitations

The road sign information function (RSI – Road Sign Information) helps the driver to remember which speed-related road signs the car has passed. The function has the following limitations.

The RSI function's camera sensor has limitations just like the human eye - read more about camera sensor limitations (p. 222)).

Signs which indirectly provide information on a prevailing speed limit, e.g. name signs for towns/districts, are not recorded by the RSI function.

Here are several examples of what can disrupt the function:

- Faded signs
- Signs positioned on bends
- Rotated or damaged signs
- Concealed or poorly positioned signs
- Signs completely or partly covered with frost, snow and/or dirt.

Related information

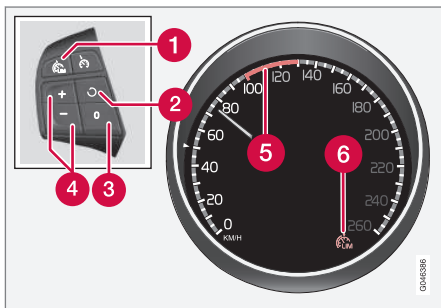
- Road Sign Information (RSI)* (p. 181)
- Road sign information (RSI)* - operation (p. 181)



Speed limiter*

A (Speed Limiter) can be regarded as a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a pre-selected/set speed by the speed limiter.

Overview



Steering wheel keypad and combined instrument panel.

- 1 Speed limiter - On/Off.
- 2 Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
- 3 Standby mode.
- 4 Activate and adjust the max. speed.
- 5 Selected speed.
- 6 Speed limiter active.

Related information

- Speed limiter* - getting started (p. 184)
- Speed limiter* - temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 185)
- Speed limiter* - alarm for speed exceeded (p. 186)
- Speed limiter* - deactivation (p. 186)

Speed limiter* - getting started




A (Speed Limiter) can be regarded as a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a pre-selected/set speed by the speed limiter.

Switch on and activate

When the speed limiter is active, its symbol (6) is shown in combination with a mark (5) by the set maximum speed in the combined instrument panel.



Selection and storage of the highest possible speed in the memory can be made both during a journey and while stationary.

While driving

1. Press the steering wheel button  to switch on the speed limiter.
 - > The symbol (6) for speed limiter illuminates in the combined instrument panel.
2. When the car is moving at the desired highest possible speed: Press one of the steering wheel buttons  or  until the combined instrument panel shows a mark (5) by the desired maximum speed.
 - > The speed limiter is then active and the selected max. speed is stored in the memory.



When stationary

1. Press the steering wheel button  to switch on the speed limiter.
2. Scroll with the  button until the combined instrument panel shows a mark (5) by the desired maximum speed.
 - > The speed limiter is then active and the selected max. speed is stored in the memory.



Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 184)
- Speed limiter* - changing speed (p. 185)
- Speed limiter* - temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 185)
- Speed limiter* - deactivation (p. 186)
- Speed limiter* - alarm for speed exceeded (p. 186)

Speed limiter* - changing speed

A (Speed Limiter) can be regarded as a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a pre-selected/set speed by the speed limiter.

To change the stored speed:

- Adjust with short presses on  or  - every press gives +/- 5 km/h. The last presses made are stored in the memory.

To adjust +/- 1 km/h:

- Hold the button depressed and release when the combined instrument panel shows a mark (5) by the desired maximum speed.

Related information


- Speed limiter* (p. 184)
- Speed limiter* - getting started (p. 184)
- Speed limiter* - temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 185)
- Speed limiter* - deactivation (p. 186)
- Speed limiter* - alarm for speed exceeded (p. 186)


Speed limiter* - temporary deactivation and standby mode

A (Speed Limiter) can be regarded as a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a pre-selected/set speed by the speed limiter.

Temporary deactivation - standby mode

To temporarily deactivate the speed limiter and set it in standby mode:

- Press .
 - > The mark (5) in the combined instrument panel changes colour from GREEN to WHITE and the driver can temporarily exceed the set maximum speed.

The speed limiter is reactivated with one press on . The mark (5) then changes colour from WHITE to GREEN and the car's maximum speed is limited once again.

Temporary deactivation with the accelerator pedal

The speed limiter can also be set in standby mode with the accelerator pedal, e.g. for rapidly accelerating the car out of a situation:



- Depress the accelerator pedal fully.
 - > The combined instrument panel shows the stored maximum speed with a coloured mark (5) and the driver can temporarily exceed the set maximum speed - the mark (5) changes colour during this time from GREEN to WHITE.

The speed limiter is automatically reactivated after the release of the accelerator pedal and the car's speed is slowed down to below the selected/stored maximum speed - the display's mark (5) changes colour from WHITE to GREEN and the car's maximum speed is again limited.

Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 184)
- Speed limiter* - getting started (p. 184)
- Speed limiter* - changing speed (p. 185)
- Speed limiter* - deactivation (p. 186)
- Speed limiter* - alarm for speed exceeded (p. 186)

Speed limiter* - alarm for speed exceeded



A (Speed Limiter) can be regarded as a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a pre-selected/set speed by the speed limiter.

On a steep downhill gradient the speed limiter's engine braking effect may be inadequate and the selected maximum speed is exceeded. The driver is alerted about this with an acoustic signal.

The signal is active until the driver has slowed to below the selected maximum speed.



NOTE

The alarm is only activated after 5 seconds if the speed has been exceeded by at least 3 km/h provided that none of the buttons  or  has been depressed during the last half minute.



Related information

- Speed limiter* (p. 184)
- Speed limiter* - changing speed (p. 185)
- Speed limiter* - getting started (p. 184)
- Speed limiter* - temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 185)
- Speed limiter* - deactivation (p. 186)

Speed limiter* - deactivation

A (Speed Limiter) can be regarded as a reverse cruise control - the driver regulates the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a pre-selected/set speed by the speed limiter.

To deactivate the speed limiter:

- Press the steering wheel button .
 - > The combined instrument panel's symbol for the speed limiter (6) and the mark for the set speed (5) are extinguished. The selected and stored speed are thus deleted from the memory and cannot be resumed with the  button.

The driver can then use the accelerator pedal to choose a speed without limitation.

Related information

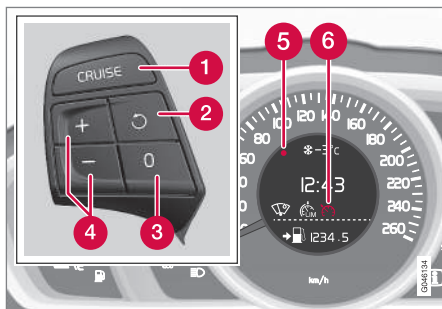
- Speed limiter* (p. 184)
- Speed limiter* - getting started (p. 184)
- Speed limiter* - temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 185)
- Speed limiter* - alarm for speed exceeded (p. 186)



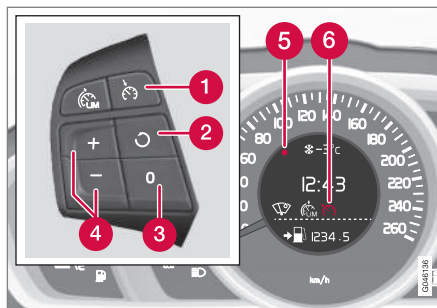
Cruise control*

The cruise control (CC – Cruise Control) helps the driver maintain an even speed, resulting in a more relaxed driving on motorways and long, straight roads in regular traffic flows.

Overview



The steering wheel buttons and combined instrument panel in cars **without** speed limiter⁴.



The steering wheel buttons and combined instrument panel in cars **with** speed limiter⁴.

- 1 Cruise control - On/Off.
- 2 Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
- 3 Standby mode
- 4 Activate and adjust the speed.
- 5 Selected speed (GREY = Standby mode).
- 6 Cruise control active - WHITE symbol (GREY = Standby mode).

WARNING

The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed and/or suitable distance.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

Related information

- Cruise control* - managing speed (p. 188)
- Cruise control* temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 188)
- Cruise control* - resume set speed (p. 189)
- Cruise control* - deactivate (p. 189)

⁴ A Volvo dealer has updated information about what applies in each respective market.



Cruise control* - managing speed

The cruise control (CC – Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed. It is possible to activate, set or change the speed.

Activating and setting the speed

To enable cruise control:

- Press the steering wheel button
- > The cruise control symbol in the combined instrument panel changes from WHITE to GREY and shows that the cruise control is in standby mode.

To activate cruise control:

- At the required speed - press the steering wheel button or .
- > The current speed is stored in the memory and the combined instrument panel's marking (5) is illuminated/turns WHITE at the selected speed.

NOTE

Cruise Control cannot be enabled at speeds below 30 km/h.

Changing the speed

To change the stored speed:

- Adjust with short presses on or - every press gives +/- 5 km/h. The last presses made are stored in the memory.

To adjust +/- 1 km/h:

- Hold down the button and release it at the required speed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the cruise control setting - the car returns to the set speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

NOTE

If any of the Cruise Control buttons are held depressed for several minutes then it is blocked and deactivated. To be able to reactivate Cruise Control, the car must be stopped and the engine restarted.

Related information

- Cruise control* (p. 187)
- Cruise control* temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 188)
- Cruise control* - resume set speed (p. 189)
- Cruise control* - deactivate (p. 189)

Cruise control* temporary deactivation and standby mode

The cruise control (CC – Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed. The function can be temporarily deactivated and set in standby mode.

Temporary deactivation - standby mode

To temporarily disengage cruise control and set it in standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button .
- > The combined instrument panel's marking (5) and the symbol (6) change colour from WHITE to GREY.

Automatic standby mode

Cruise control is temporarily disengaged and set in standby mode if:

- wheels lose traction
- the foot brake is used
- speed falls below approx. 30 km/h
- the gear selector is moved to neutral position (automatic gearbox)
- the driver maintains a speed higher than the set speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then regulate the speed.

Related information

- Cruise control* (p. 187)
- Cruise control* - managing speed (p. 188)




- Cruise control* - resume set speed (p. 189)
- Cruise control* - deactivate (p. 189)


Cruise control* - resume set speed

The cruise control (CC – Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed. After temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 188) it is possible to resume the set speed.

To reactivate the cruise control from standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button .
- > The combined instrument panel's marking (5) and symbol (6) change colour from GREY to WHITE and the speed is then set to the last speed stored.

NOTE


A marked speed increase may occur once the speed has been resumed by selecting .

Related information

- Cruise control* (p. 187)
- Cruise control* - managing speed (p. 188)
- Cruise control* temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 188)
- Cruise control* - deactivate (p. 189)

Cruise control* - deactivate

The cruise control (CC – Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed. How it is deactivated is described here.

The cruise control is deactivated with a steering wheel button (1) or by switching off the engine - the set speed is deleted from the memory and cannot be resumed with the  button.

Related information

- Cruise control* (p. 187)
- Cruise control* - managing speed (p. 188)
- Cruise control* temporary deactivation and standby mode (p. 188)
- Cruise control* - resume set speed (p. 189)



Adaptive cruise control - ACC*

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed and a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

The adaptive cruise control provides a more relaxing driving experience on long journeys on motorways and long straight main roads in smooth traffic flows.

The driver sets the desired speed (p. 193) and time interval (p. 194) to the car in front. When the radar detector detects a slower vehicle in front of the car, the speed is automatically adapted to that. When the road is clear again the car returns to the selected speed.

If the adaptive cruise control is switched off or set to standby mode (p. 195) and the car comes too close to a vehicle in front, then the driver is warned instead by the Distance Warning (p. 204) function about the short distance.



WARNING

The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the adaptive cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed or suitable distance.

The adaptive cruise control cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions.

Read all the sections about the adaptive cruise control in the owner's manual in order to learn about its limitations, of which the driver should be aware before it is used.

The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the adaptive cruise control is being used.



IMPORTANT

Maintenance of adaptive cruise control components must only be performed at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Automatic gearbox

Cars with automatic gearbox have enhanced functionality with the adaptive cruise control's Queue Assist (p. 196).

Related information

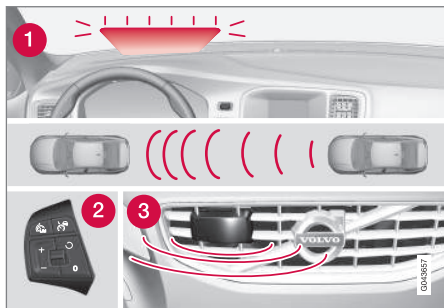
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 192)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 191)
- Adaptive cruise control* - fault tracing and action (p. 201)
- Adaptive cruise control* - symbols and messages (p. 202)



Adaptive cruise control* - function

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed and a safe distance from the vehicle ahead. It consists of a cruise control system and a coordinated spacing system.

Function overview



Function overview⁵.

- 1 Warning lamp - braking by driver required
- 2 Steering wheel keypad (p. 192)
- 3 Radar sensor (p. 199)

WARNING

Adaptive cruise control is not a collision avoidance system. The driver must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.

The adaptive cruise control does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.

Do not use the adaptive cruise control, for example, in city traffic, in dense traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

Distance to the vehicle ahead (p. 194) is measured primarily by a radar sensor (p. 199). Cruise control regulates the speed with acceleration and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when they are being used by the adaptive cruise control.

The adaptive cruise control aims to follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar sensor cannot see any vehicle in front then the car will instead maintain the cruise control's set speed. This also happens if the speed of the vehicle in front exceeds the cruise control's set speed.

The adaptive cruise control aims to control the speed in a smooth way. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies with large differences in speed, or if the vehicle in front brakes heavily. Due to limitations in the radar sensor (p. 199) braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.

The adaptive cruise control can be activated to follow another vehicle at speeds from 30 km/h⁶ up to 200 km/h. If the speed falls below 30 km/h or if the engine speed becomes too low, the cruise control is set in standby mode (p. 195) at which automatic braking ceases - the driver must then take over himself/herself to maintain a safe distance to the vehicle ahead.

Warning lamp - braking by driver required

Adaptive cruise control has a braking capacity that is equivalent to more than 40% of the car's braking capacity.

If the car needs to be braked more heavily than cruise control capacity and the driver does not brake, then cruise control uses the warning lamp and warning sound from the Collision warning system (p. 214) in order to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

⁵ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may differ depending on car model.

⁶ Queue Assistant (p. 196) (in cars with automatic gearbox) can operate in the range of 0-200 km/h.



07 Driver support



NOTE

The warning lamp may be difficult to see in strong sunlight or when wearing sunglasses.

WARNING

Cruise Control warns only of vehicles which the radar sensor has detected. Hence the warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay. Do not wait for a warning without braking when so required.

Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that the adaptive cruise control is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. It may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill slopes, with a heavy load or with a trailer - in which case, be extra attentive and ready to slow down.

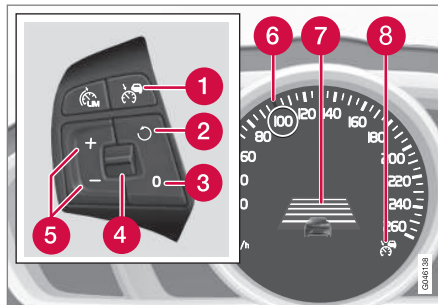
Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- Adaptive cruise control* - deactivate (p. 196)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overtaking another vehicle (p. 196)

Adaptive cruise control* - overview

Operation of the adaptive cruise control and steering wheel keypad varies depending on whether or not the car is equipped with speed limiter⁷.

Adaptive cruise control with Speed limiter

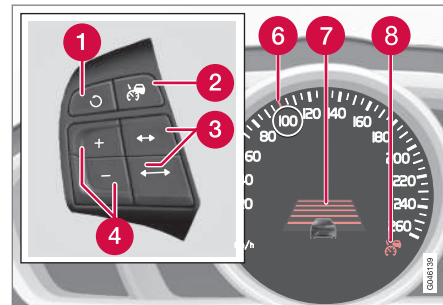


- 1 Cruise control - On/Off.
- 2 Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
- 3 Standby mode
- 4 Time interval - Increase/decrease.
- 5 Activate and adjust the speed.
- 6 Green marking at stored speed (WHITE = standby mode).

- 7 Time distance

- 8 ACC is active at the GREEN symbol (WHITE = standby mode).

Adaptive cruise control without Speed limiter



- 1 Standby mode ceases and the stored speed is resumed.
- 2 Cruise control - On/Off or Standby mode.
- 3 Time interval - Increase/decrease.
- 4 Activate and adjust the speed.
- 5 (Not used)
- 6 Green marking at stored speed (WHITE = standby mode).

⁷ A Volvo dealer has updated information about what applies in each respective market.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



- 7 Time distance
- 8 ACC is active at the GREEN symbol (WHITE = standby mode).


Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 191)
- Adaptive cruise control* - symbols and messages (p. 202)



Adaptive cruise control* - managing speed

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed and a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

To enable cruise control:

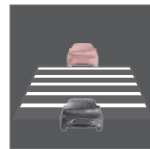
- Press the steering wheel button  - a similar WHITE symbol illuminates in the combined instrument panel (8) which shows that cruise control is in standby mode (p. 195).

To activate cruise control:

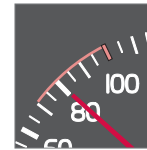
- At the required speed - press the steering wheel button  or .
- > The current speed is stored in the memory, the combined instrument panel shows a "magnifying glass" around the selected speed for a second or so and its marking changes from WHITE to GREEN.



When this symbol changes colour from WHITE to GREEN, the cruise control is active and the car maintains the stored speed.



Only when the symbol shows an image of another vehicle is the **distance** to the vehicle in front controlled by the cruise control.







At the same time a speed range is marked:

- the higher speed with the GREEN marking (6) is the pre-programmed speed
- the lower speed is the speed of the car in front.

Changing the speed

To change the stored speed:

- Adjust with short presses on  or  - every press gives +/- 5 km/h. The last presses made are stored in the memory.

If speed is increased using the accelerator pedal prior to pressing the / button, then it is the car's current speed when the button is pressed that is stored in the cruise control.

To adjust +/- 1 km/h:

- Hold down the button and release it at the required speed.



NOTE

If any of the Cruise Control buttons are held depressed for several minutes then it is blocked and deactivated. To be able to reactivate Cruise Control, the car must be stopped and the engine restarted.

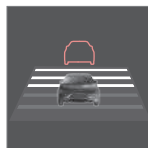
In certain situations, cruise control cannot be activated. In this case, the combined instrument panel (p. 202) shows **Cruise control Unavailable**.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 192)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 191)



Adaptive cruise control* - set time interval

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed and a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.



Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the combined instrument panel as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line corresponds to approximately 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines approximately 3 seconds.

To set/change the time distance:

- Turn the thumbwheel on the steering wheel keypad (p. 192) (or use the /  buttons for cars without Speed limiter).

At low speed, when the distances are short, the adaptive cruise control increases the time interval slightly.

The adaptive cruise control allows the time interval to vary noticeably in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle in front smoothly and comfortably.

Note that a short time interval only allows the driver a short time to react and take action if any unforeseen traffic problem should arise.

The same symbol is also shown when Distance Warning (p. 204) function is activated.

NOTE

Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.

If Cruise Control does not appear to react when activated, this may be because the time distance to the car in front is preventing an increase in speed.

The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 192)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 191)
- Adaptive cruise control* - deactivate (p. 196)



Adaptive cruise control* - temporary deactivation, and standby mode

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed and a safe distance from the vehicle ahead. The cruise control can be temporarily deactivated and set in standby mode.

Temporary deactivation - standby mode with Speed limiter

To temporarily disengage the adaptive cruise control and set it in standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button 



This symbol and the stored speed's marking then change colour from GREEN to WHITE.

Temporary deactivation - standby mode without Speed limiter

To temporarily disengage the adaptive cruise control and set it in standby mode:

- Press the steering wheel button 

Standby mode due to driver intervention

Cruise control is temporarily disengaged and set in standby mode if:

- the foot brake is used
- the gear selector is moved to **N** position (automatic gearbox)
- the driver maintains a speed higher than the set speed for longer than 1 minute.

The driver must then regulate the speed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the cruise control setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode


The adaptive cruise control is dependent on other systems, e.g. DSTC (Stability and traction control system) (p. 178). If any of these systems stop working then cruise control is automatically deactivated.

In the event of automatic deactivation a signal will sound and the message **Cruise control Cancelled** is shown in the combined instrument panel. The driver must then intervene and adapt the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.

An automatic deactivation can be due to:

- the driver opens the door
- the driver takes off his seatbelt
- engine speed is too low/high
- speed has fallen below 30 km/h⁸
- wheels lose traction
- brake temperature is high
- the radar sensor is covered e.g. by wet snow or heavy rain (radar waves blocked).

Resume set speed

Adaptive cruise control in standby mode is reactivated with one press on the steering wheel button  - the speed is then set to the last stored speed.



NOTE

A marked speed increase may occur once the speed has been resumed by selecting



Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 192)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 191)

⁸ Does not apply to a car with Queue Assistant - it manages right down to stationary.



Adaptive cruise control* - overtaking another vehicle

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed and a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

When the car is following another vehicle and the driver indicates an impending overtaking manoeuvre with the direction indicator⁹, the adaptive cruise control helps to briefly accelerate the car towards the vehicle in front.

This function is active at speeds above 70 km/h.

WARNING

Be aware that this function can be activated in more situations other than during overtaking, e.g. when a direction indicator is used to indicate a change of lane or exit to another road - the car will then accelerate briefly.



Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 192)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 191)



Adaptive cruise control* - deactivate

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed and a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

Keypad with Speed limiter

The adaptive cruise control is switched off with the steering wheel button  in the steering wheel keypad (p. 192). The set speed is cleared and cannot be resumed with the  button.

Keypad without Speed limiter

With a short press on the steering wheel button  the adaptive cruise control is set in standby mode (p. 195). With a further short press it is deactivated. The set speed is cleared and cannot be resumed with the  button.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 191)
- Adaptive cruise control* - symbols and messages (p. 202)

Adaptive Cruise Control* - Queue Assist

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed and a safe distance from the vehicle ahead. Queue Assist also provides the Adaptive Cruise Control with enhanced functionality at speeds below 30 km/h..

The adaptive cruise control is supplemented by the Queue Assist function (also called "Queue Assist").

Queue Assistant has the following functions:

- Extended speed range - also below 30 km/h and when stationary
- Change of target
- Automatic braking ceases when stationary
- Automatic activation parking brake.

Note that the lowest programmable speed for the adaptive cruise control is 30 km/h - even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to a standstill, a lower speed **cannot** be selected.

⁹ On left flash only in left-hand-drive car, or right flash in right-hand-drive car.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



Extended speed range

i NOTE


In order to activate the cruise control the driver's door must be closed and the driver must be wearing the seatbelt.

The adaptive cruise control can follow another vehicle within the range 0-200 km/h.

i NOTE

Activation of the cruise control below 30 km/h requires a vehicle in front within a reasonable distance.

For shorter stops in connection with inching in slow traffic or at traffic lights driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed about 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the car in front starts moving again then the Adaptive cruise control is set in standby mode with automatic braking. The driver must then reactivate it in one of the following ways:

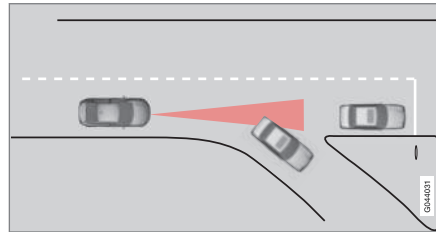
- Press the steering wheel button .
- or
- Depress the accelerator pedal.
- > The cruise control will then resume following the vehicle in front.

i NOTE

Queue Assist can hold the car stationary for a maximum of 4 minutes - then the parking brake is applied and Cruise Control is disengaged.

- The driver has to release the parking brake before the cruise control can be reactivated.

Change of target



If the target vehicle in front suddenly turns then there may be stationary traffic in front.

When the adaptive cruise control is following another vehicle at speeds **below** 30 km/h and changes target from a moving to a stationary vehicle, the cruise control will slow down for the stationary vehicle.

! WARNING

When the cruise control is following another vehicle at speeds **in excess of** 30 km/h and the target is changed from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, the cruise control will ignore the stationary vehicle and instead select the stored speed.

- The driver must intervene him/herself and brake.

Automatic standby mode with change of target

The adaptive cruise control is disengaged and set in standby mode:

- when the speed is below 5 km/h and cruise control is not sure whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or some other object, e.g. a speed bump.
- when the speed is below 5 km/h and the vehicle in front turns off so the cruise control no longer has a vehicle to follow.

Termination of automatic braking at a standstill

In certain situations, Queue Assist stops automatic braking at a standstill. This means that the brakes are released and the car may start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself/herself in order to maintain its position.



Queue Assist releases the foot brake and sets the adaptive cruise control in standby mode in the following situations:

- the driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal
- the parking brake is applied
- the gear selector is moved to **P**, **N** or **R** position
- the driver sets the cruise control in standby mode.

Automatic activation parking brake

In certain situations Queue Assist applies the parking brake in order to keep the car remaining stationary.

This takes place if:

- the driver opens the door or takes off his/her seatbelt
- DSTC is changed from **Normal** to **Sport** mode
- Queue Assist has held the car stationary for more than 4 minutes
- the engine is switched off
- the brakes have overheated.

Related information




- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 192)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 191)

Adaptive cruise control* - switch cruise control functionality

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver maintain a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

Changing from ACC to CC

With one press of the button the adaptive part (spacing system) in the cruise control is deactivated, at which point the car just follows the set speed.


- Give a **long** press on the steering wheel button  - the combined instrument panel's symbol changes from  to .
- > By these means the standard cruise control (p. 187) CC (Cruise Control) is activated.



WARNING

The car no longer brakes automatically after switching from ACC to CC - it merely follows the set speed.

Changing back from CC to ACC

Switch off cruise control with 1-2 presses on  in accordance with the deactivation instructions (p. 196). The next time the system is switched on it is the Adaptive cruise control that is activated.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 192)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 191)



Radar sensor

The function of the radar sensor is to detect cars or larger vehicles in the same direction, in the same lane.

The radar sensor is used by the following functions:

- Adaptive cruise control*
- Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Pedestrian Detection*
- Distance Warning*

Related information

- Radar sensor - limitations (p. 199)
- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- Collision warning system* (p. 214)
- Distance Warning* (p. 204)

Radar sensor - limitations

A radar sensor (p. 199) has certain limitations, due to its limited field of vision for example.

The capacity of the radar sensor to detect vehicles in front is reduced significantly:

- if the radar sensor becomes blocked and cannot detect other vehicles e.g. in heavy rain or slush, or if other objects have collected in front of the radar sensor.

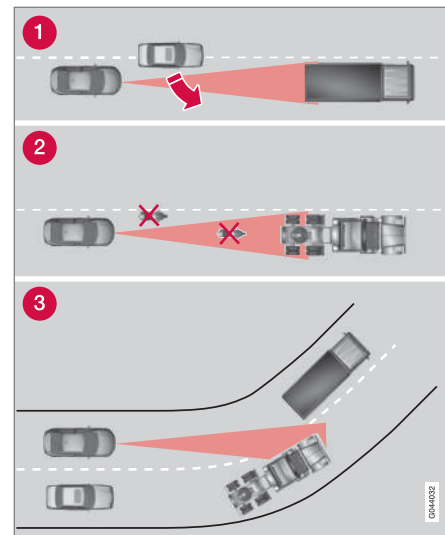
NOTE

Keep the area in front of the radar sensor clean - see subheading "Maintenance" (p. 219).

- if the speed of vehicles in front is significantly different from your own speed.

Field of vision

The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. In some situations another vehicle is not detected, or the detection is made later than expected.



ACC field of vision.

- 1 Sometimes the radar sensor is late at detecting vehicles at close distances, e.g. a vehicle that drives in between the car and vehicles in front.
- 2 Small vehicles, such as motorcycles, or vehicles not driving in the centre of the lane can remain undetected.
- 3 In bends the radar sensor may detect the wrong vehicle or lose a detected vehicle from view.



WARNING

The driver must always be observant with regard to the traffic conditions and intervene when the adaptive cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed or suitable distance.

The adaptive cruise control cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions.

Read all the sections about the adaptive cruise control in the owner's manual in order to learn about its limitations, of which the driver should be aware before it is used.

The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the adaptive cruise control is being used.

WARNING

Accessories or other objects such as auxiliary lamps must not be fitted in front of the grille.

WARNING

Adaptive cruise control is not a collision avoidance system. The driver must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.

The adaptive cruise control does not brake for humans or animals, and not for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.

Do not use the adaptive cruise control, for example, in city traffic, in dense traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

IMPORTANT

In the event of visible damage to the car's grille, or if you suspect that the radar sensor may be damaged:

- Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

The function may completely or partially disappear - or malfunction - if the grille, the radar sensor or its bracket is damaged or has loosened.

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- Collision warning system* (p. 214)
- Distance Warning* (p. 204)



Adaptive cruise control* - fault tracing and action

The adaptive cruise control (p. 190) (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an even speed and a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

If the combined instrument panel shows the message **Radar blocked** See manual this

means that the radar signals from the radar sensor (p. 199) are blocked and that vehicles in front of the car cannot be detected.

In turn this means that - apart from Adaptive Cruise Control - Distance Warning (p. 204) and Collision Warning (p. 214) with Auto Brake are not operating either.

The following table presents examples of possible causes for a message being shown along with the appropriate action:

| Cause | Action |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The radar surface in the grille is dirty or covered with ice or snow. | Clean the radar surface in the grille from dirt, ice and snow. |
| Heavy rain or snow blocking the radar signals. | No action. Sometimes the radar does not work during heavy rain or snowfall. |
| Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the radar signals. | No action. Sometimes the radar does not work on a very wet or snowy road surface. |
| The radar surface has been cleaned but the message remains. | Wait. It could take several minutes for the radar to sense that it is no longer blocked. |

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 192)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 191)
- Adaptive cruise control* - symbols and messages (p. 202)







07 Driver support

Adaptive cruise control* - symbols and messages

The adaptive cruise control (ACC – Adaptive Cruise Control) helps the driver to maintain an

even speed and a safe distance from the vehicle ahead. Sometimes the adaptive cruise control may display a symbol and/or text

message. Here are several examples – follow the recommendation given if appropriate:

| Symbol | Message | Specification |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | The symbol is GREEN | The car maintains the stored speed. |
|  | The symbol is WHITE | Adaptive cruise control is set to standby mode. |
|  | | Standard cruise control is selected manually. |
| | DSTC Normal to enable Cruise | The adaptive cruise control cannot be activated until the Stability and Traction Control system (DSTC) (p. 178) has been set in Normal mode. |
| | Cruise control Cancelled | The adaptive cruise control has been deactivated - the driver has to regulate the speed himself. |
| | Cruise control Unavailable | The adaptive cruise control cannot be activated. This could be due to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • brake temperature is high • the radar sensor is blocked by e.g. wet snow or rain. |
|  | Radar blocked See manual | The adaptive cruise control is temporarily disengaged. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The radar sensor is blocked and cannot detect other vehicles. For example, in the event of heavy rain or if slush has collected in front of the radar sensor. The driver can then choose to switch to (p. 198) normal Cruise control (CC) - a text message provides information on appropriate alternatives. Read about radar sensor limitations (p. 199). |



| Symbol | Message | Specification |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | Cruise control Service required | The adaptive cruise control is disengaged. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |
| | Press Brake To hold + acoustic alarm (Only with Queue Assistant) | The car is stationary and the cruise control will release the foot brake to allow the parking brake to take over and hold the car, but a fault in the parking brake means the car will shortly begin to roll. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The driver must brake himself/herself. The message remains and the alarm sounds until the driver depresses the brake pedal or uses the accelerator pedal. |
| | Below 30 km/h Only following (Only with Queue Assistant) | Shown with attempts to activate the cruise control at speeds below 30 km/h without a vehicle in front within the activation distance (approx. 30 metres). |

Related information

- Adaptive cruise control - ACC* (p. 190)
- Adaptive cruise control* - overview (p. 192)
- Adaptive cruise control* - function (p. 191)

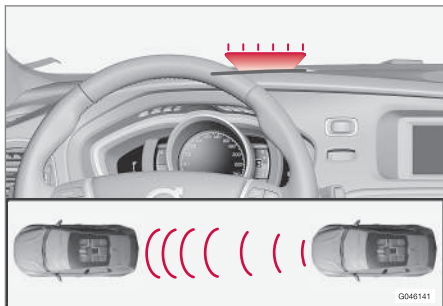


07 Driver support

Distance Warning*

Distance Warning (Distance Alert) is a function that informs the driver about the time interval to vehicles in front.

Distance Warning is active at speeds above 30 km/h and only reacts to vehicles driving in front of the car, in the same direction. No distance information is provided for oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles.



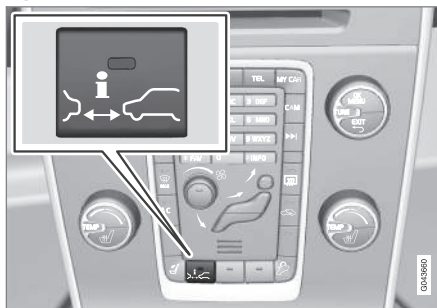
Orange-coloured warning lamp¹⁰.

An orange-coloured warning lamp in the windscreen illuminates with a constant glow if the distance to the vehicle in front is shorter than the set time interval.

NOTE
Distance warning is deactivated during the time the adaptive cruise control is active.

WARNING
Distance warning only reacts if the distance to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the preset value - the speed of the driver's vehicle is not affected.

Operation

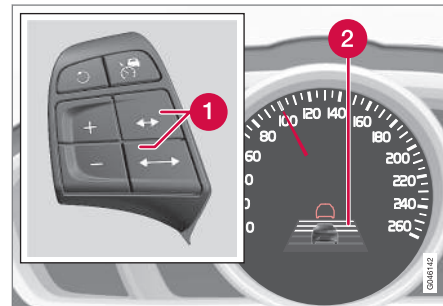


Press the button in the centre console to switch the function on or off. The function is switched on if one lamp is illuminated in the button.

Some combinations of the selected equipment leave no vacant space for a button in the centre console - in which case the func-

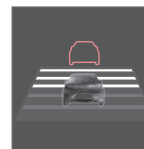
tion is handled by the car's menu system **MY CAR**, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Set time interval



Controls and symbol for time interval.

- 1 Time interval - Increase/decrease.
- 2 Time interval - On.



Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the combined instrument panel as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line corre-

sponds to approximately 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines approximately 3 seconds.

¹⁰ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



The same symbol is also shown when adaptive cruise control is activated.

NOTE

The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.

The set time interval is also used by the function adaptive cruise control (p. 191).

Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.

Related information

- Distance Warning* - limitations (p. 205)

Distance Warning* - limitations

Distance Warning (Distance Alert) is a function that informs the driver about the distance to vehicles in front. The function uses the same radar sensor as the Adaptive cruise control (p. 190) and Collision warning with auto brake (p. 214), has some limitations.

NOTE

Strong sunlight, reflections or strong variations in light intensity, as well as wearing sunglasses, could mean that the warning light in the windscreen cannot be seen.

Poor weather or winding roads could affect the radar sensor's capacity to detect vehicles in front.

The size of other vehicles could also affect detection capacity, e.g. motorcycles. This could mean that the warning lamp illuminates at a shorter distance than the setting or that the warning is temporarily absent.

Extremely high speeds can also cause the lamp to illuminate at a shorter distance than that set due to limitations in sensor range.

For further information on radar sensor limitations, see Radar sensor - limitations (p. 199) and (p. 220).

Related information

- Distance Warning* (p. 204)
- Distance Warning* - symbols and messages (p. 206)





07 Driver support

Distance Warning* - symbols and messages

Distance Warning (Distance Alert) is a function that informs the driver about the time interval

to vehicles in front. The function has certain limitations.

| Symbol ^A | Message | Specification |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Radar blocked See manual | Distance Warning temporarily disengaged. The radar sensor is blocked and cannot detect other vehicles, e.g. in the event of heavy rain or if slush has collected in front of the radar sensor. Read about radar sensor limitations (p. 199). |
|  | Collision warn. Service required | Distance Warning and Collision Warning with Auto Brake fully or partially disengaged. Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |

^A Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.

Related information

- Distance Warning* (p. 204)
- Distance Warning* - limitations (p. 205)



City Safety™

City Safety™ is a function for helping the driver to avoid a collision when driving in queues, amongst other things, when changes in the traffic ahead, combined with a lapse in attention, could lead to an incident.

The City Safety™ function is active at speeds under 50 km/h and it helps the driver by automatically braking the car in the event of imminent risk of collision with vehicles in front, should the driver not react in time by braking and/or steering away.

City Safety™ is activated in situations where the driver should have started braking earlier, which is why it cannot help the driver in every situation.

City Safety™ is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention.

City Safety™ must not be used as an excuse for the driver to change his/her driving style. If the driver solely relies on City Safety™ to do the braking, there will be a collision sooner or later.

The driver or passengers normally only notice City Safety™ if a situation arises where the car is extremely close to being in a collision.

If the car is also equipped with Collision Warning with Auto Brake (p. 214)* these two systems complement each other.

IMPORTANT

Maintenance and replacement of City Safety™ components must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

WARNING

City Safety™ does not engage in all driving situations or traffic, weather or road conditions.

City Safety™ does not react to vehicles driving in a different direction from the car, to small vehicles and motorcycles or to humans and animals.

City Safety™ can prevent collision at a speed difference of less than 15 km/h - at a higher speed difference, it is only possible to reduce collision speed. In order to obtain full brake function, the driver must depress the brake pedal.

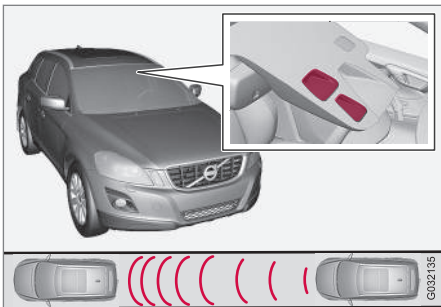
Never wait for City Safety™ to engage. The driver always bears responsibility for maintaining the proper distance and speed.

Related information

- City Safety™ - limitations (p. 209)
- City Safety™ - function (p. 207)
- City Safety™ - operation (p. 208)
- City Safety™ - laser sensor (p. 211)
- City Safety™ - symbols and messages (p. 213)

City Safety™ - function

City Safety™ detects the traffic in front of the car with a laser sensor fitted in the top edge of the windscreen. If there is an imminent risk of collision, City Safety™ will automatically brake the car, which may be experienced as sudden braking.



Laser sensor transmitter and receiver window¹¹.

If the speed difference is 4-15 km/h in relation to the vehicle in front then City Safety™ can completely prevent a collision.

City Safety™ activates a short, sharp braking and stops the car in normal circumstances, just behind the vehicle in front. For most drivers this is well outside normal driving style and may be experienced as being uncomfortable.

If the difference in speed between the vehicles is greater than 15 km/h then City Safety™ may not prevent the collision on its own. To obtain full brake force, the driver must depress the brake pedal. This could then make it possible to prevent a collision, even at speed differences above 15 km/h.

When the function is activated and brakes, the combined instrument panel shows a text message to the effect that the function is/has been active.

NOTE

When City Safety™ brakes, the brake lights come on.

Related information

- City Safety™ - limitations (p. 209)
- City Safety™ (p. 207)
- City Safety™ - operation (p. 208)
- City Safety™ - laser sensor (p. 211)
- City Safety™ - symbols and messages (p. 213)

City Safety™ - operation

City Safety™ is a function for helping the driver to avoid a collision when driving in queues, amongst other things, when changes in the traffic ahead, combined with a lapse in attention, could lead to an incident.

On and Off

NOTE

The City Safety™ function is always switched on after the engine has been started via key position I and II (p. 73).

In certain situations, it may be advisable to disable City Safety™, e.g. where leafy branches could sweep over the bonnet and/or windscreen.

After starting the engine City Safety™ can be deactivated as follows: The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

However, the function will be enabled the next time the engine is started, regardless of whether the system was enabled or disabled when the engine was switched off.

¹¹ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

**WARNING**

The laser sensor also transmits laser light when City Safety™ is disabled manually.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 207)
- City Safety™ - limitations (p. 209)
- City Safety™ - function (p. 207)
- City Safety™ - laser sensor (p. 211)
- City Safety™ - symbols and messages (p. 213)
- MY CAR (p. 105)

City Safety™ - limitations

The sensor in City Safety™ is designed to detect cars and other large vehicles in front of the car irrespective of whether it is day or night. However, the function has a number of limitations.

However, the sensor has limitations and has poorer functionality - or none at all - in e.g. heavy snowfall or rain, dense fog, dust storms or white-out situations. Mist, dirt, ice or snow on the windscreen may disrupt the function.

Low-hanging objects, e.g. a flag/pennant for projecting load, or accessories such as auxiliary lamps and bull bars that are higher than the bonnet limit the function.

The laser beam from the sensor in City Safety™ measures how the light is reflected. The sensor cannot detect objects with low reflection capacity. The rear sections of the vehicle generally reflect the light sufficiently thanks to the number plate and rear light reflectors.

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity of City Safety™ to avoid a collision. In such situations the ABS and DSTC systems will provide best possible braking force with maintained stability.

When your own car is reversing, City Safety™ is temporarily deactivated.

City Safety™ is not activated at low speeds - under 4 km/h, which is why the system does not intervene in situations where a vehicle in front is being approached very slowly, e.g. when parking.

Driver commands are always prioritised, which is why City Safety™ does not intervene in situations where the driver is steering or accelerating in a clear manner, even if a collision is unavoidable.

When City Safety™ has prevented a collision with a stationary object the car remains stationary for a maximum of 1.5 seconds. If the car is braked for a vehicle in front that is moving, then speed is reduced to the same speed as that maintained by the vehicle in front.

On a car with manual gearbox the engine stops when City Safety™ has stopped the car, unless the driver manages to depress the clutch pedal beforehand.

NOTE

- Keep the windscreen surface in front of the laser sensor free from ice, snow and dirt (see the illustration for sensor location (p. 207)).
- Do not affix or mount anything on the windscreen in front of the laser sensor
- Remove ice and snow from the bonnet - snow and ice must not exceed a height of 5 cm.



Fault tracing and action

If the message **Windscreen Sensors blocked** is shown in the combined instrument panel it indicates that the laser sensor is blocked and cannot detect vehicles in front of the car. This means in turn that City Safety™ is not operational.

The **Windscreen Sensors blocked** message is not shown for all situations in which the laser sensor is blocked. The driver must therefore be diligent about keeping the windscreen and area in front of the laser sensor clean.

The following table presents possible causes for the message being shown, along with suggestions for appropriate action.

| Cause | Action |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The windscreen surface in front of the laser sensor is dirty or covered with ice or snow. | Clean the windscreen surface in front of the sensor from dirt, ice and snow. |
| The laser sensor field of vision is blocked. | Remove the blocking object. |



IMPORTANT

If there are cracks, scratches or stone chips in the windscreen in front of either of the laser sensor's "windows" and they cover a surface of approx. 0.5 x 3.0 mm (or larger), then a workshop must be contacted for replacement of the windscreen (see the illustration for sensor location (p. 207)) - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Failure to take action may result in reduced performance for City Safety™.

To avoid the risk of failed, deficient or reduced operation for City Safety™, the following also applies:

- Volvo recommends that you do **not** repair cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the laser sensor - instead, the whole windscreen should be replaced.
- Before replacing a windscreen, contact an authorised Volvo workshop to verify that the correct windscreen is ordered and fitted.
- The same type or Volvo-approved windscreen wipers must be fitted during replacement.

- City Safety™ - laser sensor (p. 211)
- City Safety™ - symbols and messages (p. 213)

Related information

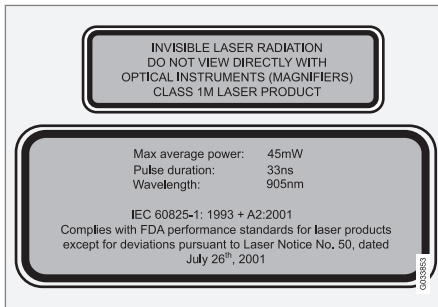
- City Safety™ (p. 207)
- City Safety™ - function (p. 207)
- City Safety™ - operation (p. 208)



City Safety™ - laser sensor

The City Safety™ function includes a sensor which transmits laser light (see illustration (p. 207) for sensor location). Contact a qualified workshop in the event of a fault or if the laser sensor needs servicing - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. It is absolutely essential to follow the prescribed instructions when handling the laser sensor.

The following two labels relate to the laser sensor:



The upper label in the figure describes the laser beam's classification:

- Laser radiation - Do not look into the laser beam with optical instruments - Class 1M laser product.

The lower label in the figure describes the laser beam's physical data:

- IEC 60825-1:1993 + A2:2001. Complies with FDA (U.S. Food Administration) standards for laser product design with the exception of deviations in accordance with "Laser Notice No. 50" from 26 July 2001.

Radiation data for the laser sensor

The following table specifies the laser sensor's physical data.

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------|
| Maximum pulse energy | 2.64 μ J |
| Maximum average output | 45 mW |
| Pulse duration | 33 ns |
| Divergence (horizontal x vertical) | 28° x 12° |



WARNING

If any of these instructions are not followed then there is a risk of eye injury!

- Never look into the laser sensor (which emits spreading invisible laser radiation) at a distance of 100 mm or closer with magnifying optics such as a magnifying glass, microscope, lens or similar optical instruments.
- Testing, repair, removal, adjustment and/or replacement of the laser sensor's spare parts must only be carried out by a qualified workshop - we recommend an authorised Volvo workshop.
- To avoid exposure to harmful radiation, do not carry out any readjustments or maintenance other than those specified here.
- The repairer must follow specially drawn up workshop information for the laser sensor.
- Do not remove the laser sensor (this includes removing the lenses). A removed laser sensor does not fulfil laser class 3B as per standard IEC 60825-1. Laser class 3B is not eye-safe and therefore entails a risk of injury.
- The laser sensor's connector must be unplugged before removal from the windscreen.



- The laser sensor must be fitted onto the windscreen before the sensor's connector is plugged in.
- The laser sensor transmits a laser light when the remote control key is in key position **II** (p. 73) even if the engine is switched off.

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 207)
- City Safety™ - limitations (p. 209)
- City Safety™ - function (p. 207)
- City Safety™ - operation (p. 208)
- City Safety™ - symbols and messages (p. 213)






City Safety™ - symbols and messages

In conjunction with automatic braking by the City Safety™ (p. 207) system, one or more

symbols may illuminate in the combined instrument panel and a text message may be shown. A text message can be acknowledged

by briefly pressing the **OK** button on the direction indicator stalk.

| Symbol | Message | Meaning/Action |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Auto braking by City Safety | City Safety™ is braking or has automatically braked. |
|  | Windscreen Sensors blocked | The laser sensor is temporarily non-operational because something is blocking it. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remove the object blocking the sensor and/or clean the windscreen in front of the sensor. Read about laser sensor limitations (p. 209). |
|  | City Safety Service required | City Safety™ is not operational. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |

Related information

- City Safety™ (p. 207)
- City Safety™ - limitations (p. 209)
- City Safety™ - function (p. 207)
- City Safety™ - operation (p. 208)
- City Safety™ - laser sensor (p. 211)



Collision warning system*

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian, bicycle or vehicle in front that are stationary or moving in the same direction.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection is activated in situations where the driver should have started braking earlier, which is why it cannot help the driver in every situation.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection may prevent a collision or reduce the collision speed.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection must not be used as an excuse for the driver to change his/her driving style. If the driver solely relies on Collision Warning with Auto Brake to do the braking, there might be a risk of a collision sooner or later.

Two system levels

The Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection function is available in

two variants, depending on how the car is equipped:

Level 1

The driver is merely warned¹² of occurring obstacles by means of visual and acoustic signals - no automatic braking intervenes, the driver must himself brake.

Level 2

The driver is warned of occurring obstacles by means of visual and acoustic signals - the car is braked automatically if the driver himself does not act within a reasonable time.



IMPORTANT

Maintenance of components included in Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection must only be carried out in a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Collision warning system* - function (p. 215)
- Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians (p. 218)
- Collision warning system* - cyclist detection (p. 216)
- Collision warning system* - operation (p. 219)

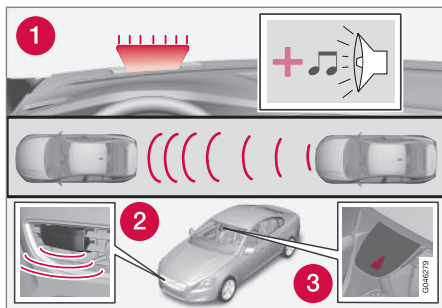
- Collision warning system* - general limitations (p. 220)
- Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations (p. 222)
- Collision warning system* - symbols and messages (p. 224)

¹² No warning for cyclists with "Level 1".



Collision warning system* - function

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian, bicycle or vehicle in front that are stationary or moving in the same direction.



Function overview¹³.

- 1 Audio-visual warning signal in the event of a collision risk.
- 2 Radar sensor¹⁴
- 3 Camera sensor

Collision Warning with Auto Brake executes three steps in the following order:

1. **Collision warning**
2. **Brake support¹⁴**

¹³ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

¹⁴ With system Level 2 only.

3. Auto Brake¹⁴

The collision warning system and City Safety™ (p. 207) complement each other.

1 - Collision warning

The driver is first warned of a potentially imminent collision.

The collision warning system detects pedestrians, stationary vehicles as well as vehicles driving in the same direction in front of the car.

If there is a risk of collision with a pedestrian or a vehicle then the driver's attention is attracted with a flashing red warning signal (1) and an acoustic signal.

2 - Brake support¹⁴

If the risk of collision has increased further after the collision warning then the brake support is activated.

This means that the brake system is prepared for rapid braking by applying the brakes lightly, which may feel like a slight jolt.

If the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly then full brake function is implemented.

Brake support also reinforces the driver's braking if the system considers that the braking is not sufficient to avoid a collision.

3 - Auto Brake¹⁴

The automatic brake function is activated last.

If in this situation the driver has not yet started to take evasive action and the risk of collision is imminent then the automatic braking function is deployed - this takes place irrespective of whether or not the driver brakes. Braking then takes place with full brake force in order to reduce collision speed, or with limited brake force if it is sufficient to avoid a collision. For cyclists, the warning and full brake intervention may come very late or simultaneously.



WARNING

The collision warning system does not engage in all driving situations or traffic, weather or road conditions. The collision warning system does not react to vehicles or cyclists driving in another direction to the car or to animals.

Warning only activated in the event of a high risk for collision. This section "Function" and the section "Limitations" inform about limitations that the driver must be aware of before using the Collision Warning system with Auto Brake.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at a vehicle speed exceeding 80 km/h.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists do not work in darkness and tunnels - not even when streetlights are lit.

The auto-brake function can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed. To ensure full brake performance, the driver should always depress the brake pedal - even when the car auto-brakes.

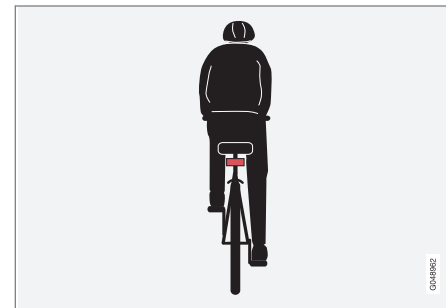
Never wait for a collision warning. The driver is always responsible that the correct distance and speed are maintained - even when the collision warning system with auto-brake is used.

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 214)
- Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians (p. 218)
- Collision warning system* - cyclist detection (p. 216)
- Collision warning system* - operation (p. 219)
- Collision warning system* - general limitations (p. 220)
- Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations (p. 222)
- Collision warning system* - symbols and messages (p. 224)

Collision warning system* - cyclist detection

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian, bicycle or vehicle in front that are stationary or moving in the same direction.

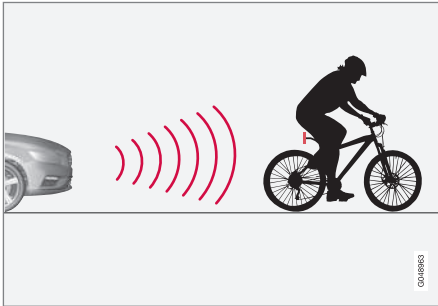


Optimum examples of what the system interprets as a cyclist - with clear body and bicycle contours, directly from behind and in the car's centre line.

Optimal performance of the system requires that the system function that detects a cyclist receives as unambiguous information as possible about the body and bicycle contours - this implies the opportunity to identify the bicycle, head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body combined with a normal human pattern of movement.



If large parts of the cyclist's body or bicycle are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect a cyclist.



The function can only "see" cyclists from behind, who are travelling in the same direction.

- For the function to be able to detect a cyclist, he/she must be an adult and riding a "senior bicycle".
- The bicycle must be equipped with a highly visible and approved¹⁵ rearward-facing red reflector, fitted at least 70 cm above the roadway.
- The function can only detect cyclists directly from behind and who are travelling in the same direction - not at an angle from behind, not from the side.
- Cyclists travelling on the left or right-hand edge of the car's imagined/extended side lines may be detected late or not at all.

- The function's capacity to detect cyclists at dusk and dawn is limited - just like the human eye.
- The function's capacity to detect cyclists is deactivated when driving in darkness and tunnels - even when streetlights are lit.
- For optimum bicycle detection, the City Safety™ function must be activated, City Safety™ (p. 207).

WARNING

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Cyclist Detection is a means of assistance.

The function cannot detect:

- all cyclists in all situations and does not see partially obscured cyclists, for example.
- cyclists in clothing that obscures the contours of the body or who are approaching from the side.
- bicycles that have no rearward-facing red reflector.
- bicycles loaded with large objects.

The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven properly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Related information

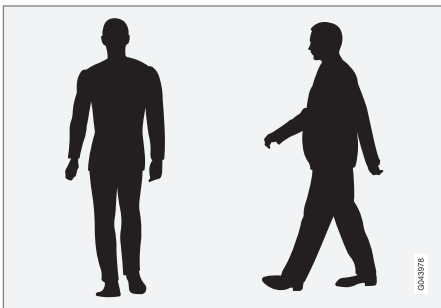
- Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians (p. 218)
- Collision warning system* (p. 214)
- Collision warning system* - function (p. 215)
- Collision warning system* - operation (p. 219)
- Collision warning system* - general limitations (p. 220)
- Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations (p. 222)
- Collision warning system* - symbols and messages (p. 224)

¹⁵ The reflector must fulfil the recommendations and conditions of the traffic authority in the market in question.



Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian, bicycle or vehicle in front that are stationary or moving in the same direction.



Optimal examples of what the system regards as pedestrians with clear body contours.

Optimal performance of the system requires that the system function that detects pedestrians receives as unambiguous information as possible about the contours of the body - this implies the opportunity to identify the head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body combined with a normal human pattern of movement.

If large parts of the body are not visible to the camera then the system cannot detect a pedestrian.

- In order for a pedestrian to be detected he/she must appear full-length and have a height of at least 80 cm.
- The system cannot detect a pedestrian carrying larger items.
- The camera sensor's ability to see pedestrians at dusk and dawn is limited - just like the human eye.
- The camera sensor's capacity to detect pedestrians is deactivated when driving in darkness and tunnels - even when streetlights are lit.

WARNING

Collision Warning with Auto Brake & Pedestrian Detection is an assistance tool.

This function cannot detect all pedestrians in all situations and it cannot see e.g. partially obscured pedestrians, people in clothing that hides the contours of the body or pedestrians shorter than 80 cm.

- The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven properly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 214)
- Collision warning system* - function (p. 215)
- Collision warning system* - operation (p. 219)
- Collision warning system* - cyclist detection (p. 216)
- Collision warning system* - general limitations (p. 220)
- Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations (p. 222)
- Collision warning system* - symbols and messages (p. 224)



Collision warning system* - operation

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian, bicycle or vehicle in front that are stationary or moving in the same direction.

Settings for the collision warning system are made from **MY CAR** via the centre console screen and menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Warning signals On and Off

You can select whether the collision warning system's acoustic and visual warning signals should be switched on or off.

When starting the engine, the setting that was selected when the engine was switched off is obtained automatically.

NOTE

The Brake Support and Auto Brake functions are always enabled - they cannot be deactivated.

Light and acoustic signals

Both the light and acoustic signals can be deactivated after starting the engine. The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

The warning lamp (see (1) in the illustration (p. 215)) is tested each time the engine is started by briefly lighting the separate light points of the warning lamp if the visual and acoustic warning of the collision warning system is activated.

Acoustic signal

The warning sound can be activated/deactivated separately in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Set warning distance

The warning distance regulates the distance at which the visual and acoustic warnings are deployed. The warning distance is set in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

The warning distance determines the system's sensitivity. Warning distance **Long** provides an earlier warning. First test with **Long** and if this setting produces too many warnings, which could be perceived as irritating in certain situations, then change to warning distance **Normal**.

Only use warning distance **Short** in exceptional cases, e.g. for dynamic driving.

NOTE

When the adaptive cruise control is in use the warning lamp and warning sound will be used by the cruise control even if the collision warning system is switched off.

The collision warning system warns the driver in the event of a risk of a collision, but the function cannot shorten driver reaction time.

In order for the collision warning system to be effective, always drive with Distance Warning (p. 204) set at time interval 4–5.

NOTE

Even if the warning distance has been set to **Long** warnings could be perceived as being late in certain situations, e.g. when there are large differences in speed or if vehicles in front brake heavily.

WARNING

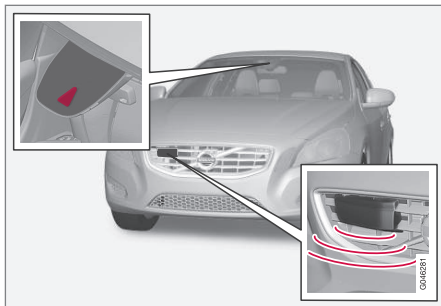
No automatic system can guarantee 100 % correct function in all situations. Therefore, never test Collision Warning with Auto Brake by driving at people or vehicles - this may cause severe damage and injury and risk lives.

Checking settings

The settings required can be controlled on the centre console display screen. Search with the menu system (p. 105) **MY CAR**.



Maintenance



Camera and radar sensor¹⁶.

For the sensors to work correctly, they must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors will reduce their function and may prevent measurement.

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 214)
- Collision warning system* - function (p. 215)
- Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians (p. 218)

- Collision warning system* - cyclist detection (p. 216)
- Collision warning system* - general limitations (p. 220)
- Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations (p. 222)
- Collision warning system* - symbols and messages (p. 224)

Collision warning system* - general limitations

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian, bicycle or vehicle in front that are stationary or moving in the same direction.

The function has certain limitations - for example, it is not active until approx. 4 km/h..

The collision warning system's visual warning signal (see (1) in the illustration (p. 215)) may be difficult to notice in the event of strong sunlight, reflections, when sunglasses are being worn or if the driver is not looking straight ahead. The warning sound should therefore always be activated.

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity to avoid a collision. In such situations the ABS and DSTC systems will provide best possible braking force with maintained stability.

¹⁶ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

**NOTE**

The visual warning signal can be temporarily disengaged in the event of high passenger compartment temperature caused by strong sunlight for example. If this occurs then the warning sound is activated even if it is deactivated in the menu system.

- Warnings may not appear if the distance to the vehicle in front is small or if steering wheel and pedal movements are large, e.g. a very active driving style.

WARNING

Warnings and brake interventions could be implemented late or not at all if the traffic situation or external influences mean that the radar or camera sensor cannot detect a pedestrian, a vehicle or a cyclist in front correctly.

The sensor system has a limited range for pedestrians and cyclists¹⁷ - the system can provide effective warnings and brake interventions for them at vehicle speeds up to 50 km/h. For stationary or slow-moving vehicles, warnings and brake interventions are effective at vehicle speeds up to 70 km/h.

Warnings for stationary or slow-moving vehicles could be disengaged due to darkness or poor visibility.

Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h.

The collision warning system uses the same radar sensors as the Adaptive cruise control (p. 190). Read more about radar sensor limitations (p. 199).

If warnings are perceived as being too frequent or disturbing then the warning distance can be reduced (p. 219). This would lead to the system warning at a later stage, which reduces the total number of warnings.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake is temporarily deactivated with reverse gear engaged.

Collision Warning with Auto Brake is not activated at low speeds - under 4 km/h, which is why the system does not intervene in situations where the car is approaching a vehicle in front very slowly, e.g. when parking.

In situations where the driver demonstrates active, aware driving behaviour, a collision warning may be postponed slightly in order to keep unnecessary warnings to a minimum.

When Auto Brake has prevented a collision with a stationary object the car remains stationary for a maximum of 1.5 seconds. If the car is braked for a vehicle in front that is moving, then speed is reduced to the same speed as that maintained by the vehicle in front.

On a car with manual gearbox the engine stops when Auto Brake has stopped the car, unless the driver manages to depress the clutch pedal beforehand.

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 214)
- Collision warning system* - function (p. 215)
- Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians (p. 218)
- Collision warning system* - cyclist detection (p. 216)

¹⁷ For cyclists, the warning and full brake intervention may come very late or simultaneously.





- Collision warning system* - operation (p. 219)
- Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations (p. 222)
- Collision warning system* - symbols and messages (p. 224)

Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian, bicycle or vehicle in front that are stationary or moving in the same direction.

The function uses the car's camera sensor, which has certain limitations.

The car's camera sensor is also used - as well as by Collision Warning with Auto Brake - by the functions:

- Automatic main/dipped beam dimming (p. 85)
- Road sign information (p. 181)
- Driver Alert Control - DAC (p. 226)
- Lane Keeping Aid (p. 230)

NOTE

Keep the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor free from ice, snow, mist and dirt.

Do not stick or attach anything to the windscreen in front of the camera sensor as this may reduce effectiveness or cause one or more of the systems dependent on the camera to stop working.

The camera sensors have limitations similar to the human eye, i.e. they "see" worse in

darkness, heavy snowfall or rain and in thick fog for example. Under such conditions the functions of camera-dependent systems could be significantly reduced or temporarily disengaged.

Strong oncoming light, reflections in the carriageway, snow or ice on the road surface, dirty road surfaces or unclear lane markings could also significantly reduce camera sensor function when it is used to scan the carriageway and detect pedestrians and other vehicles.

The field of vision of the camera sensor is limited, which is why pedestrians, cyclists and vehicles cannot be detected in some situations, or they are detected later than anticipated.

During very high temperatures the camera is temporarily switched off for about 15 minutes after the engine is started in order to protect camera functionality.

Fault tracing and action

If the display shows the message **Windscreen Sensors blocked** then this means that the camera sensor is blocked and cannot detect pedestrians, cyclists, vehicles or road markings in front of the car.

At the same time, this means that - besides Collision Warning with Auto Brake - the Automatic main/dipped beam dimming, Road sign information, Driver Alert Control and Lane



Departure Warning functions will not have full functionality either.

The following table presents possible causes for a message being shown along with the appropriate action.

| Cause | Action |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The windscreen surface in front of the camera is dirty or covered with ice or snow. | Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera from dirt, ice and snow. |
| Thick fog, heavy rain or snow means that the camera does not work sufficiently well. | No action. At times the camera does not work during heavy rain or snowfall. |

| Cause | Action |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The windscreen surface in front of the camera has been cleaned but the message remains. | Wait. It may take several minutes for the camera to measure the visibility. |
| Dirt has appeared between the inside of the windscreen and the camera. | Visit a workshop to have the windscreen inside the camera cover cleaned - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 214)
- Collision warning system* - function (p. 215)
- Collision warning system* - cyclist detection (p. 216)
- Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians (p. 218)
- Collision warning system* - operation (p. 219)
- Collision warning system* - general limitations (p. 220)
- Collision warning system* - symbols and messages (p. 224)







07 Driver support



Collision warning system* - symbols and messages

"Collision Warning with Auto Brake and Cyclist and Pedestrian Detection" is an aid to

assist the driver when there is a risk of colliding with a pedestrian, bicycle or vehicle in front that are stationary or moving in the same direction.

| Symbol ^A | Message | Specification |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Collis'n warning OFF | Collision warning system switched off. Shown when the engine is started. The message clears after about 5 seconds or after one press of the OK button. |
|  | Collision warn. Unavailable | The collision warning system cannot be activated. Shown when the driver attempts to activate the function. The message clears after about 5 seconds or after one press of the OK button. |
|  | Auto braking was activated | Auto Brake has been active. The message clears after one press of the OK button. |
|  | Windscreen Sensors blocked | The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor. Read about camera sensor limitations (p. 222). |



| Symbol ^A | Message | Specification |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Radar blocked See manual | <p>Collision Warning with Auto Brake is temporarily disengaged.</p> <p>The radar sensor is blocked and cannot detect other vehicles. For example, in the event of heavy rain or if slush has collected in front of the radar sensor.</p> <p>Read about radar sensor limitations (p. 199).</p> |
|  | Collision warn. Service required | <p>Collision Warning with Auto Brake is fully or partially disengaged.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |

^A Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.

Related information

- Collision warning system* (p. 214)
- Collision warning system* - function (p. 215)
- Collision warning system* - detection of pedestrians (p. 218)
- Collision warning system* - cyclist detection (p. 216)
- Collision warning system* - operation (p. 219)
- Collision warning system* - general limitations (p. 220)
- Collision warning system* - camera sensor limitations (p. 222)



Driver Alert System*

The Driver Alert System is intended to assist drivers whose driving ability is deteriorating or who are inadvertently leaving the lane they are driving on.

The Driver Alert System consists of different functions which can either be switched on at the same time or individually:

- Driver Alert Control - DAC (p. 227).
- Lane Departure Warning - LDW (p. 230).

A switched-on function is set in standby mode and is not activated automatically until speed exceeds 65 km/h.

The function is deactivated again when speed decreases to below 60 km/h.

Both functions use a camera which is dependent on the lane having side markings painted on each side.

WARNING

Driver Alert System does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.

The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

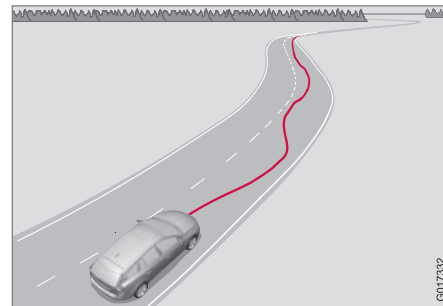
Related information

- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* (p. 226)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - symbols and messages (p. 228)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - operation (p. 227)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 230)

Driver Alert Control (DAC)*

The DAC function is intended to attract the driver's attention when he/she starts to drive less consistently, e.g. if he/she becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

The objective for DAC is to detect slowly deteriorating driving ability and it is primarily intended for major roads. The function is not intended for city traffic.



A camera detects the side markings painted on the carriageway and compares the section of the road with the driver's steering wheel movements. The driver is alerted if the vehicle does not follow the carriageway evenly.

In some cases driving ability is not affected despite driver fatigue. In which case there may not be any warning issued for the driver. For this reason it is always important to stop and take a break in the event of any signs of



driver fatigue, irrespective of whether or not DAC issues a warning.

NOTE

The function must not be used to extend a period of driving. Always plan breaks at regular intervals, and make sure you are well rested.

Limitation

In some cases the system may issue a warning despite driving ability not deteriorating, for example:

- in strong side winds
- on rutted road surfaces.

NOTE

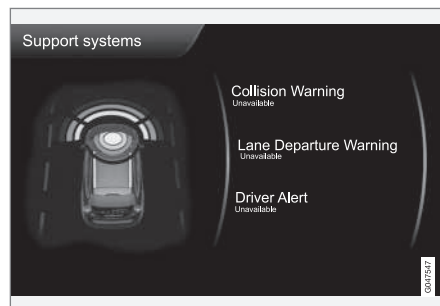
The camera sensor has certain limitations (p. 222).

Related information

- Driver Alert System* (p. 226)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - operation (p. 227)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - symbols and messages (p. 228)

Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - operation

Settings are made from the centre console display screen and its menu system. For information on how the menu system is used, see MY CAR (p. 105).



Car with LDW can show this on the screen.

The Driver Alert function can be set in standby mode. The function can be activated/deactivated in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

Driver Alert is activated when speed exceeds 65 km/h and remains active as long as the speed is over 60 km/h.



If the vehicle is being driven erratically, the driver is notified by an acoustic signal plus the text message **Driver Alert Time for a break** - the linked symbol is illuminated in the combined instrument panel at the same time. The warning is repeated after a time if driving ability does not improve.

The warning symbol can go off:

- Press the left stalk switch **OK** button.



WARNING

An alarm should be taken very seriously, as a sleepy driver is often not aware of his/her own condition.

In the event of an alarm or a feeling of tiredness; stop the car in a safe manner as soon as possible and rest.

Studies have shown that it is equally as dangerous to drive while tired as it is under the influence of alcohol.

Related information

- Driver Alert System* (p. 226)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* (p. 226)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - symbols and messages (p. 228)






07 Driver support

Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - symbols and messages

or in the centre console's display screen in different situations.

DAC (p. 226) can show symbols and text messages on the combined instrument panel

Combined instrument panel

| Symbol ^A | Message | Specification |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Driver Alert Time for a break | The vehicle has been driven inconsistently - the driver is alerted by an acoustic warning signal + text. |
|  | Windscreen Sensors blocked | The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor. Read about camera sensor limitations (p. 222). |
|  | Driver Alert Sys Service required | The system is disengaged. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |

^A Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.

Display

| Sym- bol ^A | Message | Specification |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| | Driver Alert OFF | The function is disengaged. |
| | Driver Alert Available | The function is activated. |

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



| Sym- bol ^A | Message | Specification |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | Driver Alert Standby <65 km/h | The function is set in standby mode due to speed being lower than 65 km/h. |
| | Driver Alert Unavailable | The carriageway does not have clear side markings or the camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Read about camera sensor limitations (p. 222). |

^A Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.

Related information

- Driver Alert System* (p. 226)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* (p. 226)
- Driver Alert Control (DAC)* - operation (p. 227)

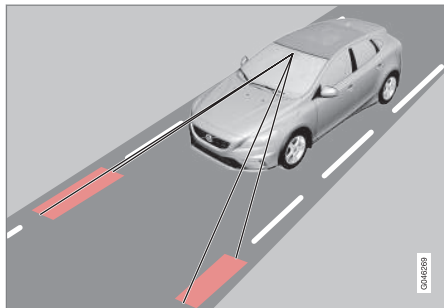


Lane Departure Warning (LDW)*

Lane Departure Warning is one of the functions in the Driver Alert System - sometimes also referred to as LDW (Lane Departure Warning).

The function is intended for use on motorways and similar major roads in order to reduce the risk of the vehicle accidentally leaving its own lane in certain situations.

Principle for LDW



(The figure is schematic - not model specific.)

LDW consists of a camera that detects the side lines painted on the road/lane.

If the vehicle crosses the left or right-hand side line of the carriageway without due cause then the driver is alerted by an acoustic signal.

NOTE

The driver is only warned once each time the wheels cross a line. So there is no acoustic alarm when there is a line between the car's wheels.

Related information

- Driver Alert System* (p. 226)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - limitations (p. 232)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - function (p. 230)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - operation (p. 231)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - symbols and messages (p. 233)

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - function

Certain settings can be made for the Lane Departure Warning function.

Off & On



LDW is engaged or disengaged using a button on the centre console. An indicator lamp in the button illuminates when the function is switched on.

This function is complemented in the combined instrument panel with intuitive graphics in different situations.

Personal preferences

Settings are made from the centre console's screen via the menu system in **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see **MY CAR** (p. 105).

Select from the options:



- **On at start-up** - The function enters standby mode every time the engine is started. Otherwise the same value as when the engine was switched off is obtained.
- **Increased sensitivity** - The sensitivity increases, an alarm is triggered earlier and fewer limitations apply.

Related information

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 230)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - limitations (p. 232)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - operation (p. 231)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - symbols and messages (p. 233)

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - operation

LDW is complemented in the combined instrument panel with intuitive graphics in different situations. Here are some examples:



The LDW function's side lines (marked in red in the figure).

- The LDW symbol has WHITE side lines - the function is active and detects/"sees" one side line, or both.
 - The LDW symbol has GREY side lines - the function is active but detects neither left nor right side line.
- or
- The LDW symbol has GREY side lines - the function is in standby mode because the speed is below 65 km/h.
 - The LDW symbol has no side lines - the function is deactivated.

Related information

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 230)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - limitations (p. 232)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - function (p. 230)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - symbols and messages (p. 233)



Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - limitations

The Lane Keeping Aid camera sensor is restricted in a similar way to the human eye.

For more information, read about camera sensor limitations (p. 222).

NOTE

There are some situations where LDW does not give any warning, such as:

- Direction indicators are switched on
- The driver has his/her foot on the brake pedal¹⁸
- In the event of rapid depression of the accelerator pedal¹⁸
- In the event of rapid steering wheel movements¹⁸
- If turning is so sharp that the car rolls.

Related information

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 230)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - function (p. 230)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - operation (p. 231)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - symbols and messages (p. 233)

¹⁸ When "Increased sensitivity" is selected a warning is still given, see Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - function (p. 230).

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.






Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - symbols and messages

In situations where there is no LDW function a symbol may be shown in the combined

instrument panel in combination with an explanatory message - follow the recommendation given if appropriate.

Message examples:

| Symbol ^A | Message | Specification |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Lane departure warning ON/ Lane departure warning OFF | The function is switched on/off. Shown at switch-on/off. The text disappears after 5 seconds. |
| | Lane Depart. Warning Unavailable at this speed | The function is set in standby mode due to speed being lower than 65 km/h. |
| | Lane Depart. Warning Unavailable | The lane does not have clear side markings or the camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Read about camera sensor limitations (p. 222). |
| | Lane Depart. Warning Available | The function scans the lane's side markings. |
|  | Windsensor Sensors blocked | The camera sensor is temporarily disengaged. Shown in the event of snow, ice or dirt on the windscreen for example. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the windscreen surface in front of the camera sensor. Read about camera sensor limitations (p. 222). |
|  | Driver Alert Sys Service required | The system is disengaged. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |

^A Symbols are schematic - may vary by market and car model.



Related information

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* (p. 230)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - limitations (p. 232)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - function (p. 230)
- Lane Departure Warning (LDW) - operation (p. 231)



Park Assist*

Parking assistance is used as an aid to parking. An acoustic signal as well as symbols on the centre console's display screen indicate the distance to the detected obstacle.

Parking assistance sound level can be adjusted during the ongoing acoustic signal using the centre console's **VOL** knob. The sound level can also be adjusted in the audio settings menu, which is accessed by pressing **SOUND** or in the car's menu system (p. 105) **MY CAR**¹⁹.

Parking assistance is available in two variants:

- Rear only
- Both front and rear.

WARNING

- Parking assistance does not relinquish the driver's own responsibility during parking.
- The sensors have blind spots where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Be aware of e.g. people or animals near the car.

Related information

- Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors (p. 238)
- Park assist syst* - function (p. 235)
- Park assist syst* - forward (p. 237)
- Park assist syst* - fault indication (p. 238)
- Park assist syst* - backward (p. 236)
- Park assist camera (p. 239)

Park assist syst* - function

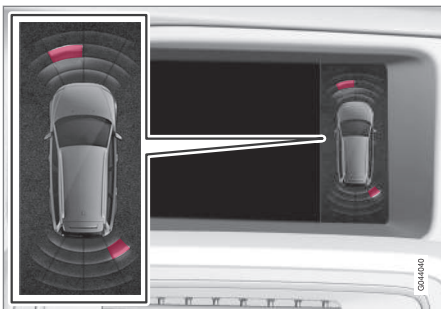
The parking assistance system is automatically activated when the engine is started - the switch's On/Off lamp is illuminated. If parking assistance is switched off with the button, the lamp goes out.



On/Off for parking assistance and CTA*.

If the car is equipped with CTA (p. 244) the indicator lamps flash for BLIS (p. 242) once, then parking assistance is activated using the button.

¹⁹ Depending on the audio and media system.



Display screen view - showing an obstacle left front and right rear.

The centre console's display screen shows an overview of the relationship between the car and detected obstacle.

Marked sectors show which of the four sensor(s) detected an obstacle. The closer to the car symbol a selected sector box is, the shorter the distance between the car and a detected obstacle.

The frequency of the signal increases the shorter the distance to an obstacle, in front of or behind the car. Other sound from the audio system is muted automatically.

When the distance is within 30 cm the tone is constant and the active sensor's field nearest the car is filled in. If the detected obstacle is within the distance for the constant tone both behind and in front of the car, then the tone sounds alternately from the loudspeakers.

! IMPORTANT

Objects e.g. chains, thin glossy poles or low barriers may be in the "signal shadow" and are then temporarily not detected by the sensors - the pulsating tone may then unexpectedly stop instead of changing over to the expected constant tone.

The sensors cannot detect high objects, such as projecting loading docks.

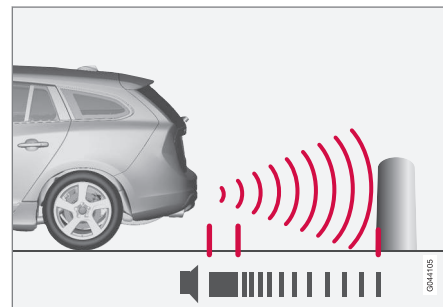
- In such situations, pay extra attention and manoeuvre/reposition the car particularly slowly or stop the current parking manoeuvre - there may be a high risk of damage to vehicles or other objects since the sensors are temporarily unable to function optimally.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 235)
- Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors (p. 238)
- Park assist syst* - forward (p. 237)
- Park assist syst* - fault indication (p. 238)
- Park assist syst* - backward (p. 236)
- Park assist camera (p. 239)

Park assist syst* - backward

Parking assistance is used as an aid to parking. An acoustic signal as well as symbols on the centre console's display screen indicate the distance to the detected obstacle.



The distance covered to the rear of the car is about 1.5 metres. The acoustic signal for obstacles behind comes from one of the rear loudspeakers.

Rear parking assistance is activated when reverse gear is engaged.

When reversing with e.g. a trailer on the towbar, rear parking assistance is switched off automatically - otherwise the sensors would react to the trailer.

**NOTE**

When reversing with e.g. a trailer or bike carrier on the towbar - without Volvo genuine trailer wiring - parking assistance may need to be switched off manually in order that the sensors do not react to them.

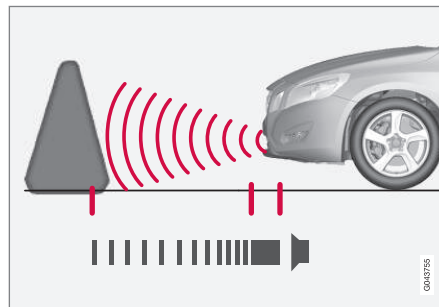
Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 235)
- Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors (p. 238)
- Park assist syst* - function (p. 235)
- Park assist syst* - forward (p. 237)
- Park assist syst* - fault indication (p. 238)
- Park assist camera (p. 239)

Park assist syst* - forward

Parking assistance is used as an aid to parking. An acoustic signal as well as symbols on the centre console's display screen indicate the distance to the detected obstacle.

The parking assistance system is automatically activated when the engine is started - the switch's On/Off lamp is illuminated. If parking assistance is switched off with the button, the lamp goes out.



The distance covered in front of the car is about 0.8 metres. The acoustic signal for obstacles in front comes from one of the front loudspeakers.

Front park assist is active up to approx. 10 km/h. The lamp in the button is illuminated in order to indicate that the system is activated. When the speed is below 10 km/h the system is reactivated.

NOTE

Front parking assistance is deactivated when the parking brake is applied or **P** mode is selected in a car with an automatic gearbox.

IMPORTANT

When auxiliary lamps are fitted: Remember that these must not obscure the sensors - the auxiliary lamps may then be perceived as an obstacle.


Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 235)
- Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors (p. 238)
- Park assist syst* - function (p. 235)
- Park assist syst* - fault indication (p. 238)
- Park assist syst* - backward (p. 236)
- Park assist camera (p. 239)



Park assist syst* - fault indication

Parking assistance is used as an aid to parking. An acoustic signal as well as symbols on the centre console's display screen indicate the distance to the detected obstacle.

 If the combined instrument panel's information symbol illuminates with constant glow and the text message

Park assist syst Service required is shown then parking assistance is disengaged.

IMPORTANT

In certain conditions the parking assistance system may produce incorrect warning signals that are caused by external sound sources that emit the same ultrasonic frequencies that the system works with.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes and exhaust noises from motorcycles etc.

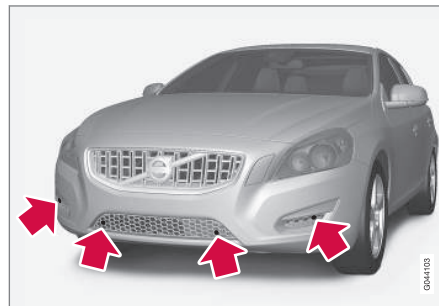
Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 235)
- Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors (p. 238)
- Park assist syst* - function (p. 235)
- Park assist syst* - forward (p. 237)
- Park assist syst* - backward (p. 236)
- Park assist camera (p. 239)

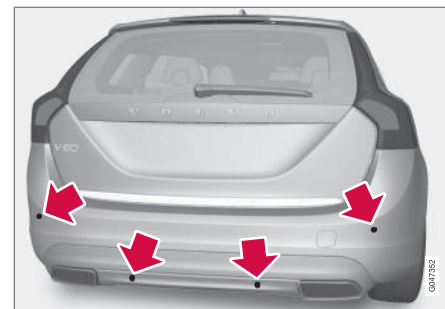
Park assist syst* - cleaning the sensors

Parking assistance is used as an aid to parking. An acoustic signal as well as symbols on the centre console's display screen indicate the distance to the detected obstacle.

The sensors must be cleaned regularly to ensure that they work properly. Clean them with water and car shampoo.



Sensor location, front.



Sensor location, rear.

NOTE

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals.

Related information

- Park Assist* (p. 235)
- Park assist syst* - function (p. 235)
- Park assist syst* - forward (p. 237)
- Park assist syst* - fault indication (p. 238)
- Park assist syst* - backward (p. 236)
- Park assist camera (p. 239)



Park assist camera

The parking camera is an assist system and is activated when reverse gear is engaged (can be changed in the settings menu (p. 241)).

The camera image is shown on the centre console's screen.

i NOTE

When a towbar is configured with the car's electrical system, the protrusion of the towbar is included when the function measures the parking space.

! WARNING

- The parking camera serves as an aid. It does not relieve the driver of responsibility when reversing.
- The camera has blind spots, where obstacles cannot be detected.
- Be aware of people and animals in the vicinity of the car.

Function and operation



CAM button location.

The camera shows what is behind the car and if something appears from the sides.

The camera shows a wide area behind the car and part of the bumper and any towbar.

Objects on the screen may appear to tilt slightly - this is normal.

i NOTE

Objects on the display screen may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

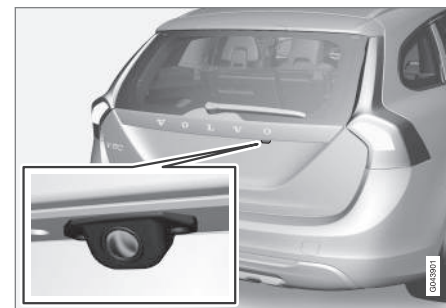
If another view is active the parking camera system takes over automatically and the camera image is displayed on the screen.

When reverse gear is engaged two unbroken lines are shown graphically which illustrate

where the car's rear wheels will roll with the current steering wheel angle, this facilitates tight parking, reversing into tight spaces and for hitching a trailer. The car's approximate external dimensions are illustrated by means of two dashed lines. These park assist lines can be switched off in the settings menu.

If the car is also equipped with parking assistance sensors* then their information is displayed graphically as coloured fields in order to illustrate the distance to detected obstacles, see the heading "Cars with reversing sensors" later in the text.

The camera is active approx. 5 seconds after reverse gear has been disengaged or until the car's speed exceeds 10 km/h forward or 35 km/h backward.



Camera location next to the opening handle.



07 Driver support



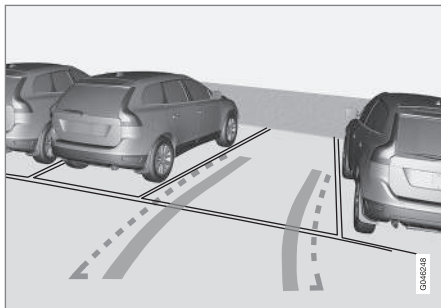
Light conditions

The camera image is adjusted automatically according to prevailing light conditions. Because of this, the image may vary slightly in brightness and quality. Poor light conditions can result in a slightly reduced image quality.

NOTE

Keep the camera lens clear of dirt, snow and ice to ensure optimum function. This is particularly important in poor light.

Park assist lines



Examples of how the park assist lines can be displayed for the driver.

The lines on the screen are projected as if they were at ground level behind the car and are directly related to steering wheel move-

ment, which shows the driver the path the car will then take - also when the car is turning.

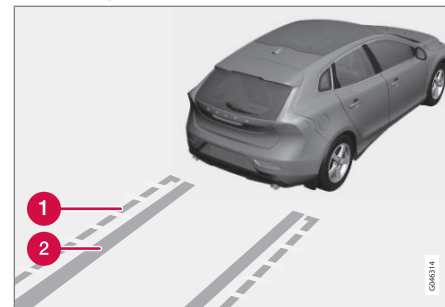
NOTE

- When reversing with a trailer which is not connected electrically to the car, the lines on the display show the route the **car** will take - not the trailer.
- The screen shows no lines when a trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.
- The parking camera is deactivated automatically when towing a trailer if a Volvo genuine trailer cable is used.

IMPORTANT

Bear in mind that the screen only shows the area behind the car - pay attention to the sides and front of the car when manoeuvring during reversing.

Boundary lines



The system's different lines²⁰.

- 1 Boundary line, free reversing zone
- 2 "Wheel tracks"

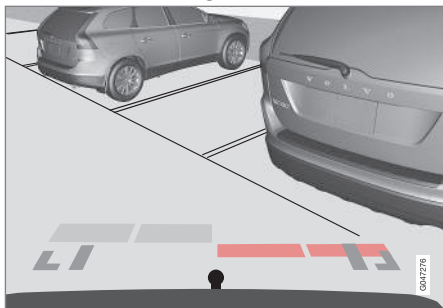
The dashed line (1) frames in a zone up to about 1.5 m back from the bumper. It is also the limit of the car's most protruding parts, such as door mirrors and corners - also when the car is turning.

The wide "wheel tracks" (2) between the side lines indicate where the wheels will roll and can extend about 3.2 m back from the bumper if no obstacle is in the way.

²⁰ The figure is schematic and does not show the model in question in an accurate way.



Cars with reversing sensors*



Four coloured areas (one per sensor) show distance.

If the car is also equipped with parking assistance sensors (parking assistance sensors (p. 235)) the distance indication will be more precise and the coloured areas show which of the 4 sensors is/are registering an obstacle.

| Colour / paint | Distance (metres) |
|----------------|-------------------|
| Light yellow | 0.7–1.5 |
| Yellow | 0,5–0,7 |
| Orange | 0,3–0,5 |
| Red | 0–0.3 |

Related information

- Park assist camera - settings (p. 241)
- Park assist camera - limitations (p. 242)

- Park Assist* (p. 235)

Park assist camera - settings

The parking camera is an assist system and is activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Settings

To change the settings for the parking camera:

1. Press **OK/MENU** when a camera view is shown.
2. Turn to reach the desired option with **OK/MENU**.
3. Press **OK/MENU** and back out with **EXIT**.
or
1. Press **CAM**.
2. Press **OK/MENU**.
3. Turn to reach the desired option with **OK/MENU**.
4. Press **OK/MENU** and back out with **EXIT**.

Miscellaneous

The default setting is that the camera is activated when reverse gear is engaged.

- One press on **CAM** activates the camera even if reverse gear is not engaged.
- Change between normal and zoomed image by turning **TUNE** or by pressing **CAM**.

Towbar

The camera can be used with advantage for coupling a trailer. A park assist line for the



towbar's intended "trajectory" toward the trailer can be shown on the screen - just as for the "wheel tracks".

- If precise manoeuvring is required then the towbar can be zoomed in by pressing **CAM** - pressing the button again returns to normal view.

The towbar's park assist line is activated in the menu system after pressing **OK/MENU** where you can select to display either the "wheel tracks" or the towbar's trajectory - both options cannot be shown simultaneously.

Related information

- Park assist camera (p. 239)
- Park assist camera - limitations (p. 242)
- Park Assist* (p. 235)
- MY CAR (p. 105)

Park assist camera - limitations

The parking camera is an assist system and is activated when reverse gear is engaged.

NOTE

A bike carrier or other accessory mounted on the rear of the car could obscure the camera's view.

To bear in mind

Pay attention to the possibility that, even if it only looks like a relatively small part of the image is obscured, it could be a relatively large sector that is hidden from view. Obstacles could thereby go undetected until they are very close to the car.

- Keep the camera lens free from dirt, ice and snow.
- Clean the camera lens regularly with luke-warm water and car shampoo - take care not to scratch the lens.

Related information

- Park assist camera (p. 239)
- Park assist camera - settings (p. 241)
- Park Assist* (p. 235)

BLIS* (Blind Spot Information System)

BLIS (Blind Spot Information System) is a function designed for providing support for the driver when driving in dense traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

BLIS is a driver's aid intended to provide a warning about:

- vehicles in the car's blind spot
- rapidly approaching vehicles in the left and right-hand lanes closest to the car.

The BLIS function CTA (p. 244) (Cross Traffic Alert) is a driver's aid intended to provide a warning about:

- crossing traffic when the car is reversed.



WARNING

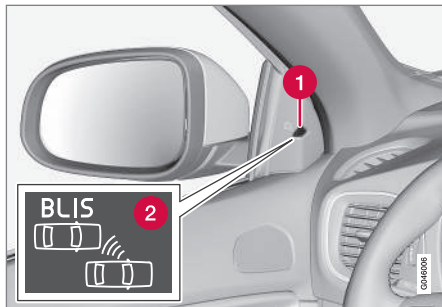
BLIS is a supplementary aid and does not work in all situations.

BLIS is no substitute for a safe driving style and the use of rearview and door mirrors.

BLIS can never replace the driver's responsibility and attention - it is always the driver's responsibility to change lanes in a safe manner.



Overview



BLIS lamp location²¹.

- 1 Indicator lamp
- 2 BLIS symbol

NOTE

The lamp illuminates on the side of the car where the system has detected the vehicle. If the car is overtaken on both sides at the same time then both lamps illuminate.

Maintenance



Sensor location.

The sensors for the BLIS functions are located inside the rear wing/bumper on each side of the car.

- To ensure optimal functionality the areas in front of the sensors must be kept clean.

Related information

- BLIS* (Blind Spot Information System) - operation (p. 243)

BLIS* (Blind Spot Information System) - operation

BLIS (Blind Spot Information System) is a function designed for providing support for the driver when driving in dense traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

Activate/deactivate BLIS

BLIS is activated when the engine is started. This is confirmed by the indicator lamps in the door panels flashing once.

The **BLIS** function can be deactivated/activated the car's menu system (p. 105) **MY CAR**.

When BLIS is deactivated/activated the lamp in the button extinguishes/illuminates and the combined instrument panel confirms the change with a text message. The door panel indicator lamps flash once upon activation.

To extinguish the message:

- Press the left stalk switch **OK** button.
- or
- Wait approx. 5 seconds - the message extinguishes.

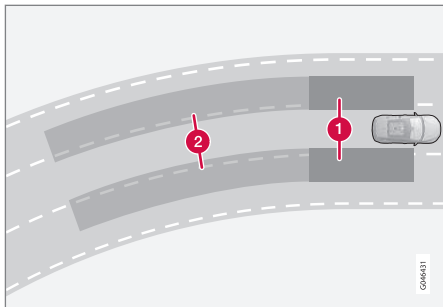
²¹ NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.



07 Driver support



When BLIS operates



Principle for BLIS: 1. Zone in blind spot. 2. Zone for rapidly approaching vehicle.

The BLIS function is active at speeds above approx. 10 km/h.

The system is designed to react when:

- the driver's vehicle is overtaken by other vehicles
- the driver's vehicle is rapidly caught up by another vehicle.

When BLIS detects a vehicle in zone 1 or a quickly approaching vehicle in zone 2, the door panel BLIS lamp illuminates with a constant glow. If the driver activates the direction indicator on the same side as the warning in this situation then the BLIS lamp will change from a constant glow to flashing with a more intense light.

WARNING

BLIS does not work in sharp bends.

BLIS does not work when the car is being reversed.

Limitations

- Dirt, ice and snow covering sensors can reduce functionality and make it impossible to provide warnings. BLIS cannot detect hazards if it is covered.
- Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.
- BLIS is deactivated when a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system.

IMPORTANT

Repair of the BLIS and CTA functions' components or repainting the bumpers must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- BLIS* (Blind Spot Information System) (p. 242)
- BLIS - symbols and messages (p. 246)

CTA (Cross Traffic Alert)*

CTA (Cross Traffic Alert) is a driver aid intended to warn about crossing traffic when the car is reversing. CTA is a supplement to BLIS (p. 242).

Activate/deactivate CTA

CTA is activated when the engine is started. This is confirmed by the indicator lamps for BLIS in the door panels flashing once.



On/Off for parking assistance and CTA sensors.

The CTA function can be deactivated with the Parking assistance (p. 235) On/Off button. The BLIS lamp flashes once on activation



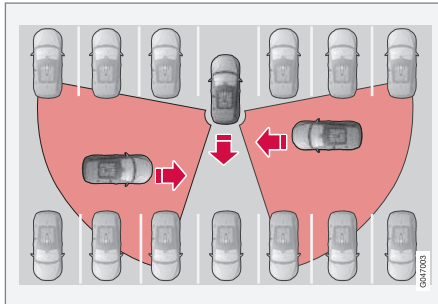
! WARNING

CTA is a supplementary aid and does not work in all situations.

CTA is no substitute for a safe driving style and the use of rearview and door mirrors.

CTA can never replace the driver's responsibility and attention - it is always the driver's responsibility to reverse in a safe manner.

When CTA operates



Principle for CTA.

CTA supplements the BLIS function by being able to see crossing traffic from the side during reversing, such as when reversing out of a parking space.

CTA is primarily designed to detect vehicles. In favourable conditions, it may also be able to detect smaller objects, such as cyclists and pedestrians.

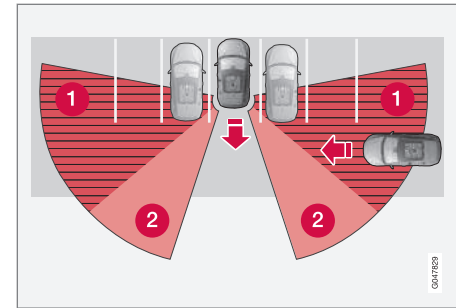
CTA is only active during reversing and is activated automatically when the gearbox's reverse position is selected.

- If CTA detects something approaching from the side, an acoustic warning signal sounds. The signal comes from either the left or the right-hand speaker, depending on the direction from which the object is approaching.
- CTA also warns by illuminating the BLIS lamps.
- An additional warning is provided in the form of an illuminated icon in the display screen's PAS graphics (p. 235).

Limitations

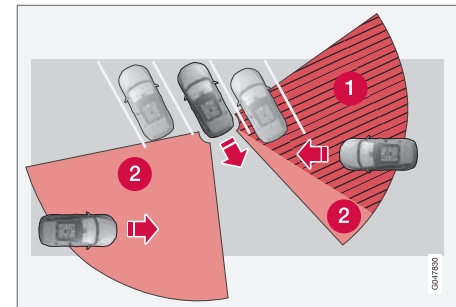
CTA does not perform optimally in all situations, but has a certain limitation - for example, the CTA sensors cannot "see" through other parked vehicles or obstructing objects.

Here are some examples of when CTA's "field of vision" may be limited from the beginning and approaching vehicles cannot therefore be detected until they are very close:



The car is parked deep inside a parking slot.

- 1 Blind CTA sector.
- 2 Sector where CTA can detect/"see".



In an angled parking slot CTA can be completely "blind" on one side.

However, when the driver is slowly reversing the car, the angle is changed in relation to the



07 Driver support



vehicle/object that is blocking, at which the blind sector rapidly decreases.

Examples of further limitations:

- Dirt, ice and snow covering sensors can reduce functionality and make it impossible to provide warnings. CTA cannot detect hazards if it is covered.
- Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.
- CTA is deactivated when a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system.

IMPORTANT

Repair of the BLIS and CTA functions' components or repainting the bumpers must only be performed by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Maintenance



Sensor location.

The sensors for the CTA functions are located inside the rear wing/bumper on each side of the car.

- To ensure optimal functionality the areas in front of the sensors must be kept clean.

Related information

- BLIS* (Blind Spot Information System) (p. 242)
- BLIS - symbols and messages (p. 246)

BLIS - symbols and messages

In situations where the BLIS (p. 242) and CTA (p. 244) functions fail or are interrupted, the combined instrument panel may show a symbol, supplemented by an explanatory message. Follow any recommendation given.

Message examples:

| Message | Specification |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CTA OFF | CTA is manually switched off - BLIS is active. |
| BLIS and CTA OFF Trailer attached | BLIS and CTA are temporarily non-operational because a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system. |
| BLIS and CTA Service required | BLIS and CTA are non-operational. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Visit a workshop if the message remains - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |

A text message can be acknowledged by briefly pressing the **OK** button on the direction indicator stalk.

Related information

- BLIS* (Blind Spot Information System) (p. 242)



Adjustable steering force*

Steering force increases with the speed of the car to give the driver enhanced sensitivity.

The steering is firmer and more immediate on motorways. Steering is light and requires no extra effort when parking and at low speed.

The driver can choose between three different levels of steering force for road responsiveness or steering sensitivity. The setting is made in the menu system **MY CAR**. For a description of the menu system, see MY CAR (p. 105).

This setting is not accessible when the car is moving.

NOTE

In certain situations the power steering may become too hot and then needs to be temporarily cooled - during this time the power steering operates with reduced power and turning the steering wheel may then be perceived to be slightly heavier.

In parallel with the temporarily reduced steering assistance the combined instrument panel shows a message.

Related information

- MY CAR (p. 105)

08



STARTING AND DRIVING





Alcolock*

The function of the Alcolock¹ is to prevent the car from being driven by individuals under the influence of alcohol. Before the engine can be started the driver must take a breath test that verifies that he/she is not under the influence of alcohol. Alcolock calibration takes place in accordance with each market's limit value in force for driving legally.

WARNING

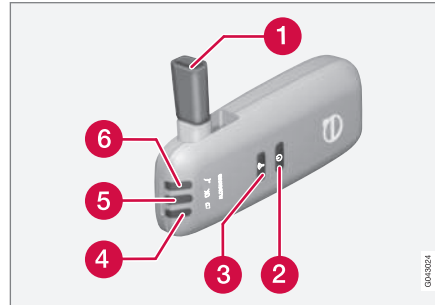
The Alcolock is an aid and does not exempt the driver from responsibility. It is always the responsibility of the driver to be sober and to drive the car safely.

Related information

- Alcolock* - functions and operation (p. 249)
- Alcolock* - to bear in mind (p. 251)
- Alcolock* - storage (p. 250)
- Alcolock* - before starting the engine (p. 250)
- Alcolock* - symbols and text messages (p. 253)

Alcolock* - functions and operation

Functions



- 1 Nozzle for breath test.
- 2 Switch.
- 3 Transmission button.
- 4 Lamp for battery status.
- 5 Lamp for result of breath test.
- 6 Lamp indicates ready for breath test.

Operation - battery

Alcolock indicator lamp (4) shows battery status:

| Indicator lamp (4) | Battery status |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Green flashing | Charging in progress |
| Green | Fully charged |
| Yellow | Semi-charged |
| Red | Discharged - fit the charger in the holder or connect the power supply cable from the glovebox. |

NOTE

Store the Alcolock in its holder. This will keep the built-in battery fully charged and the Alcolock is activated automatically when the car is opened.

Related information

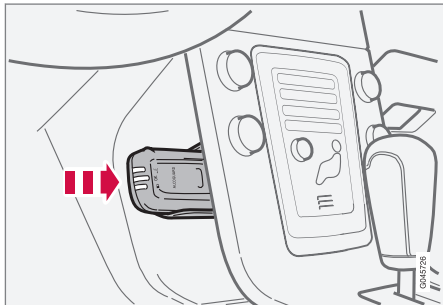
- Alcolock* (p. 249)
- Alcolock* - storage (p. 250)
- Alcolock* - to bear in mind (p. 251)
- Alcolock* - before starting the engine (p. 250)
- Alcolock* - symbols and text messages (p. 253)

¹ Also called Alcolguard.



Alcolock* - storage

Store the Alcolock in its holder. Release the handheld unit by depressing it slightly in its holder and releasing it - it then springs out and can be removed from the holder.



Handheld unit storage and charging station.

- Replace the handheld unit in the holder by pushing it in until it engages.
- Store the handheld unit in the holder - this provides it with the best protection and keeps its batteries fully charged.

Related information

- Alcolock* - functions and operation (p. 249)
- Alcolock* - before starting the engine (p. 250)
- Alcolock* (p. 249)
- Alcolock* - to bear in mind (p. 251)

- Alcolock* - symbols and text messages (p. 253)

Alcolock* - before starting the engine

The Alcolock is activated automatically and is then ready for use when the car is opened.

1. When the indicator lamp (6) is green the Alcolock is ready for use.
2. Withdraw the Alcolock from its holder. If the Alcolock is outside the car when it is unlocked then it must first be activated with the switch (2).
3. Fold up the nozzle (1), take a deep breath and blow with an even pressure until a "click" is heard after approx. 5 seconds. The result will be one of the alternatives in the following table **Result after breath test**.
4. If no message is shown then the transmission to the car may have failed - in which case, press the button (3) to transmit the result to the car manually.
5. Fold down the nozzle and refit the Alcolock in its holder.
6. Start the engine following an approved breath test within 5 minutes - otherwise it must be repeated.



Result after breath test

| Indicator lamp (5) + Display text | Specification |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Green lamp + Alcolock Approved test | Start the engine - no alcohol content measured. |
| Yellow lamp + Alcolock Approved test | Engine starting possible - measured alcohol content is above 0.1 promille but below the limit value in force ^A . |
| Red lamp + Disapproved test Wait 1 minute | Engine starting not possible - measured alcohol content is above the limit value in force ^A . |

^A Limit values vary from country to country. Find out what applies in your country. See also Alcolock* (p. 249)

NOTE

After a completed period of driving, the engine can be restarted within 30 minutes without a new breath test.

Related information

- Alcolock* - functions and operation (p. 249)
- Alcolock* - storage (p. 250)

- Alcolock* (p. 249)
- Alcolock* - symbols and text messages (p. 253)

Alcolock* - to bear in mind

In order to obtain correct function and as accurate a measurement result as possible:

- Avoid eating or drinking approx. 5 minutes before the breath test.
- Avoid excess windscreen washing - the alcohol in the washer fluid may result in an incorrect measurement result.

In order to ensure that a new breath test is carried out in the event of a change of driver - depress the switch (2) and the send button (3) simultaneously for approx. 3 seconds. At which point the car returns to start inhibition mode and a new approved breath test is required before starting the engine.



Calibration and service

The Alcolock must be checked and calibrated at a workshop² every 12 months.

30 days before recalibration is necessary the combined instrument panel shows the message **Alcoguard Calibr. required**. If calibration is not carried out within these 30 days then normal engine starting will be blocked - only starting with the Bypass function will then be possible, see the following heading "Emergency situation".

The message can be cleared by pressing the send button (3) once. Otherwise it goes out on its own after approx. 2 minutes but then reappears each time the engine is started - only recalibration at a workshop² can clear the message permanently.

Cold or hot weather

The colder the weather the longer it takes before the Alcolock is ready for use:

| Temperature (°C) | Maximum heating time (seconds) |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| +10 to +85 | 10 |
| -5 to +10 | 60 |
| -40 to -5 | 180 |

² An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

At temperatures below -20 °C or above +60 °C the Alcolock requires additional power supply. The combined instrument panel shows **Alcoguard insert power cable**. In which case, connect the power supply cable from the glovebox and wait until indicator lamp (6) is green.

In extremely cold weather the heating time can be reduced by taking the Alcolock indoors.

Emergency situation

In the event of an emergency situation or the Alcolock is out of order, it is possible to bypass the Alcolock in order to drive the car.

NOTE

All Bypass activation is logged and saved in memory, see Recording data (p. 16).

After the Bypass function has been activated the combined instrument panel shows **Alcoguard Bypass enabled** the whole time while driving and can only be reset by a workshop².

The Bypass function can be tested without the error message being logged - in which case, carry out all the steps without starting the car. The error message is cleared when the car is locked.

When the Alcolock is installed, either the Bypass or Emergency function is selected as the bypassing option. This setting can be changed afterwards at a workshop².

Activating the Bypass function

- Depress and hold the left-hand stalk switch **OK** button and the button for hazard warning flashers simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds - the combined instrument panel first shows **Bypass activated** **Wait 1 minute** and then **Alcoguard Bypass enabled** - after which the engine can be started.

This function can be activated several times. The error message shown during driving can only be cleared at a workshop².

Activating the Emergency function

- Depress and hold the left-hand stalk switch **OK** button and the button for hazard warning flashers simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds - the combined instrument panel shows **Alcoguard Bypass enabled** and the engine can be started.

This function can be used once, after which a reset must be made at a workshop².

Related information

- Alcolock* - functions and operation (p. 249)
- Alcolock* - storage (p. 250)



- Alcolock* - before starting the engine (p. 250)
- Alcolock* (p. 249)
- Alcolock* - symbols and text messages (p. 253)

Alcolock* - symbols and text messages

In addition to the previously described messages related to how the alcolock works before starting the engine (p. 250) the combined instrument panel's display can also show the following:

| Display text | Meaning/Action |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Alcoguard Restart possible | The engine has been switched off for less than 30 minutes - engine starting possible without new test. |
| Alcoguard Service required | Contact a workshop ^A . |
| Alcoguard No signal | Transmission failed - send manually with button (3) or take a new breath test. |
| Alcoguard Invalid test | Test failed - take a new breath test. |
| Alcoguard Blow longer | Blowing too short - blow for longer. |
| Alcoguard Blow softer | Blowing too hard - blow more gently. |

| Display text | Meaning/Action |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Alcoguard Blow harder | Blowing too weak - blow harder. |
| Alcoguard wait Preheating | Heating not finished - wait for text Alcoguard Blow 5 seconds. |

^A An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Alcolock* - functions and operation (p. 249)
- Alcolock* - to bear in mind (p. 251)
- Alcolock* - storage (p. 250)
- Alcolock* (p. 249)



Starting the engine

The engine is started and switched off using the remote control key and the **START/STOP ENGINE** button.

Diesel engine



Ignition switch with remote control key extracted/inserted, and **START/STOP ENGINE** button.

! IMPORTANT

Do not press in the remote control key incorrectly turned - hold the end with the detachable key blade, see Detachable key blade - detaching/attaching (p. 158).

1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch and press it in to its end position. Note that if the car is equipped with Alcolock* then a breath test must first be approved before the engine can be started. For more information on the Alcolock, see Alcolock* (p. 249).
2. Depress the brake pedal fully³.
3. Press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button and then release it.

When the engine is started the starter motor works until the engine is started or until the overheating protection triggers.

When starting the engine in normal conditions the car's electric drive motor is prioritised - the diesel engine remains switched off. This means that after pressing the **START/STOP ENGINE** button the electric motor has "started" and the car is ready to drive. A started motor is indicated by the combined instrument panel's indicator lamps extinguishing and its preset theme illuminating (see Digital combined instrument panel - overview (p. 63)).

However, there are situations where the diesel engine is started instead, e.g. in the event of the temperature being too low or if the hybrid battery needs charging.

! IMPORTANT

If the engine fails to start after 3 attempts - wait for 3 minutes before making a further attempt. Starting capacity increases if the battery is allowed to recover.

! WARNING

Never remove the remote control key from the ignition switch after starting the engine or when the car is being towed.

! WARNING

Always remove the remote control key from the ignition switch when leaving the car, and make sure that the key position is **0** - in particular if there are children in the car. For information on how this works - see Key positions (p. 73).

i NOTE

The idling speed can be noticeably higher than normal for certain engine types during cold starting. This is done in order that the emissions system can reach normal operating temperature as quickly as possible, which minimises exhaust emissions and protects the environment.

³ If the car is moving then it is enough to press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to start the engine.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



Keyless drive*

Follow steps 2-3 for keyless (p. 162) starting of the engine.

NOTE

A prerequisite for the engine to start is that one of the car's remote control keys with the Keyless drive function is in the passenger compartment or cargo area.

WARNING

Never remove the remote control key from the car while driving or during towing.

Related information

- Switching off the engine (p. 255)

Switching off the engine

*The engine is switched off using the **START/STOP ENGINE** button.*

To stop the engine:

- Press **START/STOP ENGINE** - the engine stops.

If the gear selector is not in **P** position or if the car is moving:

- Press twice on **START/STOP ENGINE** or hold the button depressed until the engine stops.

Related information

- Key positions (p. 73)

Steering lock

The steering lock makes steering difficult if the car is e.g. taken unlawfully.

Function

- The steering lock unlocks when the remote control key is in the ignition switch⁴ and the **START/STOP ENGINE** button is depressed.
- The steering lock locks when the driver's door is opened after the engine has been switched off.

A mechanical noise can be perceived when the steering lock unlocks or locks.

Related information

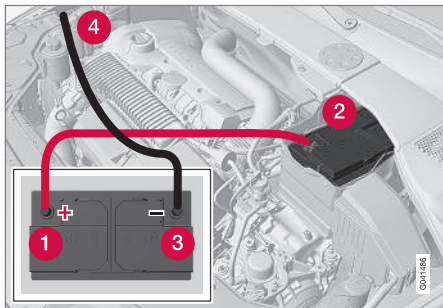
- Starting the engine (p. 254)
- Key positions (p. 73)
- Steering wheel (p. 79)

⁴ Cars with Keyless drive must have a remote control key inside the passenger compartment.



Jump starting with battery

If the starter battery (p. 346) is discharged then the car can be started with current from another battery.



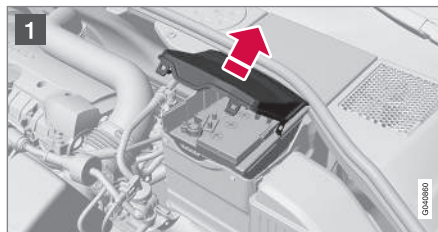
When jump starting the car, the following steps are recommended to avoid short circuits or other damage:

1. Insert the remote control key in key position **0** (p. 73).
2. Check that the donor battery has a voltage of 12 V.
3. If the donor battery is installed in another car - switch off the donor car's engine and make sure that the two cars do not touch each other.

4. Connect one of the red jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's positive terminal (1).

! IMPORTANT

Connect the start cable carefully to avoid short circuits with other components in the engine compartment.



5. Open the clips on the front cover of the battery in your car **1** and remove the cover.
6. Connect the red jump lead's other clamp onto the car's positive terminal (2).
7. Connect one of the black jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's negative terminal (3).
8. Connect the other clamp to a grounding point, e.g. right-hand engine mounting at the top, the outer screw head (4).

9. Check that the jump lead clamps are affixed securely so that there are no sparks during the starting procedure.
10. Start the engine of the "donor car" and allow it to run a few minutes at a speed slightly higher than idle approx. 1500 rpm.
11. Start the engine in the car with the discharged battery with the remote control key inserted and a press the **START/ STOP ENGINE** button, see Starting the engine (p. 254).

i NOTE

When starting the engine in normal conditions the car's electric drive motor is prioritised - the diesel engine remains switched off. This means that after pressing the **START/STOP ENGINE** button the electric motor has "started" and the car is ready to drive. A started motor is indicated by the combined instrument panel's indicator lamps extinguishing and its preset theme illuminating.

! IMPORTANT

Do not touch the crocodile clips during the start procedure. There is a risk of sparks forming.



12. Remove the jump leads in reverse order - first the black and then the red.
 - > Make sure that none of the black jump lead's clamps comes into contact with the battery's positive terminal or the clamp connected to the red jump lead!
13. Refit the front cover for the battery in your car.

WARNING

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.

Related information

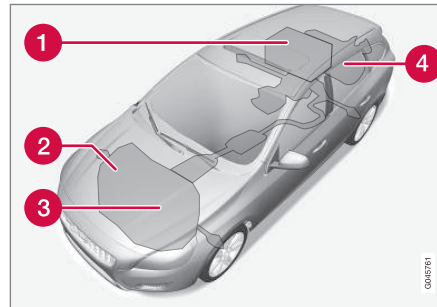
- Starting the engine (p. 254)

Drive systems

This V60 Plug-in Hybrid is a so-called parallel hybrid, which means that it has two separate drive systems: an electric motor and a diesel engine. Depending on the driver-selected drive mode and the electric energy available, the two drive systems are used either individually or in parallel.

Two drive systems

An advanced control system combines the properties of both drive systems in order to provide optimum driving economy.



- 1 Hybrid battery
- 2 Hazard voltage generator⁵
- 3 Diesel engine
- 4 Electric motor

The electric motor drives the car mostly at low speeds, the diesel engine at higher speeds, and during more active driving.

Both the diesel engine and electric motor can generate motive force directly to the wheels. The diesel engine can also charge the electric motor's hybrid battery with a special high-voltage generator.

Related information

- Drive system - drive modes (p. 258)
- Energy flow (p. 260)
- Drive system - symbols and messages (p. 262)

⁵ Combined high-voltage generator and starter motor - ISG (Integrated Starter Generator).



08 Starting and driving

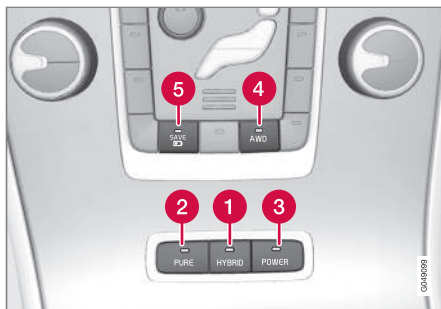
Drive system - drive modes

Both of the car's drive systems are used either individually or in parallel. The driver can select between different drive modes while driving. Regardless of selected drive mode, the control system checks that the combination of drivability, driving experience, environmental impact and fuel economy is always optimal in relation to the selected drive mode.

If a drive mode cannot be activated then the reason is explained with a text message in the combined instrument panel.

NOTE

The drive cannot set the "wrong" drive mode - if any parameter is not met in a specific situation, the system will automatically choose another, more appropriate drive mode.



Controls for drive modes.

WARNING

- Do not leave the car in an unventilated area with drive mode activated and the diesel engine switched off - the engine will start automatically when the energy level in the hybrid battery is low, and the exhaust fumes may cause serious harm to humans and animals.

2 – PURE



This option focuses on electric operation as well as low energy consumption, and helps the driver to maximise driving on the hybrid battery.

Since the mileage in electric operation is connected to the car's total energy consumption, deductions are made for functions that limit mileage, e.g. climate and dynamic performance. To obtain the maximum possible mileage the air conditioning (p. 124) is therefore switched off - however, it can be activated with the **AC** button if necessary.

NOTE

In the event of misting, press **AC**, **AUTO** or the defroster button.

Please note

This drive mode can only be selected when the hybrid battery has a sufficiently high energy level.

The diesel engine can start automatically in certain cases, despite the PURE drive mode being selected, for example.:

- if the speed exceeds 125 km/h
- if the driver requests more motive force than electric drive can provide
- if the hybrid battery's energy level is too low and it must be charged
- in the event if system/component limitations, e.g. low outside temperature, see Energy flow (p. 260).



1 – HYBRID



This option is the car's pre-set start mode. The control system uses both the electric motor and diesel engine - individually or in parallel - and calculates the optimal use with regard to performance, fuel consumption and comfort.

The capacity to run solely with the electric motor in the HYBRID drive mode depends on the hybrid battery's energy level and, for example, the requirement for heating/cooling in the passenger compartment. At high level the capacity for solely driving with electric operation is same as in PURE mode, i.e. the car is easy to drive as an electric car (high electrical power output available).

At low energy level (hybrid battery is almost empty) the battery's energy level must also be maintained at the same time, leading to the diesel engine starting more often.

To restore the function to run solely on electricity in HYBRID mode:

- Charge the hybrid battery from a 230 VAC socket with the charging cable (see Charging current (p. 286)) or use the SAVE function.

Please note

- The diesel engine may even start with a high energy level in the hybrid battery,

such as to raise/lower the temperature in the passenger compartment.

3 – POWER



This option sets the car in the best response and performance mode, by means of both the electric motor and diesel engine being activated the whole time. The car has sportier characteristics and

faster response to accelerating.

During active driving, the use of a lower gears is prioritised, leading to a delayed upshift.

Please note

- The diesel engine runs continuously.
- The car is driven by both the front and rear wheels.
- This drive mode results involves increased fuel consumption.

4 – AWD



The mode activates all-wheel drive, which improves the car's grip and traction. The mode is primarily designed for low speed on slippery road surfaces, but all-wheel drive also has a stabilising

effect at higher speeds.

Please note

- The diesel engine runs continuously.
- This drive mode results involves increased fuel consumption.

5 – SAVE



This function starts charging the hybrid battery and ensures that its energy level does not fall below a capacity equivalent to approx. 20 km driving with electric operation. The idea

is to be able to save this energy for later when electric operation is more suitable, e.g. for urban driving.

If the hybrid battery's energy level is low when pressing the **SAVE** button then the diesel engine will first charge it to a capacity equivalent to approx. 20 km driving with electric operation.

Driving with the electric motor saves more fuel at low speeds than at higher speeds. Therefore, select SAVE primarily when the hybrid battery's energy level is high and a planned journey shall start with a longer distance at higher speeds (e.g. on motorways) and end with a distance at low speeds when electric operation is required.

Pressing the **SAVE** button when the hybrid battery's energy level is equivalent to more than approx. 20 km driving with electric oper-



08 Starting and driving



ation will maintain the hybrid battery's current energy level.

Regardless of selected drive mode, charging of the hybrid battery is activated temporarily in the background - similar to the SAVE function - then an automatic DPF (p. 284) regeneration is performed.

Please note

- This drive mode results involves increased fuel consumption.
- After the diesel engine has charged the hybrid battery to the SAVE level the control system will stop/start the diesel engine in the same way as for low energy level in HYBRID mode.

Drive modes in MY CAR

The car's menu system (p. 105) contains brief descriptions about the car's different drive modes.

1. Go to **MY CAR** → **HYBRID** → **Driving modes**.
2. There, select between **PURE**, **HYBRID**, **POWER**, **AWD** and **SAVE** and confirm with **OK**.

Start/Stop function

The control system determines when the diesel engine can be stopped and be switched off, as well as for how long. This is equivalent to the Start/Stop function in conventional cars with fuel-driven engines.

Trip statistics

The car stores the statistics (p. 112) of consumed electricity/diesel related to mileage travelled.

Apart from via the trip computer, the trip statistics can also be accessed via the **MY CAR** menu system:

- Go to **MY CAR** → **Trip statistics** and confirm with **OK**.

Related information

- Drive systems (p. 257)
- Drive system - symbols and messages (p. 262)
- Energy flow (p. 260)

Energy flow

The centre console's screen can graphically display whether the engine or motor is driving the car and how the energy is flowing - it shows, for example, whether the hybrid battery is charging or providing energy to the electric motor.

In addition, information about temperature and age-related diesel fuel.



The function to display the energy flow is activated in the menu system:

- Go to **MY CAR** → **HYBRID** → **Power flow** and confirm with **OK**.

Limitation due to low outside temperature

To avoid the risk of paraffin precipitate (see Fuel - diesel (p. 282)) in the diesel fuel due to low thermal resistance, the car has a market-



dependent function which automatically limits the option of using electric operation with the PURE or HYBRID drive mode in low temperatures. If such a situation occurs then the diesel engine will be running the whole time.

Diesel fuel thermal resistance is a measure of the usefulness of the fuel at low temperatures. Normally, the diesel fuel's thermal properties are adapted to the climate zone and season in which it is distributed and sold. See also information about diesel fuel (p. 282).

The automatic limitation in low temperatures increases gradually depending on the age of the fuel in the tank. When the car has recently been refuelled there is no limitation, but it increases the older the fuel in the tank becomes, counted in months.

The purpose of the function is, in low outside temperatures, to allow the car to consume fuel at such a rate that fresh fuel - with the correct thermal resistance - can/must be added before the critical temperature for the current fuel is reached.

Fuel age

Old diesel fuel (from approx. 5 months and older) in combination with condensation can, in some circumstances, lead to algal and bacterial growth in the fuel system and/or oxidation of the fuel with the risk of operational disruption as a result.

To avoid such problems, the car has a built-in function which checks the age of the fuel. In connection with this, a self-explanatory text message may appear, for example:

- **Aged fuel Start diesel engine to consume fuel**
- **Aged fuel Engine will run to consume fuel**
- **Aged fuel Fill up fuel tank**

Follow the recommended action where appropriate.

Related information

- Drive systems (p. 257)



08 Starting and driving

Drive system - symbols and messages

In some situations the drive system can display a message in the combined instrument panel - follow the recommendation given if appropriate.



This symbol illuminates in combination with a text message and an acoustic warning signal if an unbelted driver opens the driver's door with the diesel engine or electric motor running.

The same thing happens if an unbelted driver starts the engine with the driver's door open.

Here are some examples of messages, their meaning and suggestions for action:

| Message | Specification | Action |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PURE not available due to low hybrid system temperature | One or more components in the drive system have not reached the correct operating temperature. | Drive in HYBRID mode until the message changes to PURE available - then press the PURE button. |
| PURE not available due to temporary hybrid system limitations | Temporary system limitation, e.g. operating temperature not correct. | Drive in HYBRID mode until the message changes to PURE available - then press the PURE button. |
| PURE not available due to low battery charge | The hybrid battery's energy level is too low. | Drive in SAVE mode until the message changes to PURE available or charge the battery with 230 VAC - then press the PURE button. |
| PURE not available when gear lever in manual position | The gear selector is in manual "+/-" position. | Move the gear selector to the side, to automatic mode and then press the PURE button. |
| PURE available | The PURE mode is available again after the previous limitation. | - |
| POWER not available due to temporary hybrid system limitations | Temporary system limitation, e.g. operating temperature not correct. | - |



| Message | Specification | Action |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| SAVE not available due to temporary hybrid system limitations | Temporary system limitation, e.g. operating temperature not correct. | – |
| AWD not available due to temporary hybrid system limitations | Temporary system limitation, e.g. operating temperature not correct. | – |

Related information

- Drive systems (p. 257)



Gearboxes

An V60 Plug-in Hybrid is driven and operated in the same way as a car with a conventional internal combustion engine and automatic gearbox.

The exception is that with the gear selector in manual gear position (+/-) the diesel engine will always be running. The driver must then change manually and the car engine brakes when the accelerator pedal is released, see Automatic gearbox -- Geartronic (p. 264).

! IMPORTANT

To prevent damage to any drive system components, the working temperature of the gearbox is checked. If there is a risk of overheating, a warning symbol is illuminated in the combined instrument panel in conjunction with a text message being shown. Follow the recommendation given in the text message.

Related information

- Automatic gearbox -- Geartronic (p. 264)

Gear shift indicator*

The gear shift indicator notifies the driver when it is appropriate to engage the next higher or lower gear. An essential detail in connection with environmental driving is to drive in the right gear and to change gear in plenty of time.

Automatic gearbox



Combined instrument panel "Digital" with gear shift indicator.

An indicator is available as an aid on some variants - GSI (Gear Shift Indicator) - which notifies the driver when it is appropriate to engage the next higher or lower gear in order to obtain the lowest possible fuel consumption. However, taking into consideration characteristics such as performance and vibration-free running, it may be advantageous to change gear at a higher engine speed. The framed number indicates the current gear.

Automatic gearbox -- Geartronic

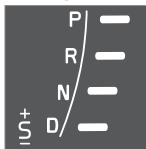
The Geartronic gearbox has two different gear modes - Automatic and Manual.



D: Automatic gear positions. **+/-:** Manual gear positions. **S⁶:** Sport mode*.

Combined instrument panel (p. 62) shows the position of the gear selector using the following indications: **P, R, N, D, S⁺, 1, 2, 3** etc.

Gear positions



Automatic gear positions are indicated on the right of the combined instrument panel. (Only one marker is illuminated at a time - the one showing the current gear selector position.)

Parking position - P

Select position **P** when starting the engine or when the car is parked.

- In order to be able to move the gear selector from **P**-position, the brake pedal must first be depressed firmly.

i NOTE

When starting the engine there is an automatic function check of the brake system when the driver depresses the brake pedal to take the gear selector from the **P**-position. During the function check the pedal travel is slightly longer than during normal braking.

The gearbox is mechanically blocked when the **P** position is engaged. Also apply the parking brake (p. 272), as a precaution.

i NOTE

The gear selector must be in **P** position to allow the car to be locked and alarmed.

! IMPORTANT

The car must be stationary when position **P** is selected.

! WARNING

Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - the automatic transmission's **P** position is not sufficient to hold the car in all situation.

Reverse position - R

The car must be stationary when **R** position is selected.

Neutral position - N

No gear is engaged and the engine can be started. Apply the parking brake if the car is stationary with the gear selector in **N** position.

Drive position - D

D is the normal driving position. Shifting up and down takes place automatically based on the level of acceleration and speed. The car must be stationary when the gear selector is moved to **D** position from **R** position.

Geartronic – Manual gear positions (+S-)

With the gear selector in manual gear position "**+S-**" the diesel engine is permanently in operation. The driver must then change manually and the car engine brakes when the accelerator pedal is released.



The manual gear position is reached by moving the lever to the side from position **D** to the end position at "**+S-**". The combined instrument

panel's symbol "**+S-**" changes colour from **WHITE** to **ORANGE** and the digits **1, 2, 3** etc. are displayed in a box, corresponding to the gear that has just been selected.

⁶ The "Sport mode" function is not available in a V60 Plug-in Hybrid - only "+" and "-".



08 Starting and driving



- Move the lever forwards towards "+" (plus) to change up a gear and release the lever, which returns to its rest position between + and –.

or

- Pull the lever back towards "-" (minus) to change down a gear and release it.

The manual gearshift mode "+S-" can be selected at any time while driving.

Geartronic automatically shifts down if the driver allows the speed to decrease lower than a level suitable for the selected gear, in order to avoid jerking and stalling.

To return to automatic driving mode:

- Move the lever to the side to the end position at **D**.

Geartronic - Winter mode

It can be easier to pull away on slippery roads if 3rd gear is engaged manually.

1. Depress the brake pedal and move the gear selector from **D** position to the end position at "+S-" - the combined instrument panel changes indication from **D** to the figure 1.
2. Scroll up to gear 3 by pushing the lever forward towards "+" (plus) twice - the display shifts the indication from 1 to 3.
3. Release the brake and accelerate carefully.

The gearbox "winter mode" means that the car moves off with a lower engine speed and reduced engine power on the drive wheels.

Kick-down

When the accelerator pedal is pressed all the way to the floor (beyond the position normally regarded as full acceleration) a lower gear is immediately engaged. This is known as kick-down.

If the accelerator is released from the kick-down position, the gearbox automatically changes up.

Kick-down is used when maximum acceleration is needed, such as for overtaking.

Safety function

To prevent overrevving the engine, the gearbox control program has a protective downshift inhibitor which prevents the kick-down function.

Geartronic does not permit downshifting/ kick-down which would result in an engine speed high enough to damage the engine. Nothing happens if the driver still tries to shift down in this way at high engine speed – the original gear remains engaged.

When kick-down is activated the car can change one or more gears at a time depending on engine speed. The car changes up when the engine reaches its maximum speed in order to prevent damage to the engine.

Related information

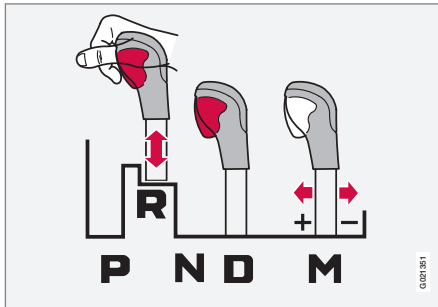
- Transmission fluid - grade and volume (p. 383)



Gear selector inhibitor

There are two different types of gear selector inhibitor - mechanical and automatic.

Mechanical gear selector inhibitor



The gear selector can be moved forward and back freely between **N** and **D**. Other positions are locked with a latch that is released with the inhibitor button on the gear selector.

With the inhibitor button depressed the lever can be moved forwards or backwards between **P**, **R**, **N** and **D**.

Automatic gear selector inhibitor

The automatic gearbox has special safety systems:

Parking position (P)

Stationary car with engine running:

- Keep your foot on the brake pedal when moving the gear selector to another position.

Electric gear inhibitor – Shiftlock Parking position (P)

To be able to move the gear selector from **P** to other gear positions, the brake pedal must be depressed and the remote control key must be in key position **II** (p. 73).

Shiftlock – Neutral (N)

If the gear selector is in **N** position and the car has been stationary for at least 3 seconds (irrespective of whether the engine is running) then the gear selector is locked.

To be able to move the gear selector from **N** to other gear positions, the brake pedal must be depressed and the remote control key must be in key position **II**.

Deactivate automatic gear selector inhibitor



If the car cannot be driven, e.g. due to a flat battery, the gear selector must be moved from the **P** position so that the car can be moved.

- 1 Lift the rubber mat in the compartment behind the centre console and locate a hole⁷ for the key blade (p. 158) in the bottom of the compartment.
 - 2 Search for a spring-loaded button down in the hole with the key blade; depress the button with the blade and hold.
 - 3 Move the gear selector from the **P** position and pull up the key blade.
4. Set the rubber mat back in place.

⁷ There may be 2 holes - one for the key blade and one that fixes the rubber mat.



Related information

- Automatic gearbox -- Geartronic (p. 264)

Hill start assist (HSA)*

The foot brake can be released before setting off or reversing uphill - the HSA (Hill Start Assist) function means that the car does not roll backwards.

The function means that the pedal pressure in the brake system remains for several seconds while the driver's foot is moved from brake pedal to accelerator pedal.

The temporary braking effect releases after several seconds or when the driver accelerates.

Related information

- Starting the engine (p. 254)

All Wheel Drive - AWD

The best traction possible is achieved with all-wheel drive.



Use this button on the centre console to activate all-wheel drive (AWD – All Wheel Drive), see Drive system - drive modes (p. 258). The mode is primarily intended for use at low speed in slippery driving conditions. All-wheel drive also has a stabilising effect at higher speeds.

To achieve the best possible traction and prevent wheel spin the motive force is distributed automatically to the wheels with the best grip. Under normal driving conditions, the majority of power is transmitted to the front wheels.



Foot brake

The foot brake is used to reduce the car's speed while driving.

The car is equipped with two brake circuits. If one brake circuit is damaged then this will mean that the brakes engage at a deeper level and higher pedal pressure is needed to produce the normal braking effect.

The driver's brake pedal pressure is assisted by a brake servo.

WARNING

The brake servo only works when the engine is running.

If the brake is used when the engine is switched off then the pedal travel is slightly longer and a higher pedal pressure must be used to brake the car.

In very hilly terrain or when driving with a heavy load the brakes can be relieved by using engine braking. Engine braking is most efficiently used if the same gear is used downhill as up.

For more general information on heavy loads on the car, see Engine oil - adverse driving conditions (p. 379).

Function check when the engine is started

A V60 Plug-in Hybrid is equipped with a so-called "brake by wire" brake system. After each time the engine is started there is an automatic function check of the brake system when the driver depresses the brake pedal to take the gear selector from the **P** position, see Automatic gearbox -- Geartronic (p. 264). In connection with the function check, in some cases, the information display may show a message and a symbol, see examples in the table at the end of this section.

NOTE

During the function check the pedal travel is slightly longer than during normal braking.

Light braking - hybrid battery charging

The electric motor's engine brake is used during light braking. The car's kinetic energy is then converted to electrical energy instead which is used to charge the hybrid battery. Battery charging with engine braking is indicated in the combined instrument panel (p. 63) with an animation.

This function is active in the speed range 150-5 km/h - for harder braking, as well as outside the speed range, the braking is complemented by the hydraulic brake system.

Cleaning the brake discs

Coatings of dirt and water on the brake discs may result in delayed brake function. With wet road surfaces, prior to long-stay parking and after the car has been washed, it is advisable to carry out cleaning by braking gently for a short period while driving.

Maintenance

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service intervals as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

IMPORTANT

The wear on the brake system's components must be checked regularly.

Contact a workshop for information about the procedure or engage a workshop to carry out the inspection - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.



Symbols and messages

| Symbol | Message | Meaning/Action |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | | Constant glow – Check the brake fluid level. If the level is low, fill with brake fluid and check for the cause of the brake fluid loss. |
| | | Constant glow for 2 seconds when the engine is started - automatic function check. |
| | Fully depress the brake pedal in order to exit the P-position | Foot pressure on the brake pedal is too low. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the pedal further down. |
| | Brake pedal characteristics changed Service required | May be shown in very cold weather or if the gear selector has been moved from the P position with the brake pedal insufficiently depressed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Switch off the engine by pressing the START/STOP ENGINE button - start the engine again and depress the brake pedal. <p>If the error message remains: Contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.</p> |

WARNING

If and illuminate at the same time, there may be a fault in the brake system.

If the level in the brake fluid reservoir is normal at this stage, drive carefully to the nearest workshop and have the brake system checked - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

If the brake fluid is below the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid.

The reason for the loss of brake fluid must be investigated.

Related information

- Parking brake (p. 272)
- Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers (p. 271)
- Foot brake - emergency brake assistance (p. 271)
- Foot brake - anti-lock braking system (p. 271)



Foot brake - anti-lock braking system

The anti-lock braking system, ABS (Anti-lock Braking System), prevents the wheels from locking up during braking.

The function allows steering ability to be maintained, and it is easier to swerve to avoid a hazard for example. Vibration may be felt in the brake pedal when this is engaged and this is normal.

A short test of the ABS system is made automatically after the engine has been started when the driver releases the brake pedal. A further automatic test of the ABS system may be made when the car reaches 10 km/h. The test may be experienced as pulses in the brake pedal.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 269)
- Parking brake (p. 272)
- Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers (p. 271)
- Foot brake - emergency brake assistance (p. 271)

Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers

Emergency brake lights are activated to alert vehicles behind about sudden braking. The function means that the brake light flashes instead of - as in normal braking - shining with a constant glow.

Emergency brake lights are activated at speeds above 50 km/h in the event of sudden braking. After the car's speed has been slowed below 10 km/h the brake light returns from flashing to the normal constant glow - while at the same time the hazard warning flashers (p. 89) are activated, and they flash until the driver changes engine speed with the accelerator pedal or they are deactivated with their button.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 269)
- Parking brake (p. 272)
- Foot brake - emergency brake assistance (p. 271)
- Foot brake - anti-lock braking system (p. 271)

Foot brake - emergency brake assistance

Emergency brake assistance EBA (Emergency Brake Assist) helps to increase the braking force and so reduce the braking distance.

EBA detects the driver's braking style and increases the braking force when necessary. The brake force can be reinforced up to the level when the ABS system is engaged. The EBA function is interrupted when the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

NOTE

When EBA is activated the brake pedal lowers slightly more than usual, depress (hold) the brake pedal as long as necessary. If the brake pedal is released then all braking ceases.

Related information

- Foot brake (p. 269)
- Parking brake (p. 272)
- Foot brake - emergency brake lights and automatic hazard warning flashers (p. 271)
- Foot brake - anti-lock braking system (p. 271)



Parking brake

The parking brake holds the car stationary, when the driver's seat is empty, by mechanically locking/blocking two wheels.

Function

A faint electric motor noise can be heard when the electrical parking brake is being applied. The noise can also be heard during the automatic function checking of the parking brake.

If the car is stationary when the parking brake is applied then it only acts on the rear wheels. If it is applied when the car is moving then the normal foot brake is used, i.e. the brake acts on all four wheels. Brake function changes over to the rear wheels when the car is almost stationary.


Low battery voltage

If the battery voltage is too low then the parking brake can neither be released nor applied. Connect a donor battery if the battery voltage is too low, see Jump starting with battery (p. 256).

Applying the parking brake



Parking brake control - apply.

1. Press the foot brake pedal down firmly.
2. Press the control **PUSH LOCK/PULL RELEASE**.
 - >  The combined instrument panel's symbol starts flashing - once there is a constant glow the parking brake is applied.
3. Release the foot brake pedal and make sure that the car is at a standstill position.
 - When parking the vehicle put the gear selector in the **P** position.

Emergency brake

In an emergency the parking brake can be applied when the vehicle is in motion by pressing and holding the control for **PUSH**

LOCK/PULL RELEASE. The braking procedure is stopped when the control is released.

NOTE

In the event of emergency braking at speeds above 10 km/h a signal sounds during the braking procedure.

Parking on a hill

If the car is parked facing uphill:

- Turn the wheels **away from** the kerb.

If the car is parked facing downhill:

- Turn the wheels **towards** the kerb.

WARNING

Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - leaving the car in gear, or in **P** if it has automatic transmission, is not sufficient to hold the car in all situation.




Disengaging the parking brake




Parking brake control - release.

Releasing manually

1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch⁸.
2. Press the foot brake pedal down firmly.
3. Pull the control.
 - >  The parking brake releases and the combined instrument panel's symbol extinguishes.

Releasing automatically

1. Put the seatbelt on.
2. Start the engine.
3. Press the foot brake pedal down firmly.
4. Move the gear selector to position **D** or **R** and depress the accelerator.
 - >  The parking brake releases and the combined instrument panel's symbol extinguishes.

NOTE

For safety reasons, the parking brake is only released automatically if the engine is running and the driver is wearing a seatbelt. The parking brake is released immediately on cars with automatic gearbox when the accelerator pedal is depressed and the gear selector is in position **D** or **R**.

Heavy load uphill

A heavy load, such as a trailer, can cause the car to roll backward when the parking brake

is released automatically on a steep incline. Avoid this by depressing the control while driving off. Release the control when the engine achieves traction.

Replacing the brake linings

The rear brake linings must be replaced at a workshop due to the design of the electric parking brake - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Symbols and messages

For information on how the combined instrument panel's text messages can be shown and deleted, see Messages - handling (p. 105).

⁸ For a car with the Keyless system: Press **START/STOP ENGINE**.



08 Starting and driving



| Symbol | Message | Meaning/Action |
|--------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | "Message" | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Read the message in the combined instrument panel. |
| | | <p>A flashing symbol indicates that the parking brake is applied.</p> <p>If the symbol flashes in any other situation then this means that a fault has arisen.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Read the message in the combined instrument panel. |
| | Park brake not fully released | <p>A fault is preventing the parking brake from being released:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Try to apply and release the brake. <p>If the fault persists after a few attempts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Visit a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. <p>Note: A warning signal sounds if the journey is continued with this error message.</p> |
| | Parking brake not applied | <p>A fault is preventing the parking brake from being applied:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Try to release and apply the brake. <p>If the fault persists after a few attempts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Visit a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. <p>The message is also illuminated on cars with manual gearbox when the car is driven at low speed with the door open in order to alert the driver that the parking brake may have been unintentionally disengaged.</p> |
| | Parking brake Service required | <p>A fault has arisen:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Try to apply and release the brake. <p>If the fault persists after a few attempts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Visit a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. |

08

- If the car has to be parked before a possible fault is rectified then the wheels must be turned as if parking on a hill and

the gear selector must be set in position **P**.

A text message can be acknowledged by briefly pressing the **OK** button on the direction indicator stalk.



Related information

- Foot brake (p. 269)



Planning your driving

It is important to plan carefully when driving in electric mode in order to achieve the longest possible driving distance.

Utilise electric operation as much as possible:

- Find out where the charging stations are located.
- Prioritise choosing a parking space with a charging station.
- Balance electricity consumption with the accelerator pedal, and by these means use the advantages of the electric motor.



WARNING

Remember that the car does not emit any engine noise when it is only powered by the electric motor and may therefore be difficult to notice by children, pedestrians, cyclists and animals. This applies in particular at low speeds, such as in car parks.



NOTE

Make a habit of always starting a journey with fully-charged hybrid battery.

Driving techniques

The electric motor acts as both engine and alternator. During braking (p. 269) the brake force is used to recharge the hybrid battery (p. 286) - energy that otherwise would have been lost as heat energy.

Here is some advice that reduces power consumption (allowing longer possible mileage) without the need for travelling time to increase or driving pleasure to decrease.

- Do not hold the car stationary on a hill with the accelerator pedal. Use the foot brake instead.
- Use engine braking and smooth operation of the foot brake when braking - this recharges the hybrid battery and extends the possible mileage with the electric motor.
- High speed increases power consumption considerably due to increased wind resistance - doubling speed increases wind resistance 4 times.
- Maintain the car regularly - follow Volvo's recommended service intervals.
- Towing another car consumes a lot of electricity - use the **AWD** mode. This then charges the hybrid battery, in combination with improving the car's driving characteristics and roadholding, see Drive system - drive modes (p. 258).

Outside temperature

The electric motor, electronics and batteries work best at approx. 25 °C. When the car is connected to an electrical socket it is conditioned (p. 129) to its optimal temperature range. If the car is started in cold weather or goes beyond its permitted temperature range while driving then the fuel heater starts and, if

required, the internal combustion engine starts automatically so that heating takes place. The car can be driven electrically but with reduced power if the temperature becomes too low.

Similarly, the system may need to be cooled down when driving in hot conditions.



NOTE

If the outside temperature drops extremely low then the diesel engine will always be running.

Power consumers

The more power consumers in the car that are switched on (e.g. stereo, electrically heated windows, door mirrors, seats, etc.) the higher the energy consumption.

Related information

- Economical driving (p. 285)
- Winter driving (p. 279)



Fording

Fording means that the car is driven through a water-covered roadway. Fording must be carried out with great caution.

The car can be driven through water at a maximum depth of 25 cm at a maximum speed of 10 km/h. Extra caution should be exercised when passing through flowing water.

During driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop the car. When the water has been passed, depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved. Water and mud for example can make the brake linings wet resulting in delayed brake function.

- Clean the electric contacts of the electric engine block heater and trailer coupling after driving in water and mud.
- Do not let the car stand with water over the sills for any long period of time - this could cause electrical malfunctions.



IMPORTANT

Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

In depths greater than 25 cm, water could enter the transmission. This reduces the lubricating ability of the oils and shortens the service life of these systems.

In the event of the engine stalling in water, do not try restart - tow the car from the water to a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. Risk of engine breakdown.

Related information

- Recovery (p. 304)
- Towing (p. 302)

Overheating

Under special conditions, for example hard driving in hilly terrain and hot climate, there is a risk that the engine and drive system may overheat - in particular with a heavy load.

For information about overheating when driving with a trailer, see Driving with a trailer (p. 296).

- Remove any auxiliary lamps from in front of the grille when driving in hot climates.
- If the temperature in the engine's cooling system is too high then a warning symbol is illuminated in the combined instrument panel's information display and a text message **High engine temp Stop safely** is shown there - stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes in order to cool down.
- If the text message **High engine temp Stop engine** or **Coolant level low, Stop engine** is shown then the engine must be switched off after stopping the car.
- In the event of overheating in the gearbox a built-in protection function is activated which, amongst other things, illuminates a warning symbol in the combined instrument panel, and its display shows the text message **Transmission hot Reduce speed** or **Transmission hot Stop safely** - follow the recommendation given and lower the speed and stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling



speed for a few minutes in order to allow the gearbox to cool down.

- If the car overheats, the air conditioning may be switched off temporarily.
- Do not turn the engine off immediately you stop after a hard drive.

NOTE

It is normal for the engine's cooling fan to operate for a time after the engine has been switched off.

Driving with open tailgate

When driving with the tailgate open, toxic exhaust fumes can be sucked into the car through the cargo area.

WARNING

Do not drive with an open tailgate! Toxic exhaust fumes could be drawn into the car through the cargo area.

Related information

- Loading (p. 145)

Overload - starter battery

The electrical functions in the car load the starter battery (p. 346) to varying degrees. Avoid using the key position (p. 73) II when the engine is switched off. Instead use the I mode - which uses less power.

Also, be aware of different accessories that load the electrical system. Do not use functions which use a lot of power when the engine is switched off. Examples of such functions are:

- ventilation fan
- headlamps
- windscreen wiper
- audio system (high volume).

If the starter battery voltage is low then the combined instrument panel's information display shows the text **Low battery Power save mode**. The energy-saving function then shuts down certain functions or reduces certain functions such as the ventilation fan and/or audio system.

- In which case, charge the battery by starting the engine and then running it for at least 15 minutes - starter battery charging is more effective during driving than running the engine at idling speed while stationary.



Before a long journey

Before a long journey, it makes good sense to go through the following points:

- Check that the engine is working normally and that fuel consumption (p. 386) is normal.
- Make sure that there are no leaks (fuel, oil or other fluid).
- Check all bulbs and tyre tread depths.
- Carrying a warning triangle (p. 317) is a legal requirement in certain countries.

Related information

- Engine oil - checking and filling (p. 333)
- Changing wheels - removing wheels (p. 312)
- Lamp replacement (p. 337)

Winter driving

For winter driving it is important to perform certain checks in order to ensure that the car can be driven safely.

Check the following in particular before the cold season:

- The engine coolant (p. 334) must contain at least 50% glycol. This mixture protects the engine against frost erosion down to approximately -35°C . To achieve optimum antifreeze protection, different types of glycol must not be mixed.
- The fuel tank must be kept filled to prevent condensation.
- Engine oil viscosity is important. Oils with lower viscosity (thinner oils) facilitate starting in cold weather and also reduce fuel consumption while the engine is cold. For more information on suitable oils, see Engine oil - adverse driving conditions (p. 379).



IMPORTANT

Low viscosity oil must not be used for hard driving or in hot weather.

- The condition of the starter battery and charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places great demands on the

starter battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.

- Use washer fluid (p. 346) to avoid ice forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

To achieve optimum roadholding Volvo recommends using winter tyres on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice.



NOTE

The use of winter tyres is a legal requirement in certain countries. Studded tyres are not permitted in all countries.

Slippery driving conditions

Practise driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the car reacts.



Range for electric operation

The car's range for electric operation is dependent on several factors, such as the number of consumers that are switched on.

Power consumers

In order to achieve the longest possible mileage for electric operation, the driver of an electric car also has to think about saving current (p. 286). The more consumers there are (stereo, electric heating in windows/mirrors/seats, very cold air from the climate control system, etc.) that are switched on - the shorter the potential mileage.

To specify the range for electric operation, see Range - specification (p. 389).

NOTE

In addition to high power output in the passenger compartment, high speed, sudden acceleration, heavy loads and uphill gradients can also reduce the possible driving distance.

Longer periods of inactive time

During normal hybrid battery charging (p. 286) some of the charging current is used to keep the car's drive system ready to drive, mainly to control the hybrid battery's temperature. If the car is not being used for a few days then energy can be saved by not starting preconditioning. If the car is not used for a long time, the hybrid battery performs best

if the car is parked in a cool place. For further information about what to consider during longer periods of inactive time, see Long-term storage - points to remember (p. 295).

Related information

- Planning your driving (p. 276)
- Winter driving (p. 279)


Fuel filler flap - Opening/closing

The fuel filler flap can be opened/closed as follows:

Opening/closing the fuel filler flap



Open the fuel filler flap using the button on the lighting panel - the flap opens when the button is released.

 In the combined instrument panel's display the arrow on the symbol indicates which side of the car the fuel cap is located.

- Close the fuel filler flap by pressing it in until a click confirms that it is closed.

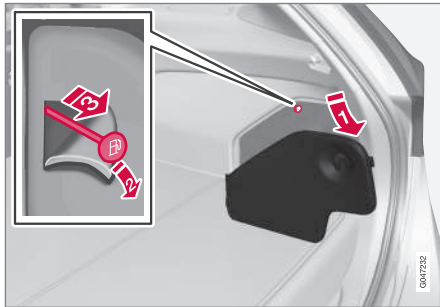
Related information

- Filling up with fuel (p. 281)



Fuel filler flap - manual opening

The fuel filler flap can be opened manually when electric opening from the passenger compartment is not possible.



1. Open/remove the side hatch in the cargo area (same side as fuel filler flap).
2. Expand/open a perforated section in the isolation and locate a green cord with handle.
3. Pull the cord gently straight back until the fuel filler flap folds out with a "click".

! IMPORTANT

Pull the wire gently - minimal force is required to disengage the hatch lock.

Related information

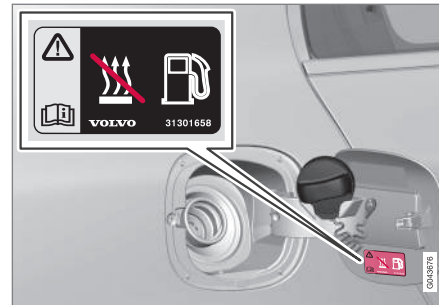
- Filling up with fuel (p. 281)

⁹ Only applies to cars with diesel engine.

Filling up with fuel

Important things to consider when refuelling.

Opening/closing the fuel cap



The fuel filler cap can be attached onto the flap.

A certain overpressure may arise in the tank in the event of high outside temperatures. Open the cap slowly.

- After refuelling - refit the cap and turn it until one or more clicking sounds are heard.

Filling up with fuel

- Do not overfill the tank but fill until the pump nozzle cuts out.

i NOTE

Excess fuel in the tank can overflow in hot weather.

Filling with a fuel can⁹

When filling with a fuel can, use the funnel located under the floor hatch in the cargo area. The funnel is located by the spare wheel or in the well under the floor hatch.

Make sure you insert the funnel's pipe firmly into the filler pipe. The filler pipe has an openable cap and the funnel's pipe must be moved past the cap before filling can begin.

Related information

- Fuel filler flap - manual opening (p. 281)
- Fuel - handling (p. 282)



Fuel - handling

Fuel of a lower quality than that recommended by Volvo must not be used as engine power and fuel consumption is negatively affected.

WARNING

Always avoid inhaling fuel vapour and getting fuel splashes in the eyes.

In the event of fuel in the eyes, remove any contact lenses and rinse the eyes in plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention.

Never swallow fuel. Fuels such as petrol, bioethanol and mixtures of them and diesel are highly toxic and could cause permanent injury or be fatal if swallowed. Seek medical attention immediately if fuel has been swallowed.

WARNING

Fuel which spills onto the ground can be ignited.

Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.

Never carry an activated mobile phone when refuelling. The ring signal could cause spark build-up and ignite petrol fumes, leading to fire and injury.

IMPORTANT

Mixing different types of fuel or the use of fuel not recommended invalidates Volvo's guarantees, and any associated service agreement. This applies to all engines. NOTE: It does not apply to cars with engines that are adapted to run on ethanol fuel (E85).

NOTE

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel grade are factors that could affect the car's performance.

Related information

- Economical driving (p. 285)
- Fuel - diesel (p. 282)
- Diesel particle filter (DPF) (p. 284)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 386)
- Fuel tank - volume (p. 385)

Fuel - diesel

Diesel is used as fuel.

Only use diesel fuel from well-known producers. Never use diesel of dubious quality. Diesel should fulfil the EN 590 or JIS K2204 standards. Diesel engines are sensitive to contaminants in the fuel, such as excessively high volumes of sulphur particles for example.

At low temperatures (-6 °C to -40 °C), a paraffin precipitate may form in the diesel fuel, which may lead to ignition problems. Special diesel fuel designed for low temperatures around freezing point is available from the major oil companies. This fuel is less viscous at low temperatures and reduces the risk of paraffin precipitate.

The risk of condensation in the fuel tank is reduced if the tank is kept well filled. When refuelling, check that the area around the fuel filler pipe is clean. Avoid spilling fuel onto the paintwork. Wash off any spillage with detergent and water.

IMPORTANT

Only ever use fuel that fulfils the European diesel standard.

The sulphur content must be a maximum of 50 ppm.

**! IMPORTANT**

Diesel type fuels that must not be used:

- Special additives
- Marine diesel fuel
- Heating oil
- FAME¹⁰ (Fatty Acid Methyl Ester) and vegetable oil.

These fuels do not fulfil the requirements in accordance with Volvo recommendations and generate increased wear and engine damage that is not covered by the Volvo warranty.

Empty tank

The design of the fuel system in a diesel engine means that if the vehicle runs out of fuel, the tank may need to be vented in the workshop in order to restart the engine after fuelling.

Once the engine has stopped due to fuel starvation, the fuel system needs a few moments to carry out a check. Do this before starting the engine, once the fuel tank has been filled with diesel:

1. Insert the remote control key in the ignition switch and push it in to the end posi-

tion, see Key positions (p. 73) for more information.

2. Press the **START** button **without** depressing the brake and/or clutch pedal.
3. Wait approx. 1 minute.
4. To start the engine: Depress the brake and/or clutch pedal and then press the **START** button again.

i NOTE

Before filling with fuel in the event of fuel shortage:

- Stop the car on as flat/level ground as possible - if the car is tilting there is a risk of air pockets in the fuel supply.

To bear in mind when you have run out of fuel

Avoid running out of fuel. In the event of an empty tank, it is possible to continue driving with the available charge in the hybrid battery. After refilling the fuel, it may seem to take longer to start the engine (up to 30 seconds). In certain cases, repeated attempts to start the car may also be required.

Once the engine has been started, it is recommended to keep it running for at least 5 minutes. Select drive mode **AWD** or

POWER in order to facilitate the supply of fuel.

If the message **Internal combustion engine unavailable Limited performance and mileage** is shown in the combined instrument panel's information display - switch off and then restart the engine again to regain full function.

Draining condensation from the fuel filter

The fuel filter separates condensation from the fuel. Condensation can disrupt engine operation.

The fuel filter must be drained at the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet or if you suspect that the car has been filled with contaminated fuel. For more information, see Volvo service programme (p. 327).

! IMPORTANT

Certain special additives remove the water separation in the fuel filter.

Related information

- Fuel - handling (p. 282)
- Diesel particle filter (DPF) (p. 284)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 386)

¹⁰ Diesel fuel may contain a certain amount of FAME, but further amounts must not be added.



Catalytic converters

The purpose of the catalytic converters is to purify exhaust gases. They are located close to the engine so that operating temperature is reached quickly.

The catalytic converters consist of a monolith (ceramic or metal) with channels. The channel walls are lined with a thin layer of platinum/rhodium/palladium. These metals act as catalysts, i.e. they participate in and accelerate a chemical reaction without being used up themselves.

Lambda-sond™ oxygen sensor

The Lambda-sond is part of a control system intended to reduce emissions and improve fuel economy (see Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 386)).

An oxygen sensor monitors the oxygen content of the exhaust gases leaving the engine. This value is fed into an electronic system that continuously controls the injectors. The ratio of fuel to air directed to the engine is continuously adjusted. These adjustments create optimal conditions for efficient combustion, and together with the three-way catalytic converter reduce harmful emissions (hydrocarbons, carbon monoxide and nitrous oxides).

Related information

- Economical driving (p. 285)
- Fuel - diesel (p. 282)

Diesel particle filter (DPF)

Diesel cars are equipped with a particle filter, which results in more efficient emission control.

The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the filter during normal driving. So-called "regeneration" is started in order to burn away the particles and empty the filter. This requires the engine to have reached normal operating temperature.

Regeneration of the particle filter is automatic and normally takes 10-20 minutes. It may take a little longer at a low average speed. Fuel consumption may increase slightly during regeneration.

During regeneration, charging of the hybrid battery is activated temporarily in the background, which is similar to the SAVE function, see Drive system - drive modes (p. 258).

Regeneration in cold weather

If the car is frequently driven short distances in cold weather then the engine does not reach normal operating temperature. This means that regeneration of the diesel particle filter does not take place and the filter is not emptied.

When the filter has become approx. 80% full of particles, a yellow warning triangle is shown in the combined instrument panel, and the message **Soot filter full** See manual is shown in its information display.

Start regeneration of the filter by driving the car until the engine reaches normal operating temperature, preferably on a main road or motorway. The car should then be driven for approximately 20 minutes more.



NOTE

The following may arise during regeneration:

- a smaller reduction of engine power may be noticed temporarily
- fuel consumption may increase temporarily
- a smell of burning may arise.

When regeneration is complete the warning text is cleared automatically.

Use the parking heater* in cold weather - the engine then reaches normal operating temperature more quickly.



IMPORTANT

If the filter is completely filled with particles, it may be difficult to start the engine and the filter is non-functional. Then there is a risk that the filter will need to be replaced.

Related information

- Fuel - handling (p. 282)
- Fuel - diesel (p. 282)



- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 386)
- Fuel tank - volume (p. 385)

Economical driving

Driving economically means driving smoothly while thinking ahead and adjusting your driving style and speed to the prevailing conditions.

- Use the ECO Guide which indicates how fuel-efficiently the car is being driven, see Eco guide & Hybrid guide (p. 67).
- Drive in the highest gear possible, adapted to the current traffic situation and road - lower engine speeds result in lower fuel consumption. Use the gear indicator (p. 264).
- Avoid sudden unnecessary acceleration and heavy braking.
- High speed results in increased fuel consumption - the wind resistance increases with speed.
- Do not run the engine to operating temperature at idling speed, but rather drive with a light load as soon as possible - a cold engine consumes more fuel than a warm one.
- Drive with the correct air pressure in the tyres and check this regularly - select ECO tyre pressure for best results, see Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 387).
- Choice of tyres can affect fuel consumption - seek advice on suitable tyres from a dealer.

- Remove unnecessary items from the car - the greater the load the higher the consumption.
- Use engine braking to slow down, when it can take place without risk to other road users.
- A roof load and ski box increase air resistance, leading to higher consumption - remove the load carriers when not in use.
- Avoid driving with open windows.

For information about Volvo Car Corporation's environmental philosophy, see Volvo Cars' environmental philosophy (p. 19).

For more information about fuel consumption, see Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 386).



WARNING

Never switch off the engine while moving, such as downhill, this deactivates important systems such as the power steering and brake servo.

Related information

- Fuel - handling (p. 282)
- Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions (p. 386)
- Fuel tank - volume (p. 385)



Charging the hybrid battery

In addition to the fuel tank, as in a conventional car, the car is equipped with a rechargeable battery, a so-called hybrid battery of the Lithium-ion type.

The hybrid battery is charged using a charging cable with control unit (p. 289) which is located in the storage area under the cargo area floor, see Charging cable with control unit (p. 289).

NOTE

Use a charging cable recommended by Volvo in accordance with IEC 62196 and IEC 61851 that supports temperature monitoring.

The time it takes for the hybrid battery to be charged is dependent on the charging current (p. 286) that is used.

During the charging of the car's hybrid battery the display on the charging cable's control unit shows the current status (p. 291) during an ongoing charging and after charging is complete.

While the hybrid battery is being charged, charging is also in progress for the car's starter battery (p. 346).

If the hybrid battery's temperature is below $-10\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ or above $30\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ then it may mean that some of the car's functions are changed or unavailable because the capacity of the hybrid batteries is reduced outside this temperature range.

An example of this is the PURE drive mode (see Drive system and drive modes (p. 258)) which is not selectable if the temperature in the battery is too low or high.

Charging with fixed control unit in accordance with mode 3¹¹

In certain markets the control unit is installed within a charging station connected to the mains power circuit. In which case, the charging cable has no control unit of its own. Instead, it has a special connector to be used to connect the charging cable to the charging station. Follow the instructions at the charging station.

Related information

- Charging the hybrid battery - preparations (p. 288)
- Range for electric operation (p. 280)

Charging current

Charging current is used for charging the hybrid battery (p. 286) as well as preconditioning of the car. Charging cable (p. 289) between the car's charging input socket and a 230 VAC socket can be set for different current intensity loads (6-16 A) using the control unit.

When the charging cable is activated the combined instrument panel shows a message and a lamp (p. 294) in the car's charging input socket illuminates. The charging current is mainly used for battery charging, but is also used for preconditioning (p. 129) the car.

IMPORTANT

Never unplug the charging cable from the 230 VAC socket while charging is in progress - there is then a risk that the 230 VAC socket may be damaged.

Charging time varies with the amperage setting on the control unit.

See examples in the following table:

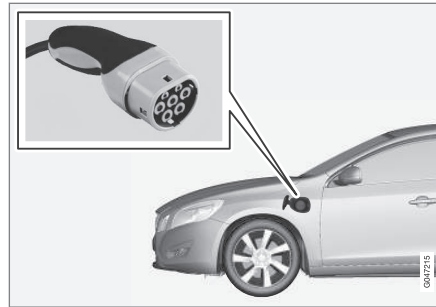
¹¹ European standard - EN 61851-1.



| Current intensity (A) | Charging time (hours) |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 6 | 7,5–10,0 |
| 10 | 4,5–7,0 |
| 16 | 4,0–5,5 |

NOTE

- If the weather is very cold or very hot then some of the charging current is used to heat/cool the hybrid battery and the passenger compartment (pre-conditioning (p. 129)), which results in a longer charging time.
- The charging time is extended if pre-conditioning (p. 129) has been selected. The time required depends mainly on the outside temperature.



Charging cable plug and charging input socket.

Normally several 230 VAC consumers are included in a fuse circuit, so additional consumers (e.g. lighting, vacuum cleaner, electric drill, etc.) can be on the same fuse.

Example 1

If the car is connected to a 230 VAC/10 A socket and the control unit is set at 16 A, then the car will attempt to draw 16 A from the 230 VAC mains power circuit - after a while the overloaded 10 A fuse for the socket will be tripped and battery charging stopped.

In which case, reset the fuse for the socket and select a lower charging current on the control unit, see Charging the hybrid battery - preparations (p. 288).

Example 2

If the car is connected to a 230 VAC/10 A socket and the control unit is set at 10 A ,

then the car will draw 10 A from the 230 VAC mains power circuit. If additional consumers are connected to the same socket (or another socket in the same fuse circuit) then there is a risk that the fuse for the socket/fuse socket will be overloaded and triggered, at which point battery charging is stopped.

In which case, reset the fuse for the socket/fuse circuit and select a lower charging current on the control unit - or disconnect other consumers from the socket.

Example 3

If the car is connected to a 230 VAC/10 A socket and the control unit is set at 6 A , then the car will only draw 6 A from the 230 VAC mains power circuit. Battery charging will of course take longer, but then additional consumers can be connected at the same time to the same socket (or fuse circuit) as long as the total load does not exceed the capacity of the fuse circuit.

Related information

- Range for electric operation (p. 280)



Charging the hybrid battery - preparations

Before recharging the car's hybrid battery can be started (p. 293) a number of preparations need to be made.

WARNING

- Charging the hybrid battery must only take place from approved grounded 230 VAC sockets.
- The control unit's ground fault breaker protects the car, but there may still be a risk of overloading the 230 VAC mains power circuit.
- Avoid visible worn or damaged mains sockets since they may lead to fire damage and/or personal injury if used.
- Never use an extension cable.

WARNING

The hybrid battery must only be replaced by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Before charging

IMPORTANT

- The control unit should not be flooded or immersed in water.
- Avoid direct sunlight.

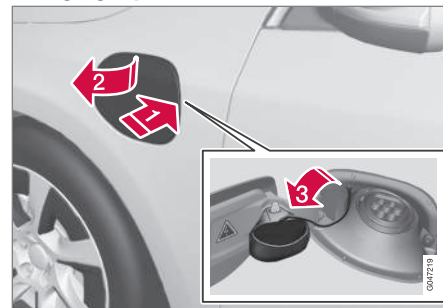
IMPORTANT




- Check that the 230 VAC socket has adequate power supply for charging electric vehicles - in the event of uncertainty the socket must be checked by a qualified professional.
- If the socket has unknown current intensity - use the lowest level on the control unit.

On the charging cable's control unit (p. 289) select the required charging current (p. 286) 6-16 A¹². On delivery, the lowest possible charging current is preset.

¹² Maximum charging current may vary depending on market.

Opening/closing the cover for the charging input socket



-  Press in the rear section of the cover and release.
-  Open the hatch.
-  Pull away the cover for the charging input socket and secure it in the holder inside the cover. Make sure that the cover's rubber straps are bent downwards in order to prevent the cover coming off from the holder.

Close the cover for the charging input socket in reverse order.

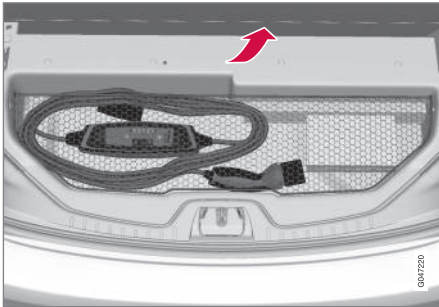
Related information

- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 286)
- Charging the hybrid battery - ending (p. 294)



Charging cable with control unit

The charging cable with its control unit is used to charge the car's hybrid battery. Use a charging cable recommended by Volvo.



The charging cable is located in the storage compartment under the cargo area's floor cover.

Specifications, charging cable

| | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| Enclosure class | IP67 |
| Ambient temperature | -32 °C to +50 °C |

WARNING

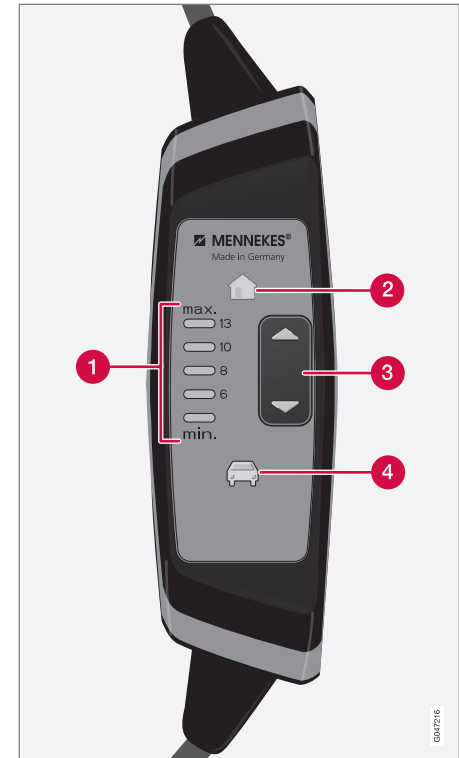
The charging cable must not be used if any part of it is damaged - there is then the risk of electric shock or serious personal injury.

A damaged or inoperative charging cable must only be repaired by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

IMPORTANT

Never unplug the charging cable from the 230 VAC socket while charging is in progress - there is then a risk that the 230 VAC socket may be damaged.

Control unit



Control unit display and controls.



08 Starting and driving



- 1 Indicator¹³ showing selected charging current.
- 2 The symbol illuminates when the charging cable is plugged into a 230 VAC socket.
- 3 Pushbuttons to increase/decrease the charging current.
- 4 The symbol illuminates when the charging cable is plugged into the car's 230 VAC input socket.



IMPORTANT

Multiple plugs, overvoltage protection or similar devices must not be used together with the charging cable since this may involve a risk of fire, electric shocks, etc.

An adapter between the 230 VAC socket and charging cable may only be used if the adapter is marked with approval in accordance with IEC 61851 and IEC 62196.



NOTE

The charging cable will remember the last setting of the charging current. It is therefore important to adjust the setting if another 230 VAC socket is used at the next charging.

Related information

- Charging cable with control unit - status messages (p. 291)
- Charging cable with control unit - ground fault breaker (p. 292)
- Charging current (p. 286)

¹³ Maximum charging current may vary depending on market.



Charging cable with control unit - status messages

During the charging (p. 286) of the car's hybrid battery the display on the charging

cable's control unit (p. 289) shows the current status during an ongoing charging and after charging is complete.

| Control unit display | Status | Specification | Recommended action |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The indicator for charging current (1) is extinguished. The car symbol (5) illuminates with a constant green glow. | Standby | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The charging cable is connected to the car. Charging is possible but has not yet been activated by the electronics in the car. | Wait until the battery is fully charged. |
| Existing current consumption is shown with a green indicator (1). The car symbol (5) illuminates with a constant green glow. | Charging in progress. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The car's electronics have started charging. Charging in progress. | Wait until the battery is fully charged. |
| The indicator for charging current is extinguished. The car symbol (5) flashes red. | Charging is not possible. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is a communication error between the control unit and the car. The ventilation for the car's electronics is not adequate, not activated or defective. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Check all connections or use another 230 VAC socket. Restart the battery charging. |
| The car symbol (5) illuminates with a constant red glow. | Charging is not possible. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The ground fault breaker on the charging cable has triggered. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Unplug the charging cable from the 230 VAC socket. The ground fault breaker is reset and the unit restarts. |
| The indicator (1) for charging current and the house symbol (3) flash red. | Charging is not possible. | Temperature monitoring has triggered for the 230 VAC socket. | Restart charging. If the problem persists - consult a qualified professional. |

Related information

- Charging current (p. 286)



Charging cable with control unit - temperature monitoring

In order for the car's hybrid battery to be charged (p. 286) safely every time, the control unit (p. 289) has a built-in monitoring device for the charging current.

The control unit's monitoring device ensures that the permissible charging current (p. 286) is automatically adjusted to take into account the safety aspect. This ensures safe operation without supervision as well as optimised charging time.

NOTE

Use a charging cable recommended by Volvo in accordance with IEC 62196 and IEC 61851 that supports temperature monitoring.

Temperature fuse

Temperature monitoring is activated automatically when the car's hybrid battery starts charging. If a critical temperature is reached then the charging current is lowered. If this happens repeatedly and then charging is switched off.

IMPORTANT

If the temperature monitoring has automatically lowered the charging current repeatedly and charging has been interrupted then the cause of the overheating must be investigated and rectified.

Charging cable with control unit - ground fault breaker

The control unit for the charging cable (p. 289) has a built-in ground fault breaker that protects the car and the user from electric shocks caused by system faults.

If the control module's built-in ground fault breaker is tripped then the car symbol illuminates with red constant glow - check the 230 VAC socket.

IMPORTANT

The control unit's earth fault switch does not protect the 230 VAC socket.

Related information

- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 286)



Charging the hybrid battery - starting

How to start charging the hybrid battery (p. 286).

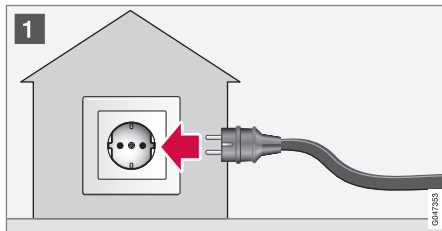
! IMPORTANT

Never connect the charging cable when there is a risk of lightning.

i NOTE

Use a charging cable recommended by Volvo in accordance with IEC 62196 and IEC 61851 that supports temperature monitoring.

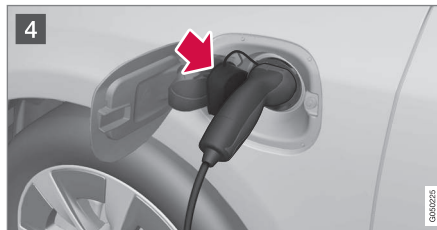
Take out the charging cable (p. 289) from the storage compartment under the cargo area floor.



- 1 Connect the charging cable to a 230 VAC socket. Never use an extension cord.
2. Set the correct charging current (p. 286) (for current 230 VAC socket) on the control unit.



- 3 Remove the charging handle's cover and then connect the handle to the car.



- 4 Location of the charging handle's cover.

! IMPORTANT

To avoid damage to the paint, e.g. in the event of high winds, position the charging handle's protective cover so that it does not touch the car.

5. The charging cable's plug is fastened/locked in and charging starts after approx. 10 seconds.

To check the remaining charging time:

- Press the remote control key's button for Approach lighting - the combined instrument panel then shows the estimated time.

Battery charging can be interrupted for a while if the car is unlocked:

- and the door is opened - charging restarts after 2 minutes.
- without the door being opened - the car is relocked automatically, see Locking/unlocking - from the outside (p. 167). Charging restarts after 1 minute.

i NOTE

Approach lighting must be active in order to show the remaining charging time. Its settings are managed in the menu system MY CAR (p. 105).

! IMPORTANT

Never unplug the charging cable from the 230 VAC socket while charging is in progress - there is then a risk that the 230 VAC socket may be damaged.



08 Starting and driving



6. When charging is complete (see following table) - open the driver's door. Then the combined instrument panel illuminates and can show information about charge status.



The LED lamps show the current status while charging is in progress. The white, blue, red and yellow lamps are activated when the passenger compartment lighting is switched on - they remain switched on for a while after the passenger compartment lighting has been switched off.

| LED lamp glow | Specification |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| White constant | LED light |
| Yellow constant | Waiting mode ^A - waiting for charging to start. |
| Green flashing | Charging in progress ^B . |
| Green constant | Charging complete ^C . |
| Blue - flashing or constant | Timer switched on. |
| Red - flashing, constant | A fault has arisen. |

^A For example, after a door has been opened or the charging cable's plug is not locked in.

^B The slower the flashing, the closer to fully charged.

^C Extinguishes after a while.

Condensation from the air conditioning may drip under the car during charging. This is normal and takes place due to cooling of the hybrid battery.

Related information

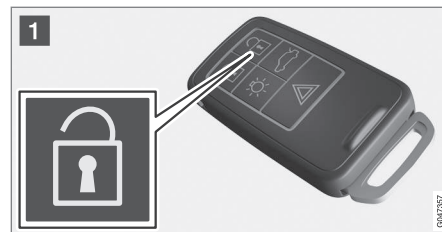
- Charging the hybrid battery - ending (p. 294)

Charging the hybrid battery - ending

How to stop charging the hybrid battery (p. 286).

i NOTE

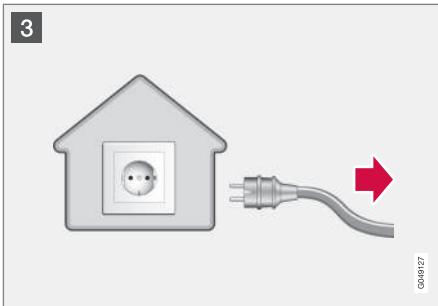
To be able to detach the charging cable glove from the car's 230 VAC intake, the car must first be unlocked using the remote control key/PCC.



- 1 Unlock the car with the remote control key/PCC* - the charging cable's locked plug releases/is unlocked.



- 2 Unplug the cable from the car's electrical input socket, refit the charging input socket's cover and close the hatch, see Charging the hybrid battery - preparations (p. 288).



- 3 Unplug the cable from the 230 VAC socket.

Return the charging cable to the storage space under the cargo area floor.

Charging with the diesel engine



The hybrid battery can also be charged by the car's diesel engine, see Drive systems (p. 257).

Related information

- Charging cable with control unit (p. 289)
- Charging the hybrid battery - starting (p. 293)

Long-term storage - points to remember

To reduce degradation of the hybrid battery during long-term storage of the vehicle it is recommended that the state of charge remains at 25%.

Proceed as follows:

1. Select the "Hybrid" theme for the combined instrument panel. (For information on menu navigation, see Combined instrument panel (p. 62).)
2. If the state of charge is high - run the car until approx. 25% remains. If the state of charge is low - press the **POWER** button and run the car until approx. 25% is achieved. (For more information about drive modes, see Drive system - drive modes (p. 258).)
3. If storage has lasted longer than 6 months and is intended to continue - start the engine in drive mode **POWER** and leave it running for at least 10 minutes until the state of charge has stabilised at around 25% again (recommended).

If the car has been locked in and could not be run, and the hybrid battery's charge level is significantly below 25% - charge the battery for approx. 45 minutes at the lowest level, depending on the state of charge. Check the charge level continuously in the combined



instrument panel, see Charging the hybrid battery - starting (p. 293).

For handling the starter battery in connection with long-term storage, see Battery (p. 346).

NOTE

Choose the coolest location possible for the vehicle in order to minimise aging of the battery during long-term storage. During summer the vehicle should preferably remain indoors or outdoors in the shade, depending on where the temperature is lowest.

IMPORTANT

During long-term storage, the charging cable must not be plugged into the car's charging input socket.

Related information

- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 286)
- Range for electric operation (p. 280)

Driving with a trailer

When driving with a trailer there are a number of important points to think about regarding e.g. the towing bracket, the trailer and how the load is positioned in the trailer.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight. For more detailed information on weights, see Weights (p. 376).

If the towing bracket is mounted by Volvo, then the car is delivered with the necessary equipment for driving with a trailer.

- The car's towing bracket must be of an approved type.
- If the towbar is retrofitted, check with your Volvo dealer that the car is fully equipped for driving with a trailer.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towing bracket complies with the specified maximum towball load.
- Increase the tyre pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load. For tyre pressure label location, see Tyres - air pressure (p. 316).
- The engine is loaded more heavily than usual when driving with a trailer.

- Do not tow a heavy trailer when the car is brand new. Wait until it has been driven at least 1000 km.
- The brakes are loaded much more than usual on long and steep downhill slopes. Downshift to a lower gear and adjust your speed.
- For safety reasons, the maximum permitted speed for the car when coupled with a trailer should not be exceeded. Follow the regulations in force for the permitted speeds and weights.
- Maintain a low speed when driving with a trailer up long, steep ascents.
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

Trailer cable

An adapter is required if the car's towing bracket has 13 pin electrics and the trailer has 7 pin electrics. Use an adapter cable approved by Volvo. Make sure the cable does not drag on the ground.

Direction indicators and brake lights on the trailer

If any of the trailer's lamps for direction indicators are broken, then the combined instrument panel's symbol for direction indicators flashes faster than normal and the information display shows the text **Bulb fail - Ind. signal trailer**.



If any of the trailer's lamps for the brake light are broken then the **Bulb fail - Stop lamp trailer** text is shown.

Trailer weights

For information on Volvo's permitted trailer weights, see Towing capacity and towball load (p. 377).

NOTE

The stated maximum permitted trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations can further limit trailer weights and speeds. Towbars can be certified for higher towing weights than the car can actually tow.

WARNING

Follow the stated recommendations for trailer weights. Otherwise, the car and trailer may be difficult to control in the event of sudden movement and braking.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer - automatic gearbox (p. 297)
- Towing bracket/Towbar (p. 298)
- Lamp replacement (p. 337)

Driving with a trailer - automatic gearbox

When driving with a trailer in hilly terrain in a hot climate there may be a risk of overheating.

- An automatic gearbox selects the optimum gear related to load and engine speed.
- In the event of overheating a warning symbol is illuminated in the combined instrument panel with a message that is shown in the information display - follow the recommendation given.

Steep inclines

- Do not lock the automatic transmission in a higher gear than the engine "can cope with" - it is not always a good idea to drive at a high gear with low engine revolutions.

Parking on a hill

1. Depress the foot brake.
 2. Activate the parking brake.
 3. Move the gear selector to position **P**.
 4. Release the foot brake.
- Move the gear selector to park position **P** when parking an automatic car with a hitched trailer. Always use the parking brake.
 - Block the wheels with chocks when parking a car with hitched trailer on a hill.

Starting on a hill

1. Depress the foot brake.
2. Move the gear selector to driving position **D**.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Release the foot brake and start driving off.

Related information

- Automatic gearbox -- Geartronic (p. 264)



Towing bracket/Towbar

A towing bracket means that it is possible to e.g. tow a trailer behind the car.

If the car is equipped with a detachable/removable towbar, the installation instructions for the loose section must be followed carefully, see Detachable towbar - attachment/removal (p. 299).

WARNING

If the car is fitted with a Volvo detachable towbar:

- Follow the installation instructions carefully.
- The detachable section must be locked with the key before setting off.
- Check that the indicator window shows green.

Important checks

- The towbar's towball must be cleaned and greased regularly.

NOTE

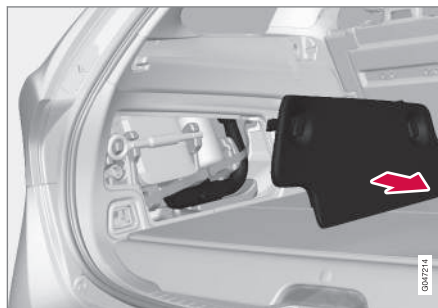
When a hitch with a vibration damper is used, the towball must not be lubricated.

Related information

- Driving with a trailer (p. 296)

Detachable towbar - storage

Store the detachable towbar in the cargo area.



Towbar storage space.

IMPORTANT

Always remove the towbar after use and store it in the appointed location in the car.

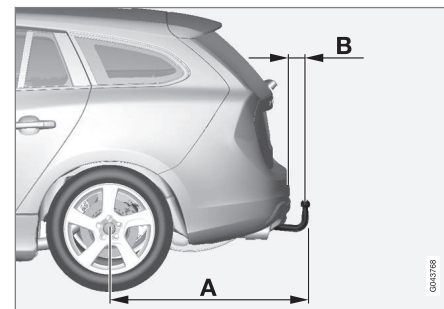
Related information

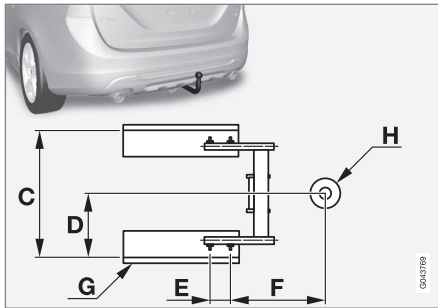
- Detachable towbar - specifications (p. 298)
- Detachable towbar - attachment/removal (p. 299)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 296)

Detachable towbar - specifications

Specifications for detachable towbar.

Specifications





Dimensions, mounting points (mm)

| | |
|---|-------------|
| A | 998 |
| B | 81 |
| C | 854 |
| D | 427 |
| E | 109 |
| F | 282 |
| G | Side member |
| H | Ball centre |

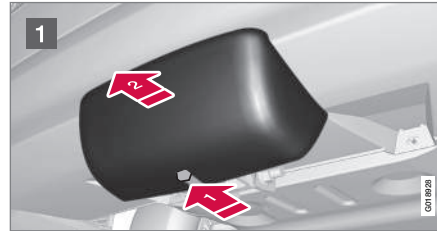
Related information

- Detachable towbar - attachment/removal (p. 299)
- Detachable towbar - storage (p. 298)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 296)

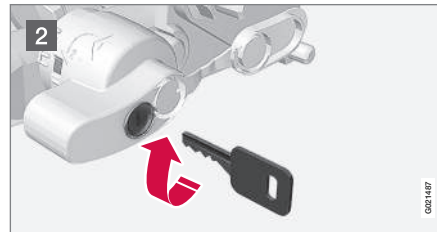
Detachable towbar - attachment/ removal

The attachment/removal of the detachable towbar is performed in the following way:

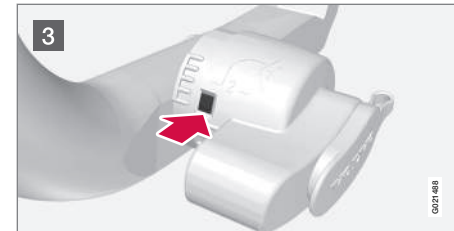
Attaching



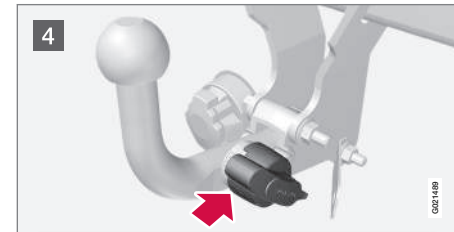
- 1 Remove the protective cover by first pressing in the catch and then pulling the cover straight back .



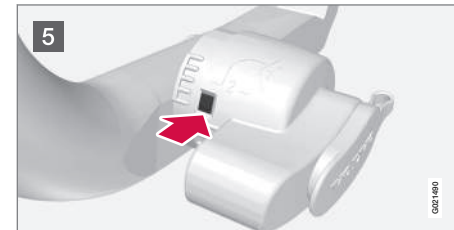
- 2 Ensure that the mechanism is in the unlocked position by turning the key clockwise.



- 3 The indicator window must show red.



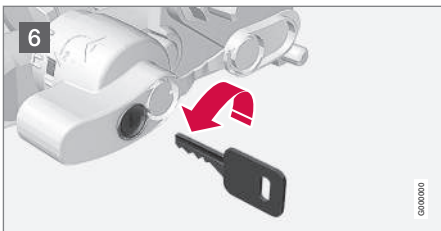
- 4 Insert the towbar until you hear a click.



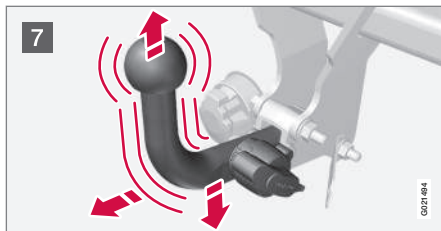
- 5 The indicator window must show green.



08 Starting and driving



6 Turn the key anticlockwise to locked position. Remove the key from the lock.



7 Check that the towbar is secure by pulling it up, down and back.



WARNING

If the towbar is not fitted correctly then it must be detached and reattached in accordance with the previous instructions.



IMPORTANT

Only grease in the ball for the towing hitch, the remainder of the towbar should be clean and dry.



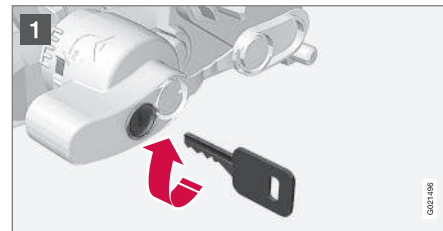
8 Safety cable.



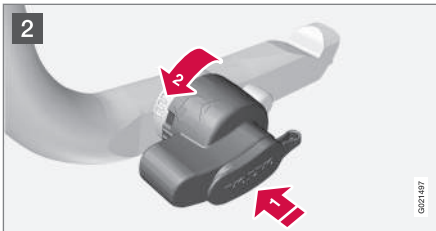
WARNING

Take care to secure the trailer's safety cable in the intended bracket.

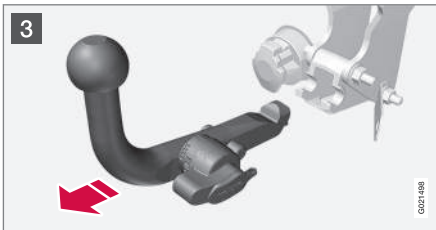
Removing the towbar



1 Insert the key and turn it clockwise to the unlocked position.



- 2 Push in the locking wheel **1** and turn it anticlockwise **2** until you hear a click.



- 3 Turn the locking wheel down fully, until it comes to a stop. Hold it in this position while pulling the towbar rearward and upward.

WARNING

Secure the towbar safely if it is stored in the car, see Detachable towbar - storage (p. 298).



- 4 Push the protective cover until it snaps tight.

Related information

- Detachable towbar - storage (p. 298)
- Detachable towbar - specifications (p. 298)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 296)

Trailer stabiliser - TSA¹⁴

The trailer stability assist (TSA - Trailer Stability Assist) function is designed to stabilise the car and trailer combination if it begins to snake.

The trailer stability assist is included in the stability and traction control system (p. 178) (DSTC - Dynamic Stability and Traction Control).

Function

The snaking phenomenon can occur with any car/trailer combination. Snaking normally occurs at high speeds. But, there is a risk of it occurring at lower speeds (70-90 km/h) if the trailer is overloaded or the load is improperly distributed, e.g. too far back.

In order for snaking to occur, there must be a triggering factor, e.g.:

- Car with trailer subjected to a sudden and powerful side wind.
- Car with trailer drives on an uneven road surface or in a pothole.
- Sweeping steering wheel movements.

Operation

If snaking has started, it could be difficult or even impossible to suppress. This makes the car/trailer combination difficult to control and there is a risk that you could, for example,

¹⁴ Included in the installation of Volvo genuine towbar.



08 Starting and driving



end up in the wrong lane or leave the carriageway.

The trailer stability assist continually monitors the car's movements, particularly lateral movements. If snaking is detected, the front wheels are individually braked. This serves to stabilise the car/trailer combination. This is often enough to help the driver regain control of the car.

If snaking is not eliminated the first time the trailer stability assist comes into action, the car/trailer combination is braked with all wheels and engine power is reduced. Once snaking has been gradually suppressed and the car/trailer combination is stable once again, the system stops regulating and the driver once again has full control of the car. For more information, see Stability and traction control system (DSTC) - operation (p. 179)

Miscellaneous

The trailer stability assist can engage within the speed interval 60-160 km/h.



NOTE

TSA function is switched off if the driver selects **Sport** mode, see Stability and traction control system (DSTC) (p. 178).

The trailer stability assist may fail to engage if the driver uses sudden steering wheel movements to try to rectify the snaking because in

such a situation the system cannot determine whether it is the trailer or the driver that is causing the snaking.



When the trailer stability assist is working, the combined instrument panel's **DSTC** symbol flashes.

Related information

- Stability and traction control system (DSTC) - symbols and messages (p. 180)

Towing

During towing, one vehicle is towed by another vehicle using a tow rope.

Towing the V60 Plug-in Hybrid is not permitted. When moving the car it must be transported raised up with all the wheels on the recovery vehicle's platform.



IMPORTANT

Note that the car must always be towed with the wheels rolling forward.

Jump starting

Do not tow the car to bump start the engine. Use a donor battery if the battery is discharged and the engine does not start, see Jump starting with battery (p. 256).



IMPORTANT

The electric drive motor and the catalytic converter may be damaged during attempts to tow-start the car.

Related information

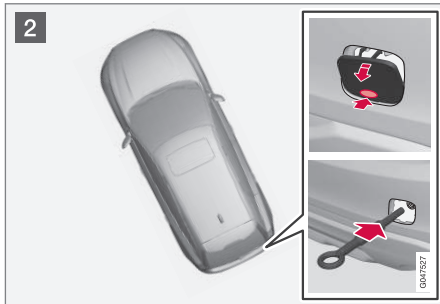
- Towing eye (p. 303)



Towing eye

The towing eye is screwed into a threaded socket behind a cover on the rear right-hand side of the bumper.

Attaching the towing eye



- 1 Take out the towing eye, which is located behind the panel on the left-hand side of the cargo area.
- 2 The cover for the towing eye's attachment point is available in two variants which must be opened in different ways:
 - Open the variant with a recess using a coin or similar inserted in the recess, turning it outwards. Then turn out the cover completely and remove it.
 - The second variant has a marking along one side or in a corner: Press the marking with a finger and fold out the opposite side/corner at the same time using a coin or similar - the cover turns around its axis and can then be removed.

Screw the towing eye right in up to its flange. Turn in the towing eye firmly e.g. using the wheel wrench.

After use, unscrew the towing eye and return it to its place.

Finish by refitting the cover onto the bumper.

The towing eye may be used to pull the car up onto a recovery vehicle with a flatbed platform. The car's position and ground clearance determine whether it is possible. If the slope of the recovery vehicle's ramp is too steep, or if the ground clearance under the car is inadequate, then the car may be dam-

aged if you try to pull it up using the towing eye. Raise the car using the recovery vehicle's lifting device if necessary.

WARNING

No one/nothing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

Related information

- Towing (p. 302)
- Recovery (p. 304)



Recovery

Recovery means that the vehicle is transported away by means of another vehicle.

Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

The towing eye may be used to pull the car up onto a recovery vehicle with a flatbed platform. The car's position and ground clearance determine whether it is possible. If the slope of the recovery vehicle's ramp is too steep, or if the ground clearance under the car is inadequate, then the car may be damaged if you try to pull it up using the towing eye. Raise the car using the recovery vehicle's lifting device if necessary.

WARNING

No one/nothing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

IMPORTANT

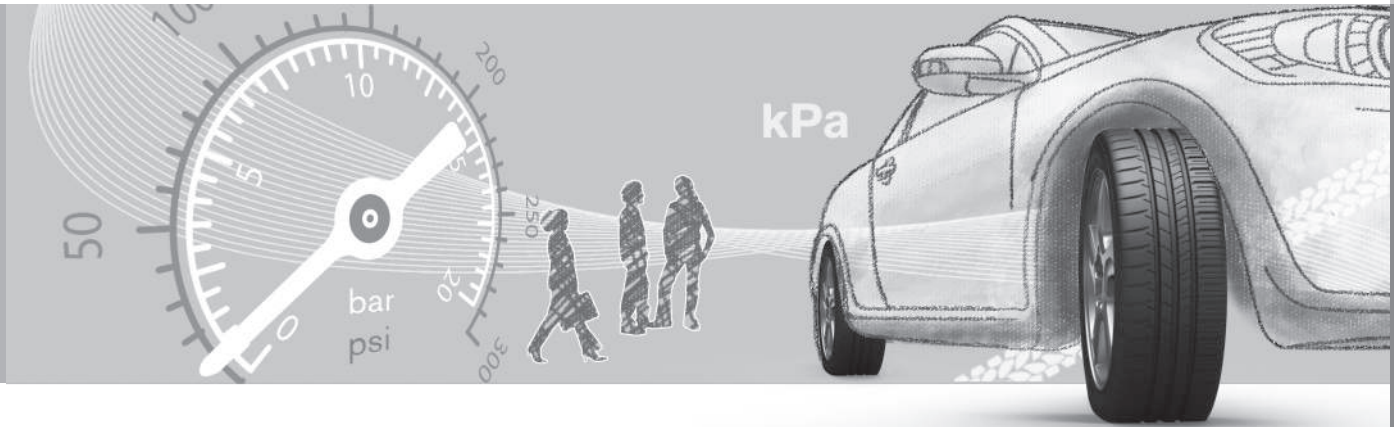
Note that the V60 Plug-in Hybrid must always be transported raised up with all the wheels on the recovery vehicle's platform.

Related information

- Towing (p. 302)

09

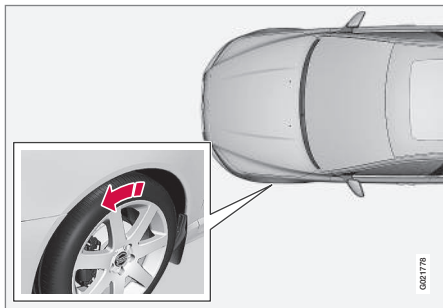
WHEELS AND TYRES





Tyres - direction of rotation

Tyres with a tread pattern which are designed to only turn in one direction have the direction of rotation marked with an arrow.



The arrow shows the tyre's direction of rotation.

The tyre must always rotate in the same direction throughout its lifespan. Tyres should only be switched between front and rear positions, never between left and right-hand sides, or vice versa. If the tyres are fitted incorrectly, the car's braking characteristics and capacity to force rain and slush out of the way are adversely affected. Tyres with the greatest tread depth should always be fitted to the rear of the car (to decrease the risk of skidding).

NOTE

Make sure that both pairs of wheels have the same type and dimension, and also the same make.

Follow the recommended tyre pressures specified in the tyre pressure table (p. 387).

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 311)
- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 312)
- Tyres - load index (p. 311)
- Tyres - maintenance (p. 306)
- Tyres - tread wear indicators (p. 308)

Tyres - maintenance

Amongst other things, the function of the tyres is to provide grip on the road surface, dampen vibration and protect the wheel from wear.

Driving characteristics

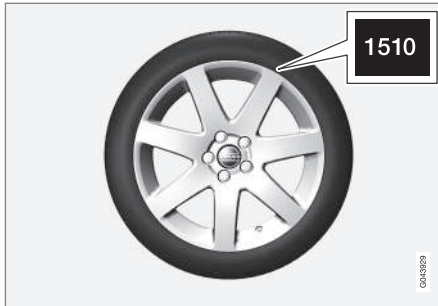
Tyres greatly affect the car's driving characteristics. The type of tyre, dimensions, tyre pressure and speed rating are important for how the car performs.

Tyre age

All tyres older than 6 years old should be checked by an expert even if they seem undamaged. Tyres age and decompose, even if they are hardly ever or never used. The function can therefore be affected. This applies to all tyres that are stored for future use. Examples of external signs which indicate that the tyre is unsuitable for use are cracks or discoloration.



New tyres



Tyres are perishable. After a few years they begin to harden at the same time as the friction capacity/characteristics gradually deteriorate. For this reason, aim to get as fresh tyres as possible when you replace them. This is especially important with regard to winter tyres. The last four digits in the sequence mean the week and year of manufacture. This is the tyre's DOT marking (Department of Transportation), and this is stated with four digits, for example 1510. The tyre in the figure was manufactured in week 15 of 2010.

Summer and winter tyres

When summer and winter wheels are changed the wheels should be marked with which side of the car they were mounted on, for example **L** for left and **R** for right.

Wear and maintenance

Correct tyre pressure (p. 316) results in more even wear. Driving style, tyre pressure, climate and road condition affect how quickly your tyres age and wear. To avoid differences in tread depth and to prevent wear patterns arising, the front and rear wheels can be switched with each other. A suitable distance for the first change is approx. 5000 km and then at 10000 km intervals. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop for checking if you are uncertain about tread depth. If significant differences in wear (> 1 mm difference in tread depth) between tyres have already occurred, the least worn tyres must always be placed on the rear. Understeer is normally easier to correct than oversteer, and leads to the car continuing forwards in a straight line rather than having the rear end skidding to one side, resulting in possible complete loss of control over the car. This is why it is important for the rear wheels never to lose grip before the front wheels.

Wheels should be stored lying down or hanging up - and not standing up.



WARNING

A damaged tyre may lead to loss of control over the car.

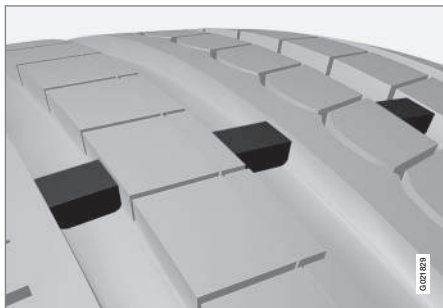
Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 311)
- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 312)
- Tyres - load index (p. 311)
- Tyres - direction of rotation (p. 306)
- Tyres - tread wear indicators (p. 308)



Tyres - tread wear indicators

A tread wear indicator shows the status of the tyre's tread.



Tread wear indicators.

Tread wear indicators are narrow treadless bands across the width of the tread. On the side of the tyre are the letters TWI (Tread Wear Indicator). When the tyre's tread depth is down to 1.6 mm, the tread depth will be level in height with the tread wear indicators. Change to new tyres as soon as possible. Remember that tyres with little tread depth provide very poor grip in rain and snow.

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 311)
- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 312)
- Tyres - load index (p. 311)
- Tyres - direction of rotation (p. 306)
- Tyres - maintenance (p. 306)

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts are used to fasten the wheels at the hubs and are available in different versions.

! IMPORTANT

The wheel bolts must be tightened to 140 Nm. Overtightening can damage the nuts and the bolts.

Only use rims that are tested and approved by Volvo and which are Volvo genuine accessories. Check the torque with a torque wrench.

Locking wheel bolts*

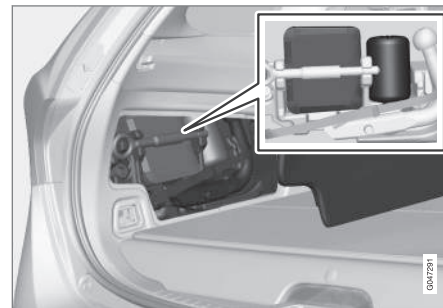
Locking wheel bolts* can be used on both aluminium and steel rims.

Related information

- Wheel and wheel rim dimensions (p. 310)

Tools

Amongst other things, the car contains towing eye, jack* and wheel bolt wrench*.



The car's towing eye and emergency puncture repair kit are located behind the hatch on the left-hand side of the cargo area. There is also space for the sleeve for the lockable wheel bolts. Jack* and wheel bolt wrench* are located in a bag on the cargo area floor.

If the car is not equipped with the accessory spare wheel then the jack need not be stored in the car.

! WARNING

When the towing eye and emergency puncture repair kit are stored in the foam block, they must always be strapped in with the tensioning strap.

Related information

- Emergency puncture repair (p. 318)
- Towing eye (p. 303)
- Changing wheels - removing wheels (p. 312)
- Wheel bolts (p. 308)
- Jack* (p. 309)

Jack*

A jack is used to raise the car, e.g. when changing the tyres.

The original jack should only be used for changing to the spare wheel. The jack's thread must always be well greased.

Tools - returning into place

The white arrow must point toward the front of the car.

After use, crank the jack together and screw apart the towing eye and wheel bolt wrench. Place the wheel bolt wrench and the jack in their respective compartments in the bag. Tighten the bag's centre strap firmly and use the other strap to secure the bag in the rear load retaining eyelet on the left-hand side of the cargo area. Position the bag so it is not pinched when the tailgate is closed. The white arrow on the bag must point toward the

front of the car. Refit the towing eye in the foam block on the left-hand side of the cargo area.

WARNING

The bag should be secured so that the white arrow (see the inset figure) points forward in the car.

NOTE

If the floor hatch in the cargo area floor is not closed then privacy locking does not work.

Related information

- Warning triangle (p. 317)
- Emergency puncture repair (p. 318)



Winter tyres

Winter tyres are tyres that are adapted for winter road conditions.

Winter tyres

Volvo recommends winter tyres with particular dimensions. Tyre dimensions are dependent on engine variant. When driving on winter tyres, the correct type of tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

NOTE

Volvo recommends that you consult a Volvo dealer about which wheel rim and tyre types are most suitable.

Studded tyres

Studded winter tyres should be run in gently for 500-1000 km so the studs settle properly into the tyres. This gives the tyre, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

NOTE

The legal provisions for the use of studded tyres vary from country to country.

Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tyres than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not to drive on winter tyres that have a tread depth of less than 4 mm.

Using snow chains

Snow chains may only be used on the front wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive cars). Never drive faster than 50 km/h with snow chains. Avoid driving on bare ground as this wears out both the snow chains and tyres.

WARNING

Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent chains designed for the car model, and tyre and rim dimensions. In the event of uncertainty Volvo recommends that you consult an authorised Volvo workshop. The wrong snow chains may cause serious damage to your car and lead to an accident.

Related information

- Changing wheels - removing wheels (p. 312)

Wheel and wheel rim dimensions

Wheel and rim dimensions are designated in accordance with the examples in the table below.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle. This means that certain combinations of wheel (wheel rim) and tyre are approved.

Wheels (rims) have a designation of dimensions, for example: 7Jx16x50.

| | |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Rim width in inches |
| J | Rim flange profile |
| 16 | Rim diameter in inches |
| 50 | Off-set in mm (distance from wheel centre to wheel contact surface against the hub) |

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 311)
- Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 387)



Tyres - dimensions

The car's wheels (wheel rims) and tyres have a certain dimension, see the examples in the table below.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle. This means that certain combinations of wheels (wheel rims) and tyres are approved.

The dimensions are stated on all car tyres.

Example of designation:235/45R17 97W.

| | |
|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 235 | Tyre width (mm) |
| 45 | Ratio between tyre wall height and tyre width (%) |
| R | Radial ply |
| 17 | Rim diameter in inches (") |
| 97 | Codes for the maximum permitted tyre load, tyre load index (LI) |
| W | Speed rating for maximum permitted speed, speed rating (SS). (In this case 270 km/h.) |

Related information

- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 312)
- Tyres - load index (p. 311)
- Tyres - direction of rotation (p. 306)
- Tyres - maintenance (p. 306)
- Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 387)

- Wheel and wheel rim dimensions (p. 310)

Tyres - load index

Load index indicates a tyre's ability to carry a certain load.

Each tyre has a certain capacity to carry a load, a load index (LI). The car's weight determines the load capacity required of the tyres. Minimum permissible index is indicated in the load index table.

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 311)
- Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 387)
- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 312)
- Tyres - maintenance (p. 306)



Tyres - speed ratings

Each tyre can withstand a certain maximum speed and therefore belongs to a particular speed rating (SS - Speed Symbol).

Tyre speed class must at least correspond with the car's top speed. Minimum speed rating is indicated in the speed rating table below. The only exception to these regulations is the winter tyre (p. 310)¹, where a lower speed rating may be used. If such a tyre is chosen, the car must not be driven faster than the speed rating of the tyre (for example, class Q can be driven at a maximum of 160 km/h). Traffic regulations determine how fast a car can be driven, not the speed rating of the tyres.

NOTE

The maximum permitted speed is specified in the table.

| | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| Q | 160 km/h (used only on winter tyres) |
| T | 190 km/h |
| H | 210 km/h |
| V | 240 km/h |

| | |
|---|----------|
| W | 270 km/h |
| Y | 300 km/h |

WARNING

The car must be fitted with tyres which have the same or a higher load index (p. 311) (LI) and speed rating (SS) than specified. If a tyre with too low a load index or speed rating is used, it may overheat.

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 311)
- Tyres - load index (p. 311)
- Tyres - direction of rotation (p. 306)

Changing wheels - removing wheels

The car's wheels can be changed for e.g. winter wheels/winter tyres.

Spare wheel*

The following instructions only apply if a spare wheel has been purchased as an accessory for the car. If the car is not equipped with a spare wheel - see information about Emergency puncture repair (TMK) (p. 318).

The spare wheel (Temporary spare) is only intended for use temporarily and must be replaced by an ordinary wheel as soon as possible. The car's handling may be altered by the use of the spare wheel. The spare wheel is smaller than the normal wheel. The car's ground clearance is affected accordingly. Pay attention to high kerbs and do not machine wash the car. If the spare wheel is fitted on the front axle, you cannot use snow chains at the same time. On all-wheel drive cars the drive on the rear axle can be disconnected. The spare wheel must not be repaired.

The correct tyre pressure for the spare wheel is stated in the tyre pressure table (p. 387).

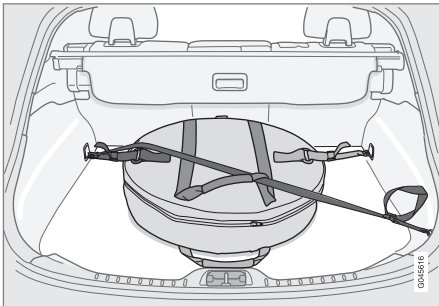
¹ Both metal-studded and studless tyres.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

! **IMPORTANT**

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h with a spare wheel on the car.
- The car must never be driven fitted with more than one "Temporary Spare" wheel.

The spare wheel is supplied in a bag which must be secured on the cargo area floor using straps.

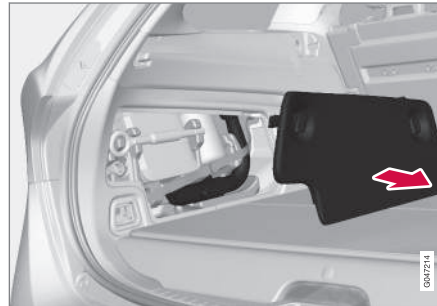


Cars with four load retaining eyelets.

Turn the handle on the spare wheel bag out towards you. Attach the sewn-in tensioning strap hooks in the front load retaining eyelets. Attach the long strap into one of the front load retaining eyelets, run the strap diagonally over the spare wheel and through the upper handle. Tighten the short tensioning strap onto the long one. Attach the rear load retaining eyelet and tighten.

Before changing a wheel

1. Loosen the straps, lift out the spare wheel from the cargo area and remove it from the spare wheel bag.
2. To access the towing eye, open the hatch on the left-hand side of the cargo area.



3. Take out the jack* and the wheel bolt wrench* (which is located in a bag on the cargo area floor). If another jack is selected, see Raising the car (p. 328).

! **WARNING**

Check that the jack is not damaged, that the threads are thoroughly lubricated and that it is free from dirt.

i **NOTE**

- If the car is not equipped with the accessory spare wheel then the jack need not be stored in the car.
- Volvo recommends only using the jack* that belongs to the car model in question, which is indicated on the jack's label.
- The decal also indicates the jack's maximum lift capacity at a specified lift-height.



09 Wheels and tyres

09



NOTE

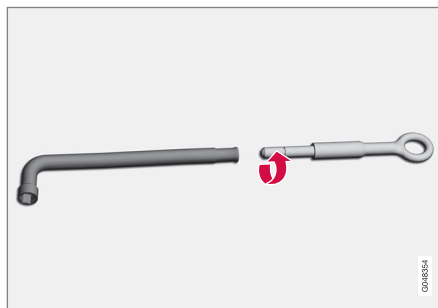
The car's regular jack is designed only for use occasionally and for a short time, such as when changing a wheel with a punctured tyre, switching between summer tyres and winter tyres, etc. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

4. Set up the warning triangle (p. 317) if a wheel is replaced in a trafficked location. The car and jack* must be on a firm horizontal surface.

Removing

1. Apply the parking brake (p. 272) and engage reverse gear, or position **P** if the car has an automatic gearbox.
2. Place chocks in front of and behind the wheels which will remain on the ground to prevent them from rolling. Use heavy wooden blocks or large stones for example.

3. Screw together the towing eye with the wheel wrench* until the stop position in accordance with the following figure.



IMPORTANT

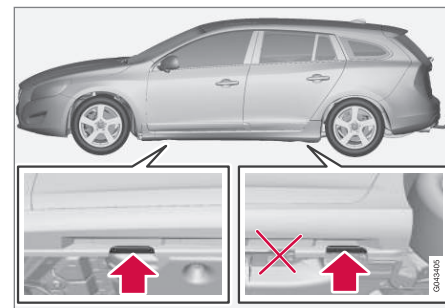
The towing eye must be screwed into all threads in the wheel bolt wrench.

4. Loosen the wheel bolts $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 turn anti-clockwise with the wheel wrench.

WARNING

Never position anything between the ground and the jack, nor between the jack and the car's jacking point.

5. There are two jacking points on each side of the car. There is a recess in the plastic cover at each point. Crank the foot of the jack down so it is pressed squarely on the ground.



IMPORTANT

The ground must be firm, smooth and level.

6. Lift the car so that the wheel is free. Remove the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.



Related information

- Changing wheels - fitting (p. 315)
- Jack* (p. 309)
- Warning triangle (p. 317)
- Wheel bolts (p. 308)

Changing wheels - fitting

It is important that the procedure for fitting the wheel is carried out correctly.

Fitting

1. Clean the contact surfaces between wheel and hub.
2. Put on the wheel. Tighten the wheel bolts thoroughly.
3. Lower the car so that the wheels cannot rotate.



4. Tighten the wheel bolts crosswise. It is important that the wheel bolts are tightened properly. Tighten to 140 Nm. Check the torque with a torque wrench.



The white arrow must point toward the front of the car.

5. Screw apart the towing eye and wheel bolt wrench. Place the wheel bolt wrench and the jack in their respective compartments in the bag. Tighten the bag's centre strap firmly and use the other strap to secure the bag in the rear load retaining eyelet on the left-hand side of the cargo area. Position the bag so it is not pinched when the tailgate is closed. The white arrow on the bag must point toward the front of the car.



NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

WARNING

The bag should be secured so that the white arrow (see the inset figure) points forward in the car.

WARNING

Never crawl under the car when it is raised on the jack.

Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack.

Park the car such that passengers have the car, or ideally a crash barrier, between themselves and the roadway.

Related information

- Changing wheels - removing wheels (p. 312)
- Jack* (p. 309)
- Warning triangle (p. 317)
- Wheel bolts (p. 308)

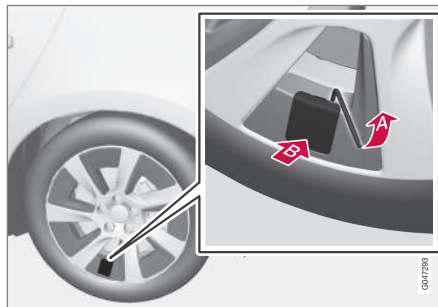
² Only 17" wheel Thia

Tyres - air pressure

Tyres can have different air pressures which are measured in bar.


Check the air pressure in the tyres

The tyre pressures must be checked every month.




The tyre valve is covered by a plastic cover which is equipped with a hole².

Remove the valve cover

1. Take the torx wrench (which is fitted in the foam block behind the panel on the left-hand side of the cargo area).
2. Press the torx wrench into the hole.
3. Prize off the cover using the torx wrench .
4. Remove the valve cap.

Refit the valve cover

1. Fit the valve cap.
2. Press one edge of the cover (without the hole) into place (nearest the tyre .
3. Then fold the cover in toward the wheel rim - and at the same time, gently press down the angled top edge in order to help it in under the edge of the wheel rim.
4. Check that the cover is flush with the surface of the wheel rim - if not, gently press in the part that is bulging out.



NOTE

- Check the tyre pressure when the tyres are cold. "Cold tyres" means that the tyres are at the same temperature as the outdoor temperature. The tyres will heat up and the tyre pressures will increase after driving for a few kilometres.
- Tyre pressures which are too low will increase fuel consumption, reduce tyre service life and impair the car's handling. Driving with tyre pressures which are too low may lead to the tyres overheating and sustaining damage. Tyre pressures affect ride comfort, road noise and steering.
- Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. Tyre pressure also varies depending on ambient temperature.

Tyre pressure label



The tyre pressure label on the driver side's door pillar (between frame and rear door) shows the tyre pressures for the car's recommended tyre dimensions. This is also specified in the tyre pressure table, see Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 387).

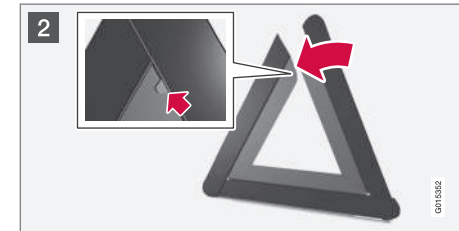
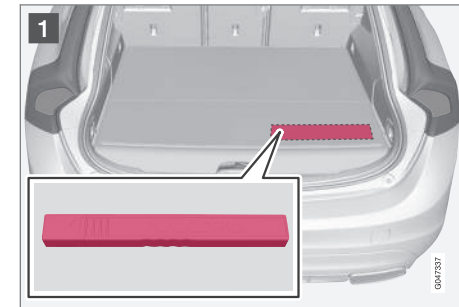
Related information

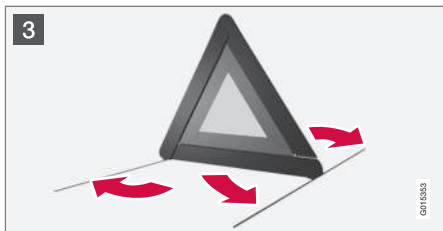
- Tyres - dimensions (p. 311)
- Tyres - speed ratings (p. 312)
- Tyres - load index (p. 311)
- Tyres - maintenance (p. 306)
- Tyres - tread wear indicators (p. 308)

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is used to warn other road users of a stationary vehicle.

Storage and folding up





- 1 Lift the floor hatch and take out the warning triangle.
- 2 Take the warning triangle from the case, fold out and assemble the two loose sides.
- 3 Fold out the warning triangle's support legs.

Follow the regulations for the use of a warning triangle. Position the warning triangle in a suitable place with regard to traffic.

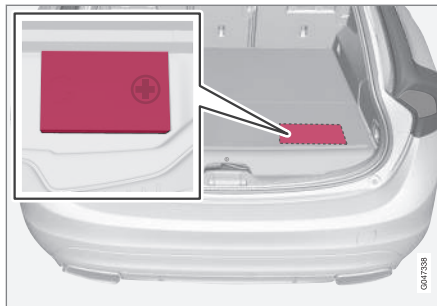
Ensure the warning triangle and its case are properly secured in the cargo area after use.

i NOTE

If the car has been locked with privacy locking then the boot lid/tailgate and floor hatch cannot be opened, see Privacy locking* (p. 159).

First aid kit*

The first aid box contains first aid equipment.



A case with first aid equipment is located under the floor in the cargo area.

i NOTE

If the car has been locked with privacy locking then the boot lid/tailgate and floor hatch cannot be opened, see Privacy locking* (p. 159).

Emergency puncture repair

Emergency puncture repair, where the emergency puncture repair kit (TMK - Temporary Mobility Kit) is used to seal a puncture and check and adjust the tyre pressure (p. 387).

The emergency puncture repair kit (p. 320) consists of a compressor and a bottle of sealant. The sealing works as a temporary repair. The sealing fluid bottle must be replaced before its expiration date and after use. The sealing fluid effectively seals tyres punctured in the tread.

i NOTE

The emergency puncture repair kit is only intended for sealing tyres with a puncture in the tread.

The emergency puncture repair kit has limited capacity to seal tyres which have punctures in the wall. Do not seal tyres with the emergency puncture repair kit if they have larger slits, cracks or similar damage. Connect the compressor to one of the car's 12 V sockets. Choose the socket that is nearest to the punctured tyre.

! IMPORTANT

If the compressor for emergency puncture repair is connected to one of the two sockets (p. 144) in the tunnel console then no other current consumer may be connected to the other one.

i NOTE

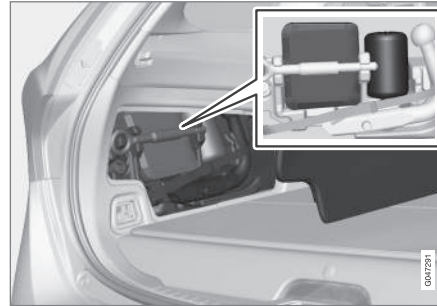
The compressor for temporary emergency puncture repair has been tested and approved by Volvo.

Related information

- Emergency puncture repair - operation (p. 320)
- Emergency puncture repair - rechecking (p. 323)
- Emergency puncture repair kit - overview (p. 320)
- Tools (p. 308)

Emergency puncture repair kit - location

Emergency puncture repair kit (TMK - Temporary Mobility Kit) is used to seal a puncture and check and adjust the tyre pressure (p. 387).

Location of the emergency puncture repair kit


The emergency puncture repair kit is located behind the hatch on the left-hand side of the cargo area.

Set up the warning triangle (p. 317) if a tyre is being sealed in a trafficked location.

i NOTE

The emergency puncture repair kit is only intended for sealing tyres with a puncture in the tread.

! IMPORTANT

If the compressor for emergency puncture repair is connected to one of the two sockets (p. 144) in the tunnel console then no other current consumer may be connected to the other one.

i NOTE

The compressor for temporary emergency puncture repair has been tested and approved by Volvo.

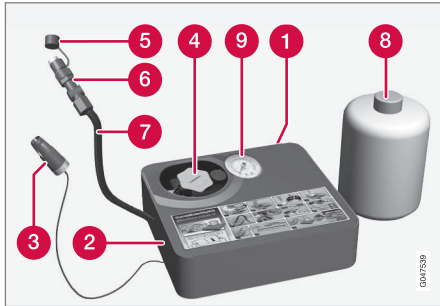
Related information

- Emergency puncture repair kit - overview (p. 320)
- Emergency puncture repair kit - sealant (p. 325)
- Emergency puncture repair (p. 318)



Emergency puncture repair kit - overview

Emergency puncture repair, where the emergency puncture repair kit (TMK - Temporary Mobility Kit) is used to seal a puncture and check and adjust the tyre pressure (p. 387).



- 1 Label, maximum permitted speed
- 2 Switch
- 3 Cable
- 4 Bottle holder (orange cap)
- 5 Protective cap
- 6 Pressure reducing valve
- 7 Air hose
- 8 Sealing fluid bottle
- 9 Pressure gauge

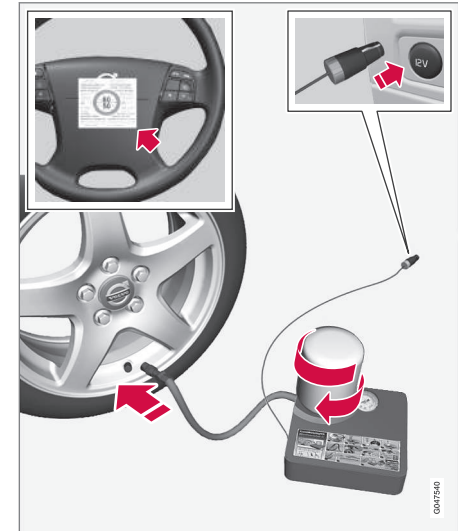
Related information

- Emergency puncture repair kit - location (p. 319)
- Emergency puncture repair kit - sealant (p. 325)
- Emergency puncture repair (p. 318)

Emergency puncture repair - operation

Emergency puncture repair, where the emergency puncture repair kit (TMK - Temporary Mobility Kit) is used to seal a puncture and check and adjust the tyre pressure (p. 387).

Emergency puncture repair



For information on the function of the parts, see Emergency puncture repair kit - overview (p. 320).

1. Detach the label for maximum permitted speed (which is fitted on one side of the compressor) and affix it to the steering wheel.

WARNING

You should not drive faster than 80 km/h after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used. Volvo recommends that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop for inspection of the sealed tyre (maximum driving distance is 200 km). The staff there can determine whether or not the tyre can be repaired or if it needs to be replaced.

WARNING

The sealing fluid can irritate the skin. In the case of contact with skin, wash away the fluid with soap and water.

2. Check that the switch is in position **0** and locate the cable and the air hose.

NOTE

Do not break the bottle's seal before use. The seal is broken automatically when the bottle is screwed in.

3. Unscrew the orange cap and unscrew the bottle's stopper.

4. Screw the bottle into its holder.

WARNING

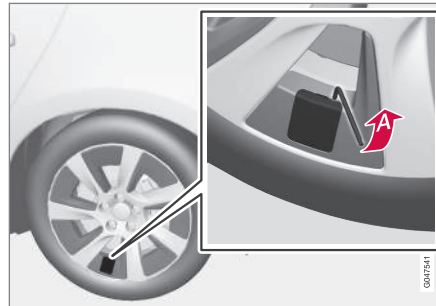
Do not unscrew the bottle, it is equipped with a reverse catch to prevent leakage.

5. **Remove the valve cover³**

Take the torx wrench (which is fitted in the foam block behind the panel on the left-hand side of the cargo area).

Press the torx wrench into the hole.

Prize off the cover using the torx wrench (A).



Unscrew the valve cap and disconnect the hose from the compressor to the valve.

6. Connect the hose from the compressor to the valve.
7. Plug the cable into the 12 V socket and start the car.

NOTE

If the compressor is connected to one of the two 12 V sockets, in the tunnel console, no other current consumer must be connected to the other one.

WARNING

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

³ Only 17" wheel Thia



09 Wheels and tyres

09



8. Flick the switch to position I.

WARNING

Never stand next to the tyre when the compressor is running. If cracks or unevenness arise then the compressor must be switched off immediately. The journey should not be continued. Contacting an authorised tyre centre is recommended.

NOTE

When the compressor starts, the pressure can increase up to 6 bar but the pressure drops after approximately 30 seconds.

9. Inflate the tyre for 7 minutes.

IMPORTANT

Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

10. Switch off the compressor to check the pressure on the pressure gauge. Minimum pressure is 1.8 bar and maximum 3.5 bar. (Release air with the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.)

WARNING

If the pressure is below 1.8 bar then the hole in the tyre is too big. The journey should not be continued. Contacting an authorised tyre centre is recommended.

11. Switch off the compressor and unplug the cable from the 12 V socket.

12. Detach the hose from the tyre valve and fit the valve cap.

Press the cover³ back over the tyre valve with the hole against the wheel's hub. Two clicks confirm that the cover is fitted in place.

13. As soon as possible, drive approximately 3 km at a maximum speed of 80 km/h so that the sealing fluid can seal the tyre.

Related information

- Emergency puncture repair (p. 318)
- Emergency puncture repair - rechecking (p. 323)

- Emergency puncture repair kit - overview (p. 320)

³ Only 17" wheel Thia



Emergency puncture repair - rechecking

Emergency puncture repair, where the emergency puncture repair kit (TMK - Temporary Mobility Kit) is used to seal a puncture and check and adjust the tyre pressure (p. 387).

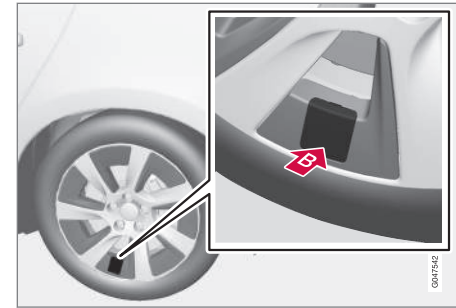
Check tyre pressure

1. Reconnect the equipment (for instructions on removing the valve cover, see (p. 321)).
2. Read the tyre pressure on the pressure gauge.
 - If it is below 1.3 bar⁴ then the tyre is insufficiently sealed. The journey should not be continued. Contact a tyre centre.
 - If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar⁴, the tyre must be inflated to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure table, see Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 387). Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

WARNING

Do not unscrew the bottle, it is equipped with a reverse catch to prevent leakage.

3. Make sure the compressor is switched off. Detach the air hose and cable.



4. Refit the valve cover⁵

Fit the valve cap.

Press one edge of the cover (without the hole) into place (nearest the tyre - B). Then fold the cover in toward the wheel rim - and at the same time, gently press down the angled top edge in order to help it in under the edge of the wheel rim. Check that the cover is flush with the surface of the wheel rim - if not, gently press in the part that is bulging out.

⁴ 1 bar = 100 kPa.

⁵ Only 17" wheel Thia



09 Wheels and tyres

09



NOTE

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

NOTE

The sealing fluid bottle and the hose must be replaced after use. Volvo recommends that this replacement is performed by an authorised Volvo workshop.

WARNING

Check the tyre pressure regularly.

Volvo recommends that you drive to the nearest authorised Volvo workshop for the replacement/repair of the damaged tyre. Advise the workshop that the tyre contains sealing fluid.

WARNING

You should not drive faster than 80 km/h after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used. Volvo recommends that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop for inspection of the sealed tyre (maximum driving distance is 200 km). The staff there can determine whether or not the tyre can be repaired or if it needs to be replaced.

Related information

- Emergency puncture repair (p. 318)
- Emergency puncture repair - operation (p. 320)
- Emergency puncture repair kit - overview (p. 320)

Emergency puncture repair kit - inflating the tyres

The car's original tyres can be inflated using the compressor in the emergency puncture repair kit (p. 320).

1. The compressor must be switched off. Make sure that the switch is in position **0** and locate the cable and air hose.
2. Remove the valve cover⁶ - for instructions on removing the valve cover, see (p. 321).
3. Unscrew the wheel's dust cap and screw in the air hose valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.

WARNING

Inhaling car exhaust fumes could result in danger to life. Never leave the engine running in sealed areas or areas that lack sufficient ventilation.

WARNING

Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the engine is running.

4. Connect the cable to one of the car's 12 V sockets and start the car.

⁶ Only 17" wheel Thia



- Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position I.

IMPORTANT

Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

- Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure table, Tyres - approved tyre pressures (p. 387). Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.
- Refit the dust cap.
Refit the valve cover⁶ by pressing one edge of the cover (the one without the hole) into place (nearest the tyre), see Emergency puncture repair - rechecking (p. 323). Then fold the cover in toward the wheel rim - and at the same time, gently press down the angled top edge in order to help it in under the edge of the wheel rim. Check that the cover is flush with the surface of the wheel rim - if not, gently press in the part that is bulging out.
- Switch off the compressor. Detach the air hose and cable.

Related information

- Emergency puncture repair (p. 318)
- Emergency puncture repair kit - overview (p. 320)
- Emergency puncture repair - rechecking (p. 323)

Emergency puncture repair kit - sealant

The container (bottle) with the emergency puncture repair kit (p. 320) contains sealant and it can be replaced.

Replace the bottle when the expiration date has passed. Treat the old bottle as environmentally hazardous waste.

WARNING

The bottle contains 1.2-Ethanol and natural rubber-latex.

Harmful if ingested. Could result in allergic reaction in the event of skin contact.

Avoid contact with the skin and eyes.

Store out of the reach of children.

Related information

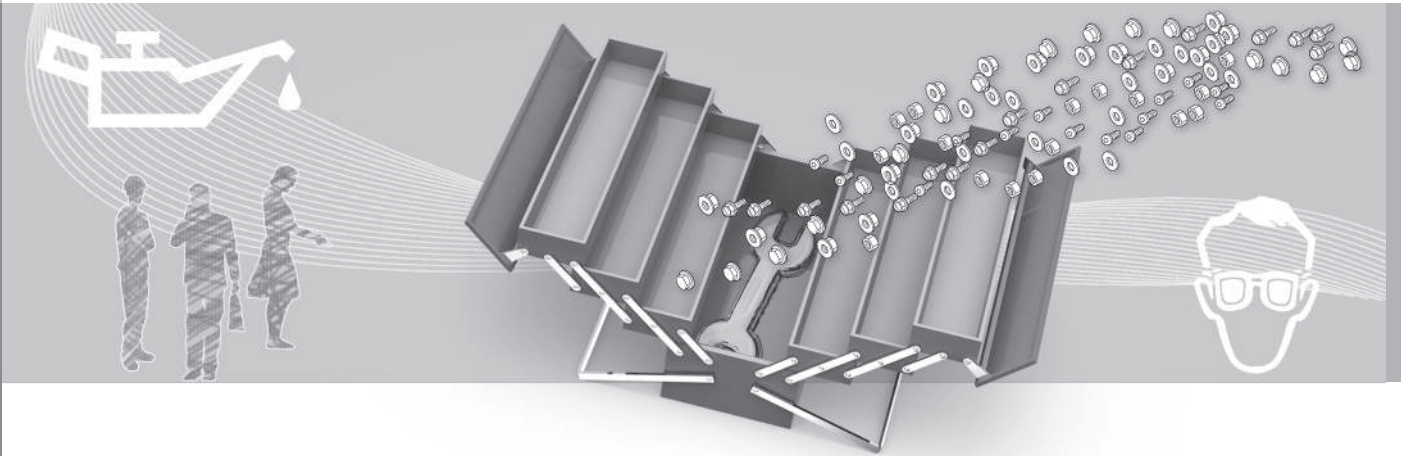
- Emergency puncture repair (p. 318)

⁶ Only 17" wheel Thia

10



MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE





Volvo service programme

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service programme as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to perform the service and maintenance work. Volvo workshops have the personnel, special tools and service literature to guarantee the highest quality of service.

IMPORTANT

For the Volvo warranty to apply, check and follow the instructions in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Service and repair

Service your car regularly. Follow Volvo's recommended service intervals.

If inspection and repair are required then only an authorised Volvo workshop may carry out the work.

WARNING

Do not carry out any repairs of your own on this vehicle. Electrical cables and/or components that have detached must only be rectified by an authorised workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Service interval and next service, charging cable

The hour meter on the charging cable counts charging time until the next service interval. Volvo recommends that the control unit is checked by an electrician after every 5000 operating hours.

IMPORTANT

Do not modify the control unit in any way.

Related information

- Climate control system - fault tracing and repair (p. 336)



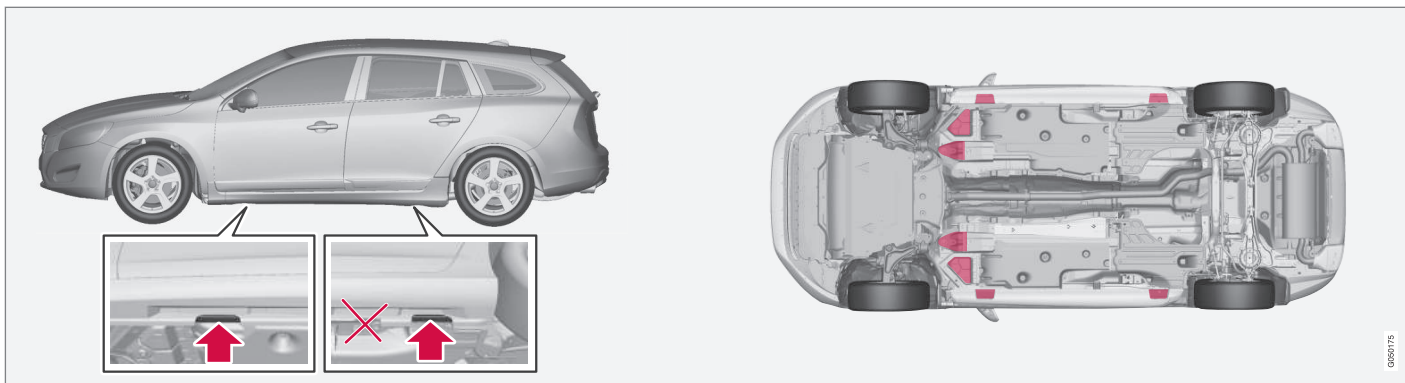
Raising the car

When raising the car it is important that the jack or lifting arms are fitted in the intended points on the car's underbody.



NOTE

Volvo recommends only using the jack that belongs to the car model in question. If a jack is selected other than the one recommended by Volvo, follow the instructions supplied with the equipment.



Jacking points (arrows) for the jack that belongs to the car and lifting points (marked in red).

If the car is raised with a front workshop jack then it must be positioned under one of the four lifting points furthest in under the car. If the car is raised with a rear workshop jack then it must be positioned under one of the lifting points. Ensure that the workshop jack is positioned so that the car cannot slide off the jack. Always use axle stands or similar.

If the car is raised with a two-pillar workshop lift then the front and rear lifting arms can be positioned under the outer lifting points (jacking points). Alternatively, the inner lifting points can be used at the front.

Related information

- Changing wheels - removing wheels (p. 312)

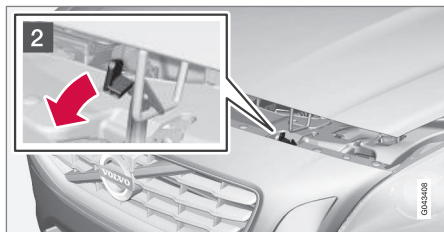


Bonnet - opening and closing

The bonnet can be opened when the handle in the passenger compartment has been turned clockwise and the lock by the grille has been moved to the left.



The handle for bonnet opening is always on the left-hand side.



- 1 Turn the handle about 20-25 degrees clockwise. You will hear when the catch releases.

- 2 Move the catch to the left and open the bonnet. (The catch hook is located between the headlamp and grille, see illustration.)

WARNING

Check that the bonnet locks properly when closed.

Related information

- Engine compartment - checking (p. 331)
- Engine compartment - overview (p. 330)

Engine compartment - overview

The overview shows normal checking points.

Some of the car's batteries and several of the components included in the car's electric drive system are located under the bonnet. Exercise caution in this area and only touch anything that is related to normal maintenance.

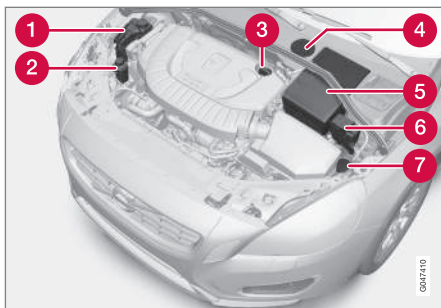
WARNING

Orange cables marked with a high-voltage decal must only be handled by qualified personnel.

WARNING

Several components in the car operate with lethal high-voltage electricity.

- Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in this owner's manual.
- Exercise caution when checking/refilling fluids in the engine compartment.



Normal checking points - other parts require specialist expertise.

- 1 Checking/refilling the coolant for the cooling and climate control systems.
- 2 Checking/filling the power steering fluid
- 3 Filling engine oil
- 4 Checking/filling of brake fluid (on driver's side)
- 5 Battery
- 6 Relay and fuse box
- 7 Filling washer fluid

WARNING

The car's electrical system must always be in key position **0** when work is being performed in the engine compartment; see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 73).

Related information

- Bonnet - opening and closing (p. 330)
- Engine compartment - checking (p. 331)

Engine compartment - checking

Some oils and fluids should be checked at regular intervals.

Regular checking

Check the following oils and fluids at regular intervals, e.g. when refuelling:

- Coolant
- Engine oil
- Power steering fluid
- Washer fluid

WARNING

Remember that the radiator fan (located at the front of the engine compartment, behind the radiator) may start automatically some after the engine has been switched off.

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

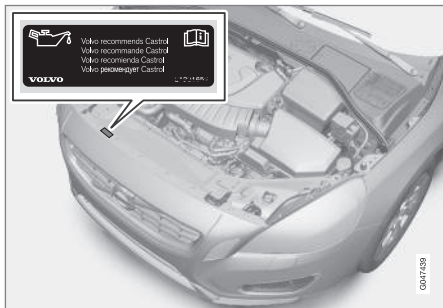
Related information

- Bonnet - opening and closing (p. 330)
- Engine compartment - overview (p. 330)
- Coolant - level (p. 334)
- Engine oil - checking and filling (p. 333)
- Power steering fluid - level (p. 336)
- Washer fluid - filling (p. 346)



Engine oil - general

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied.



Volvo recommends:



When driving under adverse conditions, see Engine oil - adverse driving conditions (p. 379).


! IMPORTANT

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise you will risk affecting service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

Volvo Car Corporation disclaims all warranty liability if engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

Volvo uses different systems for warning of low/high oil level or low/high oil pressure. Certain engine variants have an oil pressure sensor, and then the combined instrument panel's warning symbol for low oil pressure is used. Other variants have an oil level sensor, when the driver is informed via the instrument's warning symbol  and display

texts. Certain variants have both systems. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Change the engine oil and oil filter in accordance with the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Using oil of a higher than specified grade is permitted. If the car is driven in adverse conditions, Volvo recommends using an oil of a higher grade; see Engine oil - adverse driving conditions (p. 379).

For filling capacities, see Engine oil - grade and volume (p. 381).

Related information

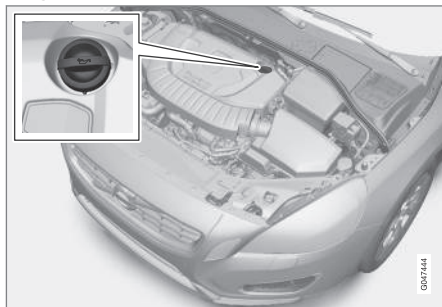
- Engine oil - checking and filling (p. 333)



Engine oil - checking and filling

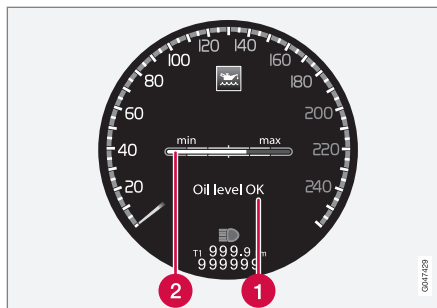
The oil level is checked with the electronic oil level sensor.

Engine with electronic oil level sensor, 5-cyl. diesel



Filler pipe.¹

You do not need to take action with respect to the engine oil level before a message is shown in the display, see the illustration below.



Message and graph in the display.

- 1 Message
- 2 Engine oil level

The oil level is checked using the electronic oil level gauge with the thumbwheel when the engine is switched off, see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103).

WARNING

If the message **Oil service required** is shown, visit a workshop. The oil level may be too high.

IMPORTANT

In the event of the message **Oil level low Refill 0.5 litre**, only fill with 0.5 litres.

WARNING

Do not fill more oil if filling level (3) or (4) appears as shown in the illustration below. The level must never be above **MAX** or below **MIN**, as this could lead to engine damage.

NOTE

The oil level is only detected by the system when certain conditions are fulfilled. For this reason the system cannot always directly detect changes when the oil is filled or drained. Under certain conditions, internal combustion engine operation may be required for approx. 30 km.

WARNING

Do not spill oil onto the hot exhaust manifold due to the risk of fire.

Measuring the oil level, 5-cyl. diesel

If the oil level needs to be checked then it should be carried out in accordance with the sequence below.

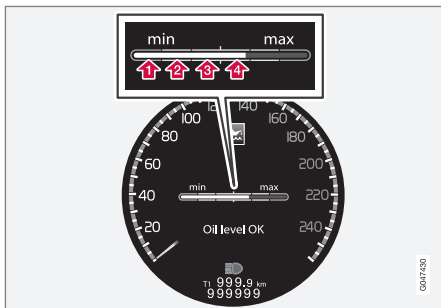
1. Activate key position **II**; see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 73).

¹ Engines with electronic oil level sensor do not have a dipstick.



2. Rotate the thumbwheel on the left-hand stalk switch to position **Oil level**.
 - > You will then see information displayed about the engine oil level.

For more information on menu navigation, see Menu navigation - combined instrument panel (p. 103).



The figures 1-4 represent filling level. Do not fill more oil if filling level (3) or (4) is shown. Recommended filling level is 4. Message and graph in the display.

Related information

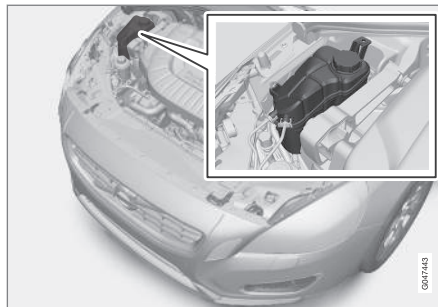
- Engine oil - general (p. 332)

Coolant - level

The coolant cools the internal combustion engine to the correct operating temperature. The heat that is transferred from the engine to the coolant can be used to heat the passenger compartment.

*The coolant level must lie between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the expansion tank.*

Checking the level and topping up



When topping up the coolant, follow the instructions on the packaging. It is important that the mixture of coolant concentrate and water is correct for the prevailing weather conditions. Never top up with water only. The risk of freezing increases with both too little and too much coolant concentrate.



WARNING

Coolant can be very hot. If the coolant requires topping up when the engine is at operating temperature, unscrew the expansion tank cap slowly to gently release the overpressure.

For capacities and for standards regarding water quality; see Coolant - grade and volume (p. 382).

Check the coolant regularly

The level must lie between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the expansion tank. If the system is not filled sufficiently, high temperatures could occur, causing a risk of damage to the engine.



! IMPORTANT

- A high content of chlorine, chlorides and other salts may cause corrosion in the cooling system.
- Always use coolant with anti-corrosion agent as recommended by Volvo.
- Ensure that the coolant mixture is 50% water and 50% coolant.
- Mix the coolant with approved quality tap water. In the event of any doubt about water quality, used ready-mixed coolant in accordance with Volvo recommendations.
- When changing coolant/replacing cooling system components, flush the cooling system clean with approved quality tap water or flush with ready-mixed coolant.
- The engine must only be run with a well-filled cooling system. Otherwise, temperatures that are too high may occur resulting in the risk of damage (cracks) in the cylinder head.

Brake and clutch fluid - level

The brake fluid level should be between container's **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

Checking the level

The level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks that are visible inside the reservoir. Check the level regularly.

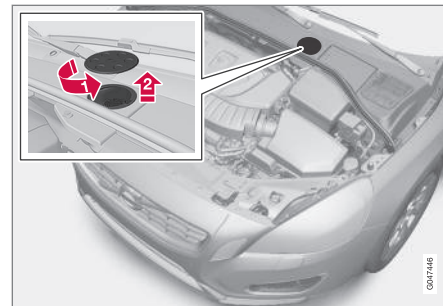
Change the brake fluid every other year or at every other regular service.

For capacities and recommended brake fluid grade, see Brake fluid - grade and volume (p. 384). The fluid should be changed annually on cars driven in conditions requiring hard, frequent braking, such as driving in mountains or tropical climates with high humidity.

! WARNING

If the brake fluid is under the **MIN** level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid. Volvo recommends that the reason for the loss of brake fluid is investigated by an authorised Volvo workshop.

Filling



The fluid reservoir is located on the driver's side.

The fluid reservoir is protected under the cover over the cold zone in the engine compartment. The round cover must be removed first before the reservoir cap can be reached.

- Turn and open the cover located on the covering.
- Unscrew the reservoir cap and fill the fluid. The level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks, which are located on the inside of the reservoir.

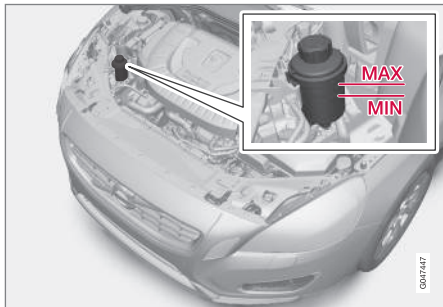
! IMPORTANT

Do not forget to refit the cap.



Power steering fluid - level

The power steering fluid level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks. The fluid does not need to be changed.



! IMPORTANT

Keep the area around the power steering fluid reservoir clean when checking. The cover must not be opened.

Check the level frequently. The fluid does not require changing. The fluid level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks. For recommended fluid grade, see Power steering fluid - grade (p. 384).

i NOTE

If a fault should arise in the power steering system, or if the engine is switched off and must be towed, then the car can still be steered.

Climate control system - fault tracing and repair

The air conditioning system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Troubleshooting and repair

The air conditioning system contains fluorescent tracing agents. Use ultraviolet light when looking for leaks.

Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

! WARNING

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. This system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Related information

- Volvo service programme (p. 327)



Lamp replacement

Lamp replacement can be carried out for bulbs. When replacing LED and Xenon lamps, please refer to a workshop.

The bulbs are specified (p. 343). The following list contains locations of bulbs and other light sources that are specialised, such as LED² lamps, or are unsuitable for changing for some other reason, except at a workshop:

- Active Xenon headlamps - ABL (Xenon lamps)
- Daytime running lights/Position/parking lamps front
- Side marker lamps front
- Cornering lights
- Side direction indicators, door mirrors
- Approach lighting, door mirrors
- Interior lighting apart from Courtesy lighting front
- Glovebox lighting
- Position/parking lamps rear/Side marker lamps rear
- Brake light.

WARNING

On cars with Xenon headlamps, the replacement of Xenon lamps must be carried out at a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. Working with Xenon lamps demands extreme caution because the headlamp is equipped with a high voltage unit.

WARNING

The car's electrical system must be in key position **0** for bulb replacement; see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 73).

IMPORTANT

Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

NOTE

If an error message remains after the broken bulb has been replaced then we recommend that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop.

NOTE

Outside lighting such as headlamps, fog lamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

Related information

- Lamp replacement - headlamps (p. 338)
- Lamp replacement - location of rear lamps (p. 342)
- Lamp replacement - vanity mirror lighting (p. 343)
- Lamp replacement - lighting in cargo area (p. 342)
- Lamp replacement - number plate lighting (p. 342)

² LED (Light Emitting Diode)

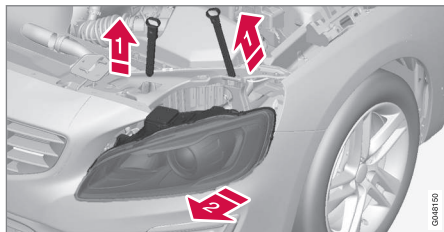


Lamp replacement - headlamps

All of the headlamp bulbs are replaced via the engine compartment. First loosen and remove the whole headlamp.

Removing the headlamp

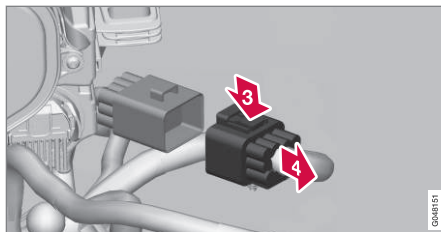
Set the car's electrical system in key position **0**, see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 73).



- 1) Pull out the headlamp's locking pins.
- 2) Release the headlamp by alternately tilting and pulling it out.

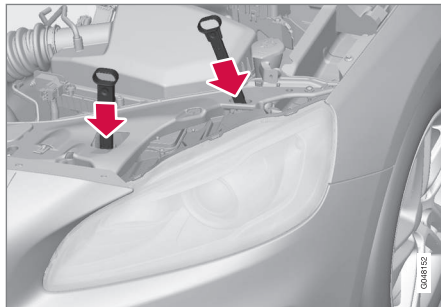
! IMPORTANT

Do not pull the electrical cable, only the connector.



- 3) Detach the headlamp connector by pressing down the clip with your thumb.
- 4) At the same time, guide out the connector with your other hand.
5. Lift out the headlamp and place it on a soft surface to avoid scratching the lens.
6. Replace the bulb in question.

Securing the headlamp



1. Plug in the connector, a clicking sound should be heard.
2. Reinstall the headlamp and locking pins. The short pin is fitted closest to the grille. Check that they are correctly inserted.
3. Check the lighting.

The headlamp must be mounted and the connector correctly installed before the lighting is switched on or the remote control key is inserted into the ignition switch.

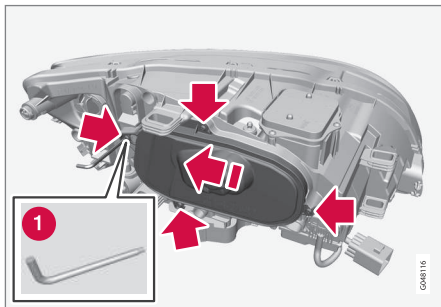
Related information

- Lamp replacement (p. 337)
- Lamp replacement - cover for main/dipped beam bulbs (p. 339)
- Lamps - specifications (p. 343)



Lamp replacement - cover for main/dipped beam bulbs

Main/dipped beam bulbs are accessed by releasing the headlamp's larger cover.



Before starting to replace a bulb, see Lamp replacement - headlamps (p. 338).

1. Unscrew the cover's four screws using a Torx tool, size T20 (1). They should not be loosened completely. (3 - 4 turns are sufficient.)
2. Slide the cover to one side.
3. Remove the cover.

Reinstall the cover in reverse order.

Related information

- Lamp replacement - headlamps (p. 338)
- Lamp replacement - dipped beam (p. 339)

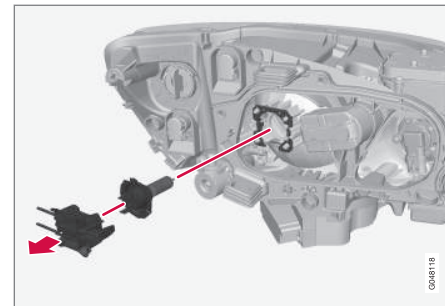
- Lamp replacement - main beam (p. 340)
- Lamp replacement - extra main beam (p. 340)

Lamp replacement - dipped beam

The dipped beam bulb is fitted inside the headlamp's larger cover.

i NOTE

Applies to cars with halogen headlamps.



1. Detach the headlamp (p. 338).
2. Remove the cover (p. 339).
3. Unplug the connector from the bulb.
4. Detach the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. The guide pin on the lamp should be straight up when it is fitted and a clicking sound should be heard when it clicks into place.

Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

Related information

- Lamps - specifications (p. 343)

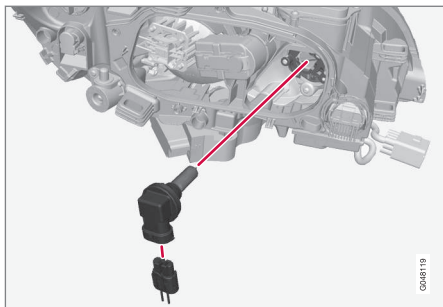


Lamp replacement - main beam

The main beam bulb is fitted inside the headlamp's larger cover.

i NOTE

Applies to cars with halogen headlamps.



1. Detach the headlamp (p. 338).
2. Remove the cover (p. 339).
3. Detach the bulb by turning anticlockwise and then pulling straight out.
4. Unplug the connector from the bulb.
5. Replace the bulb and align it in the socket and turn clockwise in order to secure it. It can be secured in one position.

Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

Related information

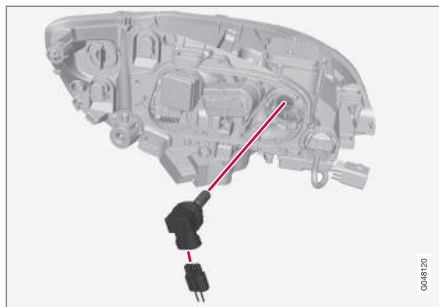
- Lamps - specifications (p. 343)

Lamp replacement - extra main beam

The extra main beam bulb is fitted inside the headlamp's larger cover.

i NOTE

Applies to cars with Xenon headlamps*.



1. Detach the headlamp (p. 338).
2. Remove the cover (p. 339).
3. Detach the bulb by turning anticlockwise and then pulling straight out.
4. Unplug the connector from the bulb.
5. Replace the bulb and align it in the socket and turn clockwise in order to secure it. It can only be secured in one position.

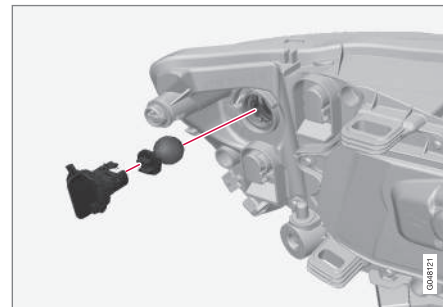
Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

Related information

- Lamps - specifications (p. 343)

Lamp replacement - direction indicators front

The direction indicator lamp is fitted inside the headlamp's smaller cover.



1. Detach the headlamp (p. 338).
2. Detach the cover by pulling it straight out.
3. Pull the bulb holder in order to extract the bulb.
4. Press and simultaneously turn the bulb to detach it.

Reinstall the parts in reverse order.

Related information

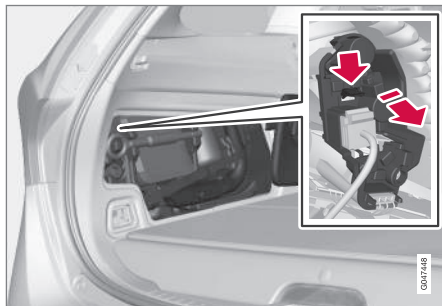
- Lamps - specifications (p. 343)



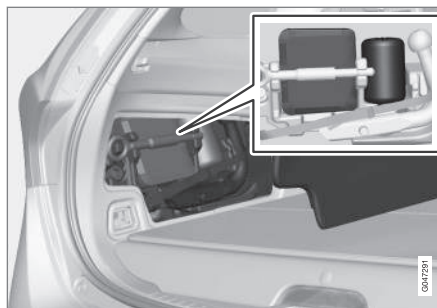
Lamp replacement - rear lamp

Rear direction indicators, rear fog lamp and reversing lamp are replaced from inside the cargo area.

Lamp housing, rear



The bulbs for reversing lamp, fog lamp and direction indicator in the rear lamp cluster are replaced from inside the cargo area.



The lamps are accessible when emergency puncture repair kit is lifted out.

1. Open the panel.
2. Lift the emergency puncture repair kit.
3. Remove the insulation that is fitted in front of the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
4. Press down the catch and pull out the bulb holder.
5. Remove the blown bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
6. Fit a new bulb, press down and turn clockwise.
7. Press down the catch when the bulb holder is refitted.
8. Refit the insulation, emergency puncture repair kit and panel.

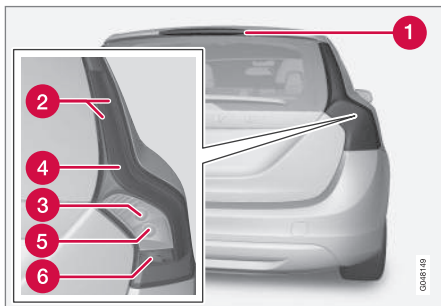
Related information

- Lamp replacement - location of rear lamps (p. 342)
- Lamps - specifications (p. 343)



Lamp replacement - location of rear lamps

The overview shows the location of the lamps at the rear.



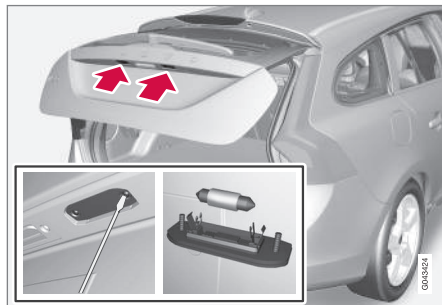
- 1 Brake light (LED)
- 2 Position/parking lamps (LED)/Side marker lamps (LED)
- 3 Indicator (p. 341)
- 4 Brake light (LED)
- 5 Reversing lamp
- 6 Rear fog lamp

Related information

- Lamp replacement (p. 337)
- Lamps - specifications (p. 343)

Lamp replacement - number plate lighting

The number plate lighting is located under the tailgate handle.



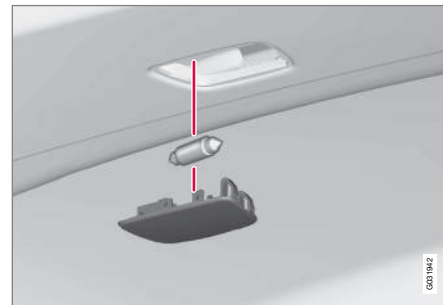
1. Remove the screws with a screwdriver.
2. Carefully detach the whole lamp housing and withdraw it.
3. Replace the bulb.
4. Refit the whole lamp housing and screw it into place.

Related information

- Lamps - specifications (p. 343)

Lamp replacement - lighting in cargo area

The cargo area lighting is located in the tailgate.



1. Insert a screwdriver and gently prize so that the lamp housing comes loose.
2. Replace the bulb.
3. Check that the bulb illuminates and press back the lamp housing.

Related information

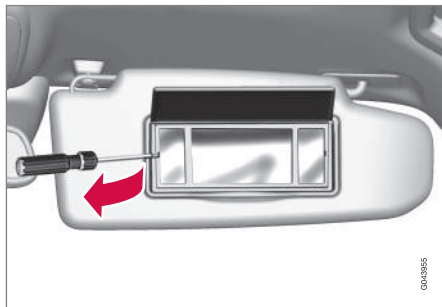
- Lamps - specifications (p. 343)



Lamp replacement - vanity mirror lighting

The vanity mirror's lamps are fitted inside the lamp lenses.

Removal of lamp lens



1. Insert a screwdriver under the lamp lens and gently prize up the lug on the edge.
2. Carefully detach and lift aside the lamp lens.
3. Use needle-nose pliers to pull the bulb straight out to the side and replace with a new one. Note! - Do not pinch hard with the pliers. Otherwise the lamp lens could then be crushed.

Attaching the lamp lens

1. Refit the lamp lens.
2. Press it into place.

Related information

- Lamps - specifications (p. 343)

Lamps - specifications

The specifications apply to bulbs. When replacing LED and Xenon lamps, please refer to a workshop.

| Lighting | W ^A | Type |
|----------------------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| Dipped beam, halogen | 55 | H7 LL |
| Main beam, Halogen | 65 | H9 |
| Extra main beam, ABL | 65 | H9 |
| Front direction indicators | 24 | PY24W |
| Courtesy lighting front | 3 | T10 Socket W2.1x9.5d |
| Glovebox lighting | 5 | Socket SV8.5 Length 43 mm |
| Vanity mirror lighting | 1,2 | T5 Socket W2x4.6d |
| Cargo area lighting | 5 | Socket SV8.5 Length 43 mm |
| Number plate lighting | 5 | C5W LL |
| Direction indicators, rear | 21 | PY21W LL |



| Lighting | W ^A | Type |
|----------------|----------------|---------|
| – | – | – |
| Reversing lamp | 21 | P21W LL |
| Rear fog lamp | 21 | H21W LL |

^A Watt

Related information

- Lamp replacement (p. 337)
- Lamp replacement - location of rear lamps (p. 342)
- Lamp replacement - vanity mirror lighting (p. 343)

Wiper blades

The wiper blades sweep water away from the windscreen and rear window. Together with the washer fluid they clean the windows and ensure visibility for driving.

The windscreen wiper blades must be in service position when they are to be replaced.

Service position



Wiper blades in service position.

In order to make replacement possible, to clean or lift the wiper blades (for scraping off ice from the windscreen, for example), they must be in service position.



IMPORTANT

Before placing the wiper blades in the service position, make sure that they are not frozen down.

1. Place the remote control key in the ignition lock³ and briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to set the car's electrical system to key position **I**. For detailed information on key positions, see Key positions - functions at different levels (p. 73).
2. Briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button again to set the car's electrical system in key position **0**.
3. Within 3 seconds, move the right stalk switch up and hold it in position for approx. 1 second.
 - > The wipers then move to standing straight up.

The wipers return to their starting position when you briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to set the car's electrical system to key position **I** (or when the car is started).

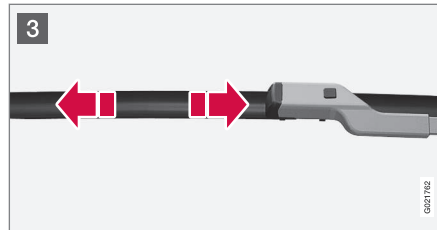
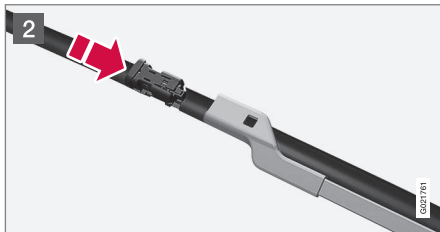
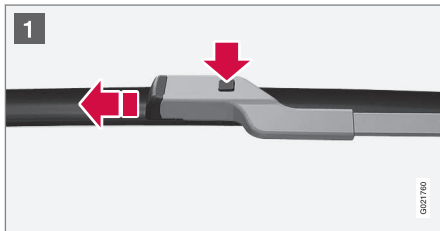
³ Not necessary in cars with Keyless function.



! IMPORTANT

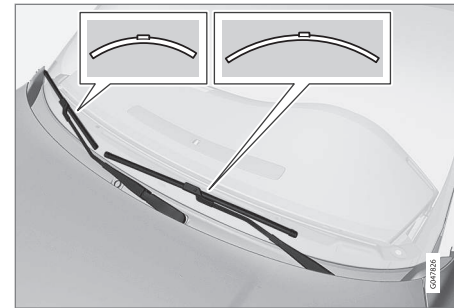
If the wiper arms in service position have been folded up from the windscreen, they must be folded back down onto the windscreen before the wipers are allowed to return to their starting position. This is to avoid scraping the paint on the bonnet.

Replacing the wiper blades



- 1 Fold up the wiper arm when it is in service position. Press the button located on the wiper blade mounting and pull straight out parallel with the wiper arm.
- 2 Slide in the new wiper blade until a "click" is heard.
- 3 Check that the blade is firmly installed.
4. Fold the wiper arm back towards the windscreen.

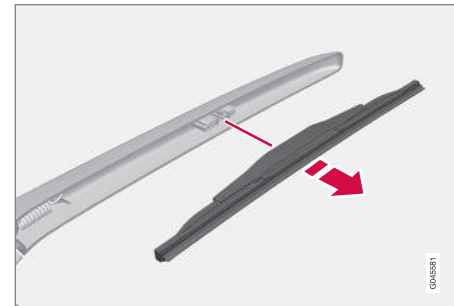
The wipers return from service position to their starting position when you briefly press the **START/STOP ENGINE** button to set the car's electrical system to key position I (or when the car is started).



i NOTE

The wiper blades are different lengths. The blade on the driver's side is longer than on the passenger side.

Replacing the wiper blades, rear window





1. Fold out the wiper arm.
2. Grip the inner section of the blade (by the arrow).
3. Turn anticlockwise to use the blade's end position against the wiper arm as a lever to detach the blade more easily.
4. Press the new wiper blade into position. Check that it is firmly installed.
5. Lower the wiper arm.

Cleaning

For cleaning wiper blades and windscreen, see Car washing (p. 365).



IMPORTANT

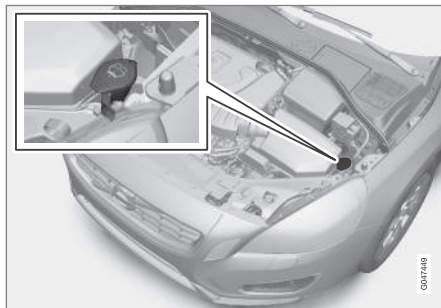
Check the blades regularly. Neglected maintenance shortens the service life of the wiper blades.

Related information

- Washer fluid - filling (p. 346)

Washer fluid - filling

Washer fluid is used for cleaning the headlamps and windows. Washer fluid with anti-freeze must be used during winter.



The windscreen and headlamp washers share a common reservoir.



IMPORTANT

Use washer fluid with antifreeze during the winter to avoid freezing in the pump, reservoir and hoses.

For capacities, see Washer fluid - quality and volume (p. 384).

Related information

- Wiper blades (p. 344)

Battery

The service life and function of the battery is influenced by factors such as the number of starts, discharging, driving style, driving conditions, climatic conditions etc.

The car's traditional 12 V battery is here called "starter battery" even if the hybrid battery (p. 350) is often used for starting the internal combustion engine.

- Never disconnect the battery when the engine is running.
- Check that the cables to the battery are correctly connected and properly tightened.



WARNING

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.



! IMPORTANT

Only a traditional battery charger should ever be used when charging the battery.

i NOTE

If both the starter battery and the hybrid battery (p. 286) are discharged then **both** batteries must be charged. In such a case, charging only the hybrid battery first is not possible.

! IMPORTANT

If the following instruction is not observed then the energy saving function for information may be temporarily disengaged, and/or the message in the information display about the main battery's state of charge may be temporarily inapplicable, following the connection of an external battery or battery charger:

- The negative battery terminal on the car's starter battery must **never** be used for connecting an external battery or battery charger - only the **car chassis** may be used as the grounding point.

See Jump starting with battery (p. 256) for a description of how the cable clamps must be attached.

i NOTE

The life of the battery is shortened if it becomes discharged repeatedly.

The life of the battery is affected by several factors, including driving conditions and climate. Battery starting capacity decreases gradually with time and therefore needs to be recharged if the car is not used for a longer time or when it is only driven short distances. Extreme cold further limits starting capacity.

To maintain the battery in good condition, at least 15 minutes of driving/week is recommended or that the battery is connected to a battery charger with automatic trickle charging.

A battery that is kept fully charged has a maximum service life.

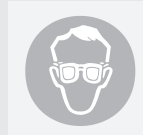



Related information

- Battery - symbols (p. 347)
- Starter battery - replacement (p. 348)

Battery - symbols

There are information and warning symbols on the battery.

Symbols on the battery

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Use protective goggles. |
|  | Further information is available in the owner's manual. |
|  | Store the battery out of the reach of children. |
|  | The battery contains corrosive acid. |



Avoid sparks and naked flames.



Risk of explosion.



Must be taken for recycling.

i NOTE

An expended battery must be recycled in an environmentally safe manner as it contains lead.

Related information

- Battery (p. 346)

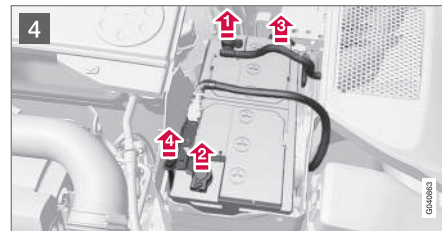
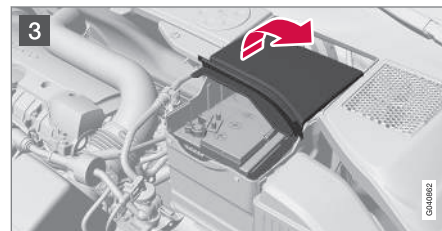
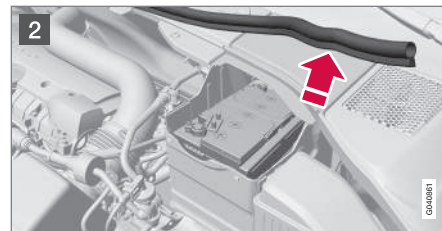
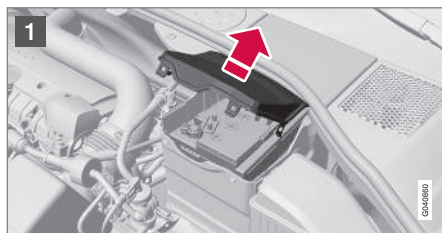
Starter battery - replacement

The starter battery in the car can be replaced without the help of a workshop.

The car's traditional 12 V battery is here called "starter battery" even if the hybrid battery (p. 350) is often used for starting the internal combustion engine.

Removal

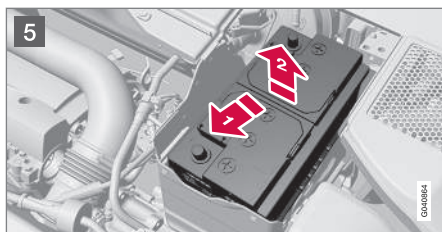
First of all: Take the remote control key from the ignition switch and wait at least 5 minutes before any electrical connections are touched - this is because the car's electrical system needs to store the necessary information to control modules.



0040801

0040802

0040803



- 1 Open the clips on the front cover and remove the cover.
- 2 Release the rubber moulding so that the rear cover is free.
- 3 Remove the rear cover by screwing one quarter turn and lifting it away.

WARNING

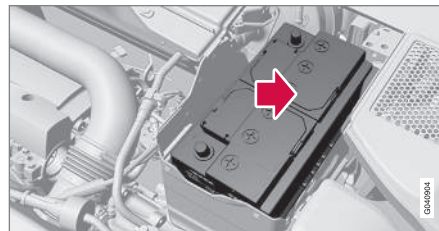
Connect and remove the positive and negative cables in the correct order.

- 4
 - 1 Detach the black negative cable.
 - 2 Detach the red positive cable.
 - 3 Detach the ventilation hose from the battery.
 - 4 Loosen the screw holding the battery clamp.

5

- 1 Move the battery aside.
- 2 Lift it up.

Fitting



1. Lower the battery into the battery box.
2. Move the battery inward and to the side until it reaches the rear edge of the box.
3. Tighten the clamp that holds the battery.
4. Connect the ventilation hose.
 - > Check that it is correctly connected to both battery and outlet in the body.
5. Connect the red positive cable.
6. Connect the black negative cable.
7. Press in the rear cover. (See earlier section "Removal".)
8. Fit the rubber moulding. (See "Removal".)
9. Align the front cover and secure it with the clips. (See "Removal".)

For more information on the car's battery - Electrical system (p. 388).



Hybrid battery

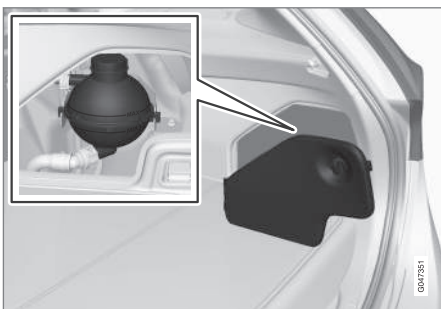
The car is equipped with a hybrid battery for electric motor operation - a maintenance-free rechargeable Lithium-ion type battery.

WARNING

The hybrid battery must only be replaced by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Coolant

The hybrid battery's cooling system has a separate expansion tank.



IMPORTANT

The hybrid battery's coolant must only be topped up by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Related information

- Charging the hybrid battery - preparations (p. 288)

Fuses - general

All electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the car's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

WARNING

Orange cables marked with a high-voltage decal must only be handled by qualified personnel.

WARNING

Several components in the car operate with lethal high-voltage electricity. Do not touch anything that is not clearly described in this owner's manual.

If an electrical component or function does not work, it may be because the component's fuse was temporarily overloaded and failed. If the same fuse fails repeatedly then there is a fault in the circuit. Volvo recommends that you visit an authorised Volvo workshop for checking.

Changing

1. Look in the fuse diagram to locate the fuse.
2. Pull out the fuse and check from the side to see whether the curved wire has blown.

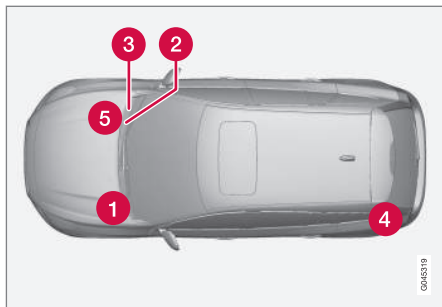


3. If this is the case, replace it with a new fuse of the same colour and amperage.

WARNING

Never use a foreign object or a fuse with an amperage higher than that specified when replacing a fuse. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system and possibly lead to fire.

Location of central electrical units



Central electrical unit locations in a left-hand drive car. In a right-hand drive car the central electrical units under the glovebox change sides.

- 1 Engine compartment
- 2 Under the glovebox
- 3 Under the glovebox

- 4 Cargo area
- 5 Engine compartment, cold zone

Related information

- Fuses - in engine compartment (p. 352)
- Fuses - under glovebox (p. 355)
- Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox (p. 357)
- Fuses - in cargo area (p. 359)
- Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone (p. 363)

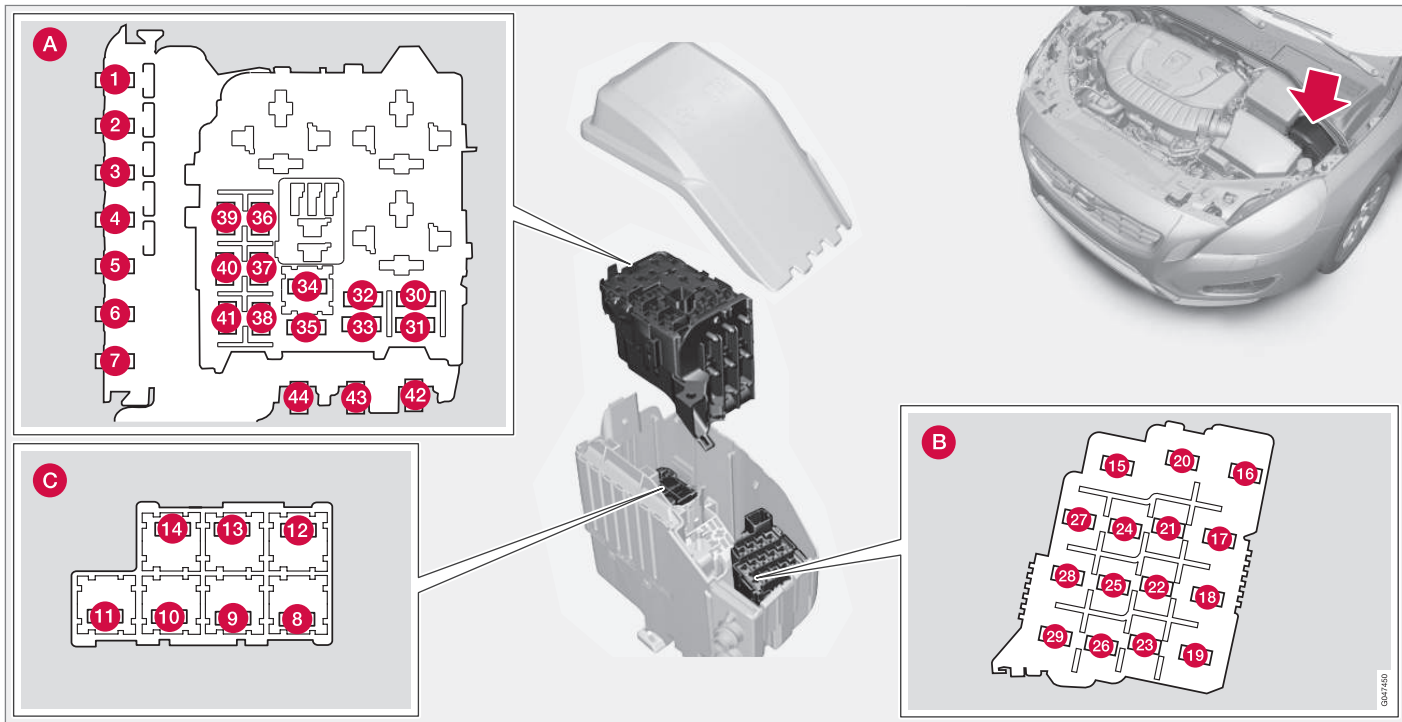


10 Maintenance and service

Fuses - in engine compartment

Fuses in the engine compartment protect engine and brake functions, amongst other things.

10





General fuses, engine compartment

On the inside of the cover there are tweezers that facilitate the procedure for the removal and fitting of fuses.

Positions (see preceding illustration)

- A** Engine compartment, upper
- B** Engine compartment, front
- C** Engine compartment, lower

These fuses are all located in the engine compartment box. The fuses in (C) are located under (A).

On the inside of the cover is a label that shows the location of the fuses.

- Fuses 1-7 and 42-44 are of the "Midi Fuse" type and must only be replaced by a workshop⁴.
- Fuses 8-15 and 34 are of the "JCASE" type and should be replaced by a workshop⁴.
- Fuses 16-33 and 35-41 are of the "Mini Fuse" type.

| | Function | A |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 1 | – | – |
| 2 | Primary fuse for the central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox | 50 |

| | Function | A |
|----|----------------------------------------------------|----|
| 3 | – | – |
| 4 | Primary fuse for relay/fuse box under the glovebox | 60 |
| 5 | – | – |
| 6 | – | – |
| 7 | – | – |
| 8 | – | – |
| 9 | Windscreen wipers | 30 |
| 10 | Parking heater* | 25 |
| 11 | – | – |
| 12 | – | – |
| 13 | ABS pump | 40 |
| 14 | ABS valves | 20 |
| 15 | Headlamp washer* | 20 |
| 16 | Headlamp levelling*; Active Xenon headlamps - ABL* | 10 |

| | Function | A |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 17 | Primary fuse for the central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox | 20 |
| 18 | ABS | 5 |
| 19 | Adjustable steering force* | 5 |
| 20 | Engine control module; Transmission control module; Airbags | 10 |
| 21 | Heated washer nozzles* | 10 |
| 22 | – | – |
| 23 | Light switches | 5 |
| 24 | – | – |
| 25 | – | – |
| 26 | – | – |
| 27 | Relay coils | 5 |
| 28 | Auxiliary lamps* | 20 |
| 29 | Horn | 15 |

⁴ An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.



10 Maintenance and service



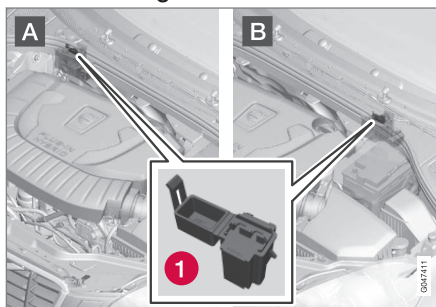
| | Function | A |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 30 | Relay coil in main relay for engine management system; Engine control module | 10 |
| 31 | Transmission control module | 15 |
| 32 | – | – |
| 33 | Relay coils in central electrical unit in engine compartment cold zone | 5 |
| 34 | Start relay | 30 |
| 35 | Glow control module | 10 |
| 36 | Engine Control Module (ECM) | 15 |
| 37 | Mass air flow sensor; Control valves | 15 |
| 38 | Valves; Oil level sensor | 10 |
| 39 | Lambda-sond; Control module, radiator roller cover | 10 |
| 40 | Diesel filter heater | 20 |

| | Function | A |
|----|------------------------------|-----|
| 41 | Crankcase ventilation heater | 5 |
| 42 | Glow plugs | 70 |
| 43 | Cooling fan | 80 |
| 44 | Power steering | 100 |

Related information

- Fuses - under glovebox (p. 355)
- Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox (p. 357)
- Fuses - in cargo area (p. 359)

Behind the engine



A: Left-hand drive car. B: Right-hand drive car.

1 Fuse

| | Function | A |
|---|--------------------------------------------|---|
| 1 | Monitoring of vacuum pump for brake system | 5 |



Fuses - under glovebox

Fuses under the glovebox protect the infotainment and seat functions, amongst other things.



Positions

| | Function | A |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 1 | Primary fuse for audio control module*; Primary fuse for fuses 16-20: Infotainment | 40 |
| 2 | Windscreen washers; Rear window washer | 25 |
| 3 | - | - |
| 4 | - | - |

| | Function | A |
|---|-------------------------------------|----|
| 5 | - | - |
| 6 | Door handle (Keyless*) | 5 |
| 7 | - | - |
| 8 | Control panel, driver's door | 20 |
| 9 | Control panel, front passenger door | 20 |

| | Function | A |
|----|-------------------------------------------|-----|
| 10 | Control panel, rear passenger door, right | 20 |
| 11 | Control panel, rear passenger door, left | 20 |
| 12 | Keyless* | 7,5 |
| 13 | Power seat driver's side* | 20 |
| 14 | Power seat passenger side* | 20 |

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.





10 Maintenance and service



| | Function | A |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 15 | – | – |
| 16 | Infotainment control module; Screen ^A | 5 |
| 17 | Audio control unit (amplifier)*, Digital radio*; TV* | 10 |
| 18 | Audio or Control Module Sen- sus ^A | 15 |
| 19 | Telematics*; Bluetooth* | 5 |
| 20 | – | – |
| 21 | Sunroof*; Interior lighting roof; Climate sensor*; Damper motors, air intake | 5 |
| 22 | 12 V socket, tunnel console | 15 |
| 23 | Seat heating, rear right* | 15 |
| 24 | Seat heating, rear left* | 15 |
| 25 | Electrically-driven heater | 5 |
| 26 | Seat heating (passenger side) | 15 |
| 27 | Seat heating (driver's side) | 15 |

| | Function | A |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|
| 28 | Parking assistance*; Parking camera*; Towbar control mod- ule* BLIS* | 5 |
| 29 | – | – |
| 30 | – | – |

^A Certain model variants.

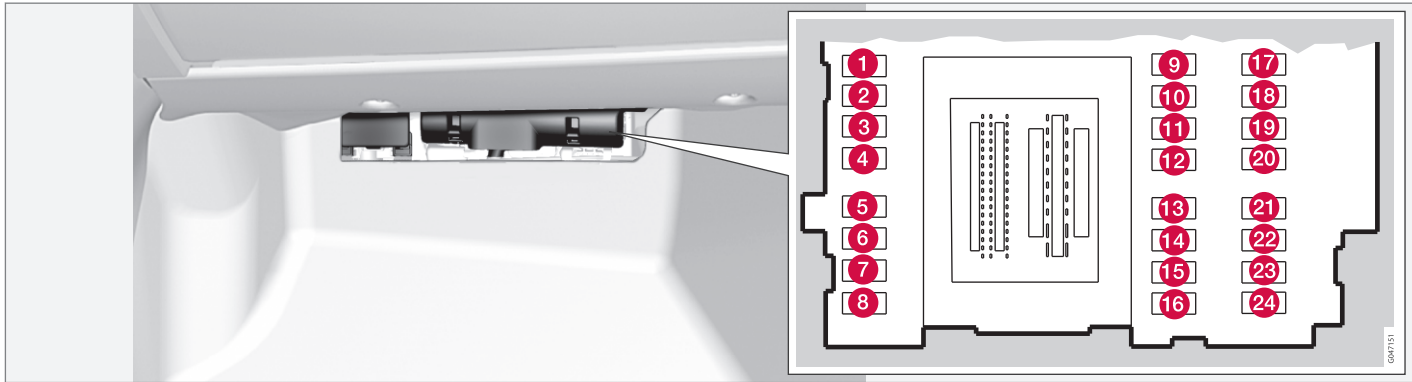
Related information

- Fuses - in engine compartment (p. 352)
- Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox (p. 357)
- Fuses - in cargo area (p. 359)
- Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone (p. 363)



Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox

Fuses in the control module under the glovebox protect airbag and collision warning system functions, amongst other things.



Positions

| | Function | A |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1 | Rear window wiper | 15 |
| 2 | – | – |
| 3 | Interior lighting; Driver's door control panel, power windows; Remote controlled garage door opener*; Power seats, front* | 7,5 |

| | Function | A |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 4 | Combined instrument panel | 5 |
| 5 | Adaptive cruise control, ACC*; collision warning system* | 10 |
| 6 | Interior lighting; Rain sensor | 7,5 |
| 7 | Steering wheel module | 7,5 |
| 8 | Central locking system, fuel filler flap | 10 |

| | Function | A |
|----|-------------------------|----|
| 9 | Heated steering wheel* | 15 |
| 10 | Heated windscreen* | 15 |
| 11 | Unlocking, tailgate | 10 |
| 12 | Folding head restraint* | 10 |
| 13 | Fuel pump | 20 |

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.





10 Maintenance and service



| | Function | A |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 14 | Movement detector alarm*; Climate panel | 5 |
| 15 | Steering lock | 15 |
| 16 | Siren*; Data link connector OBDII | 5 |
| 17 | – | – |
| 18 | Airbags | 10 |
| 19 | Collision warning* | 5 |
| 20 | Accelerator pedal sensor; Dimming interior rearview mirror*; Seat heating, rear* | 7,5 |
| 21 | Infotainment control module (Performance); Audio (Performance) | 15 |
| 22 | Brake lights | 5 |
| 23 | Sunroof* | 20 |
| 24 | Immobiliser | 5 |

- Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone (p. 363)

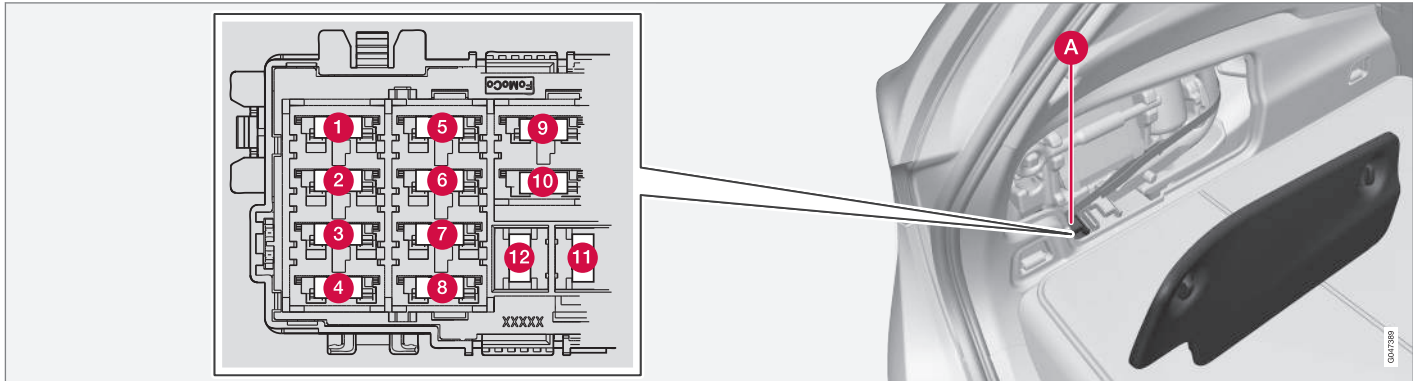
Related information

- Fuses - in engine compartment (p. 352)
- Fuses - under glovebox (p. 355)
- Fuses - in cargo area (p. 359)



Fuses - in cargo area

Fuses in the cargo area protect trailer and electric drive functions, amongst other things.

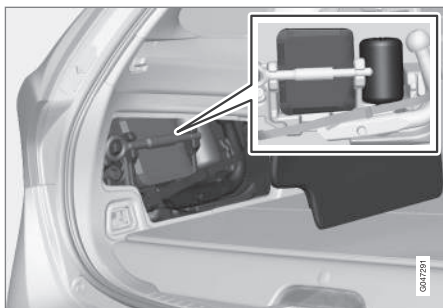


The fuse box is located behind the upholstery on the left-hand side.



10 Maintenance and service

◀◀

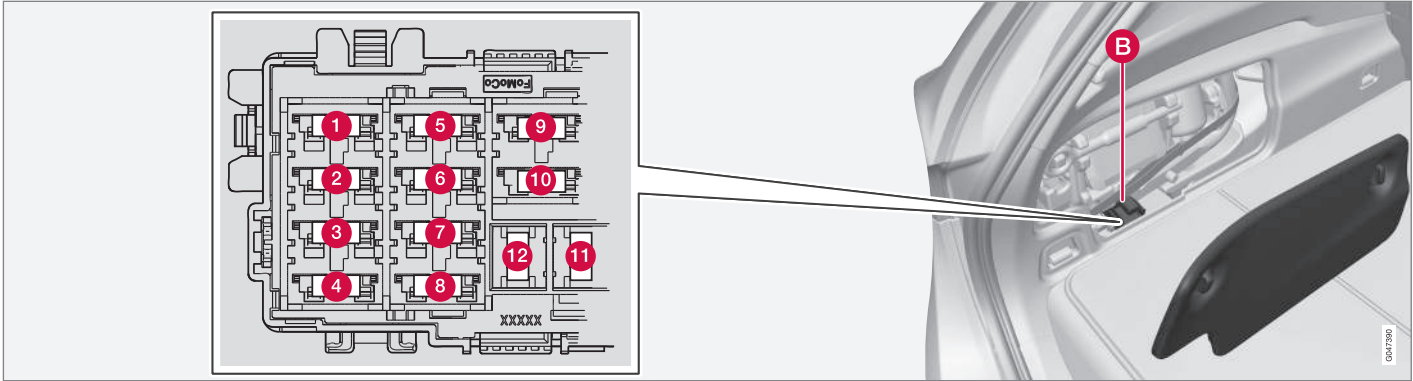


The emergency puncture repair kit needs to be lifted out for the central electrical unit to be accessible.

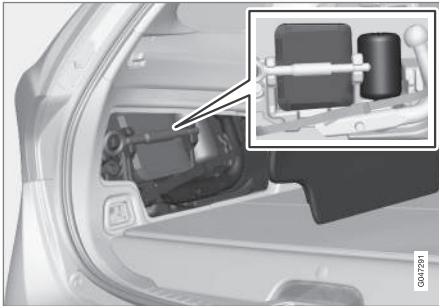
| Box A | Function | A |
|-------|-------------------|----|
| 9 | – | – |
| 10 | – | – |
| 11 | Trailer socket 1* | 40 |
| 12 | – | – |

Positions

| Box A | Function | A |
|-------|-------------------------------|----|
| 1 | Electric parking brake, left | 30 |
| 2 | Electric parking brake, right | 30 |
| 3 | Rear window defroster | 30 |
| 4 | Trailer socket 2* | 15 |
| 5 | – | – |
| 6 | 12 V socket, cargo area | 15 |
| 7 | – | – |
| 8 | – | – |



The fuse box is located behind the upholstery on the left-hand side.



The emergency puncture repair kit needs to be lifted out for the central electrical unit to be accessible.

| Box B | Function | A |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 1 | Coolant pump 1 for hybrid battery; Valve for coolant pumps 1 and 2 | 10 |
| 2 | Coolant pump 2 for hybrid battery | 10 |
| 3 | Charging unit; Voltage converter 400 V-12 V; Control module for hybrid battery | 5 |
| 4 | Coolant pump for the cooling system's low temperature circuit | 15 |

| Box B | Function | A |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 5 | Charging unit; Voltage converter 400 V-12 V; Control module for hybrid battery | 10 |
| 6 | Relay coils; Hazard voltage converter for electric motor and combined hazard voltage generator/starter motor | 10 |
| 7 | Disengaging the electric motor from the rear axle | 15 |
| 8 | – | – |



10 Maintenance and service



| Box B | Function | A |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 9 | Hazard voltage converter for electric motor and combined hazard voltage generator/ starter motor; Control module for hybrid battery | 10 |
| 10 | Coolant valves for the cooling system's low temperature circuit; Electric A/C compressor; Valve for heat exchanger; Valve for climate control system | 10 |
| 11 | – | – |
| 12 | – | – |

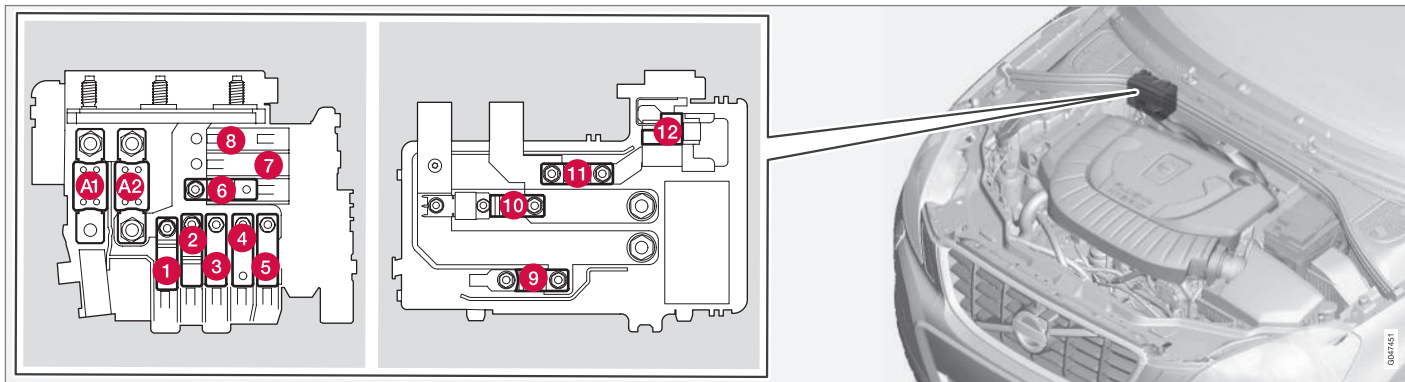
Related information

- Fuses - in engine compartment (p. 352)
- Fuses - under glovebox (p. 355)
- Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox (p. 357)
- Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone (p. 363)



Fuses - in the engine compartment's cold zone

Fuses in the engine compartment's cold zone are fitted in cars with the Start/Stop function.



Location of fuses for the Start/Stop function.

- Fuses A1 and A2 are of the "MEGA Fuse" type and must only be replaced by a workshop⁵.
- Fuses 1-11 are of the "Midi Fuse" type and must only be replaced by a workshop⁵.
- Fuse 12 is of the "Mini Fuse" type.

For more information on Start/Stop - see Drive system - drive modes (p. 258).

Positions

| | Function | A |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| A1 | Main fuse for central electrical unit in the engine compartment | 175 |
| A2 | Main fuse for central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox, relay/fuse box under the glovebox, central electrical units in cargo area | 175 |

| | Function | A |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 1 | Vacuum pump for brake system | 40 |
| 2 | Primary fuse for the central electronic module (CEM) under the glovebox | 50 |
| 3 | Primary fuse for relay/fuse box under the glovebox | 60 |

⁵ An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.



10 Maintenance and service



| | Function | A |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 4 | Primary fuse for central electrical unit B in cargo area | 50 |
| 5 | Primary fuse for central electrical unit A in cargo area | 60 |
| 6 | Ventilation fan | 40 |
| 7 | – | – |
| 8 | – | – |
| 9 | – | – |
| 10 | Internal diode | 50 |
| 11 | Oil pump automatic gearbox | 30 |
| 12 | – | – |

Related information

- Fuses - in engine compartment (p. 352)
- Fuses - under glovebox (p. 355)
- Fuses - in the control module under the glovebox (p. 357)
- Fuses - in cargo area (p. 359)



Car washing

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo.

Washing by hand

- Remove bird droppings from the paintwork as soon as possible. Bird droppings contain chemicals that affect and discolour paintwork very quickly. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended for the removal of any discoloration.
- Hose down the underbody.
- Rinse the entire car until the dissolved dirt has been removed so as to reduce the risk of scratches from washing. Do not spray directly onto the locks.
- If necessary, use cold degreasing agent on very dirty surfaces. Note that in this case, the surfaces must not be hot from the sun!
- Wash using a sponge, car shampoo and plenty of lukewarm water.
- Clean the wiper blades with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo.
- Dry the car using a clean, soft chamois or a water scraper. If you avoid allowing drops of water to dry in strong sunlight, you reduce the risk of water drying stains which may need to be polished out.

WARNING

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

IMPORTANT

Dirty headlamps have impaired functionality. Clean them regularly, when refuelling for example.

Do not use any corrosive cleaning agents but use water and a non-scratching sponge instead.

NOTE

Outside lighting such as headlamps, fog lamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

Wiper blades

Asphalt, dust and salt residue on wiper blades, as well as insects, ice etc. on the windscreen, impair the service life of wiper blades.

For cleaning:

- Set the wiper blades to the service position, see Wiper blades (p. 344).

NOTE

Wash the wiper blades and windscreen regularly with lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo. Do not use any strong solvents.

Automatic car washes

An automatic car wash is a simple and quick way of washing the car, but it cannot reach everywhere. Handwashing the car is recommended for achieving optimum results.

NOTE

The car must only be washed by hand over the first few months. This is because the paint is more delicate when it is new.

High-pressure washing

When using high-pressure washing, use sweeping movements and make sure that the nozzle does not come closer than 30 cm to the surface of the car (the distance applies to all exterior parts). Do not spray directly onto the locks.



Testing the brakes

WARNING

Always test the brakes after washing the car, including the parking brake, to ensure that moisture and corrosion do not attack the brake linings and reduce braking performance.

Lightly depress the brake pedal now and then when driving long distances in rain or slush. The heat from the friction causes the brake linings to warm up and dry. Do the same thing after starting in very damp or cold weather.

Exterior plastic, rubber and trim components

A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers is recommended for the cleaning and care of coloured plastic parts, rubber and trim components, such as glossy trim mouldings. When using such a cleaning agent the instructions must be followed carefully.

IMPORTANT

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

Rims

Only use rim cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.

Strong rim cleaning agents can damage the surface and cause stains on chrome-plated aluminium rims.

Related information

- Polishing and waxing (p. 366)
- Cleaning the interior (p. 367)
- Water and dirt-repellent coating (p. 367)

Polishing and waxing

Polish and wax the car if the paintwork is dull or to give the paintwork extra protection.

The car does not need to be polished until it is at least one year old. However, the car can be waxed during this time. Do not polish or wax the car in direct sunlight.

Wash and dry the car thoroughly before you begin polishing or waxing. Clean off asphalt and tar stains using tar remover or white spirit. More stubborn stains can be removed using fine rubbing paste designed for car paintwork.

Polish first with a polish and then wax with liquid or solid wax. Follow the instructions on the packaging carefully. Many preparations contain both polish and wax.

IMPORTANT

Only paint treatment recommended by Volvo should be used. Other treatment such as preserving, sealing, protection, lustre sealing or similar could damage the paintwork. Paintwork damage caused by such treatments is not covered by Volvo warranty.

Related information

- Car washing (p. 365)



Water and dirt-repellent coating

The windows are treated with a surface coating that improves visibility in difficult weather conditions.

Water and dirt-repellent coating*



There is natural wear of the water-repellent coating.

Maintenance:

- Never use products such as car wax, degreaser or similar on glass surfaces as this could ruin their water-repellent properties.
- Take care when cleaning so as not to damage the glass surface.
- To avoid damaging glass surfaces when removing ice – only use plastic ice scrapers.
- Treatment with a special finishing agent available from Volvo dealers is recommended in order to maintain the water-repellent properties. This should be used first after three years and then each year.



IMPORTANT

Do not use a metal ice scraper to remove ice from the windows. Use the heating to remove ice from the door mirrors, see Windows and rearview and door mirrors - heating (p. 99).

Related information

- Car washing (p. 365)

Rustproofing

The car received a thorough and complete rustproofing at the factory. Parts of the body are made of galvanised sheet metal. The underbody is protected by a wear-resistant anti-corrosion compound. A thin, penetrating rustproofing fluid was sprayed into the exposed members, cavities, closed sections and side doors.

Inspection and maintenance

Dirt and road salt can lead to corrosion so it is important to keep the car clean. The car's rustproofing needs to be checked regularly and touched-up if necessary in order for it to be maintained.

Under normal conditions the rustproofing does not require treatment for approximately 12 years. After this period, it should be treated at three-year intervals. Volvo recommends that you engage an authorised Volvo workshop for assistance if the car needs further treatment.

Related information

- Paint damage (p. 369)

Cleaning the interior

Only use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly and follow the instructions included with the car care product.

Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Carpets and cargo area

Remove inlay carpets for separate cleaning of the floor carpet and the inlay carpets. Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust and dirt. Each inlay mat is secured with pins.

Take hold of the inlay mat at each pin and lift the mat straight up.

Fit the inlay mat in place by pressing it in at each pin.



WARNING

Before setting off check that the inlay mat in the driver area is firmly affixed and secured in the bosses in order to avoid getting caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

A special textile cleaner is recommended for stains on the floor mat after vacuuming. Floor mats should be cleaned with agents recommended by your Volvo dealer.

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.



Stains on fabric upholstery and roof upholstery

A special fabric cleaning agent, available from authorised Volvo dealers, is recommended to avoid impairing the fire retardant qualities of the upholstery.

IMPORTANT

Sharp objects and Velcro may damage the fabric upholstery.

Stains on leather upholstery

Volvo's leather upholstery is treated to preserve its original appearance.

Leather upholstery ages and acquires a beautiful patina over time. The leather is refined and processed so that it retains its natural characteristics. It is given a protective coating, but regular cleaning is required in order to maintain both characteristics and appearance. Volvo offers a comprehensive product for the cleaning and treatment of leather upholstery which, when used in accordance with the instructions, preserves the leather's protective coating. After a period of use the natural appearance of the leather will nevertheless emerge, depending more or less on the surface texture of the leather. This is a natural maturing of the leather and shows that it is a natural product.

To achieve best results Volvo recommends cleaning and the application of protective cream once to four times per year (or more if necessary). The Volvo Leather Care kit is available from your Volvo dealer.

IMPORTANT

- Certain items of coloured clothing (for example, jeans and suede garments) may stain the upholstery.
- Never use strong solvents. Such products may damage fabric, vinyl and leather upholstery.

Washing instructions for leather upholstery

1. Pour the leather cleaner on the dampened sponge and squeeze out a strong foam.
2. Work the dirt away with gentle circular movements.
3. Dab accurately with the sponge on the stains. Allow the sponge to absorb the stain. Do not rub.
4. Wipe off with soft paper or a cloth and allow the leather to dry completely.

Protective treatment of leather upholstery

1. Pour a small amount of the protective cream on the felted cloth and massage in a thin layer of cream with gentle circular movements on the leather.
2. Allow the leather to dry for 20 minutes before use.

The leather has now been given improved protection against stains and improved UV protection.

Washing instructions for the leather steering wheel

- Remove dirt and dust with a soft pre-moistened sponge and neutral soap.
- Leather needs to breathe. Never cover the leather steering wheel with protective plastic.
- Use natural oils. Volvo's leather care agents are recommended for best results.

If the steering wheel has stains:

Group 1 (ink, wine, coffee, milk, sweat and blood)

- Use a soft cloth or sponge. Mix a 5% ammonia solution. (For blood stains, use a solution of 2 dl water and 25g salt.)

Group 2 (fats, oils, sauces and chocolate)

1. Same procedure as for group 1.
2. Polish with an absorbent paper or cloth.



Group 3 (dry dirt, dust)

1. Use a soft brush to remove the dirt.
2. Same procedure as for group 1.

Stains on interior plastic parts, metal parts and wood parts

A fibrillated fibre or microfibre cloth, lightly moistened with water, available from Volvo dealers, is recommended for cleaning interior parts and surfaces.

Do not scrape or rub stains. Never use strong stain removers. A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers can be used for more difficult cleaning.

Seatbelts

Use water and a synthetic detergent. A special textile cleaning agent is available from your Volvo dealer. Make sure the seatbelt is dry before allowing it to retract.

Related information

- Car washing (p. 365)

Paint damage

Paint is an important part of the car's rust-proofing and should therefore be checked regularly. The most common types of paintwork damage are stone chips, scratches, and marks on the edges of wings, doors and bumpers.

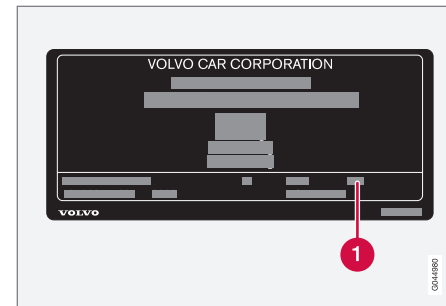
Touching up minor paintwork damage

To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately.

Materials

- primer⁶ - a special adhesive primer in a spray can is available for e.g. plastic-coated bumpers
- basecoat and clearcoat - available in spray cans or as touch-up pens/sticks⁷
- masking tape
- fine sand paper⁶.

Colour code



- 1 Code for the car's colour

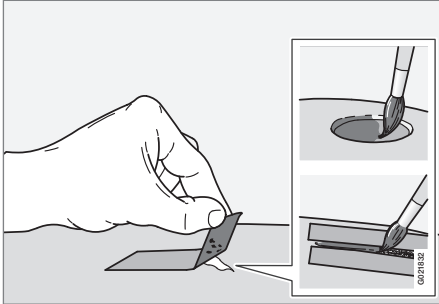
It is important that the correct colour is used. For product label location, see Type designations (p. 372).

⁶ If required.

⁷ Follow the instructions that are included with the package for the touch-up pen/stick.



Repair minor paintwork damage such as stone chips and scratches



Before work is begun, the car must be clean and dry and at a temperature above 15 °C.

1. Apply a piece of masking tape over the damaged surface. Then remove the tape to remove any loose paint.

If the damage is down to the metal, use of a primer is appropriate. In the event of damage to a plastic surface, an adhesive primer should be used to give better results - spray into the lid of the spray can and brush on thinly.

2. Before painting, gentle polishing using a very fine polishing agent may be carried out locally if required (e.g. if there are any uneven edges). The surface is cleaned thoroughly and left to dry.

3. Stir the primer well and apply using a fine brush, a matchstick or similar. Finish off with a basecoat and clearcoat once the primer has dried.
4. For scratches, proceed as above, but mask around the damaged area to protect the undamaged paintwork.



NOTE

If the stone chip has not penetrated down to the metal and an undamaged layer of paint remains in place, fill in with base coat and clear coat as soon as the surface has been cleaned.

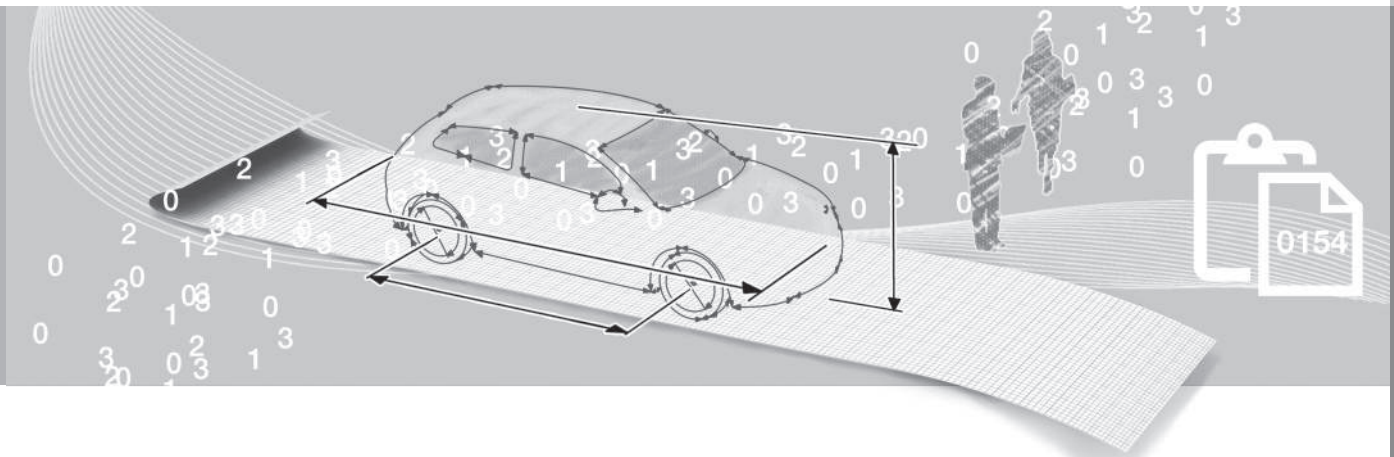
Related information

- Rustproofing (p. 367)

11

SPECIFICATIONS

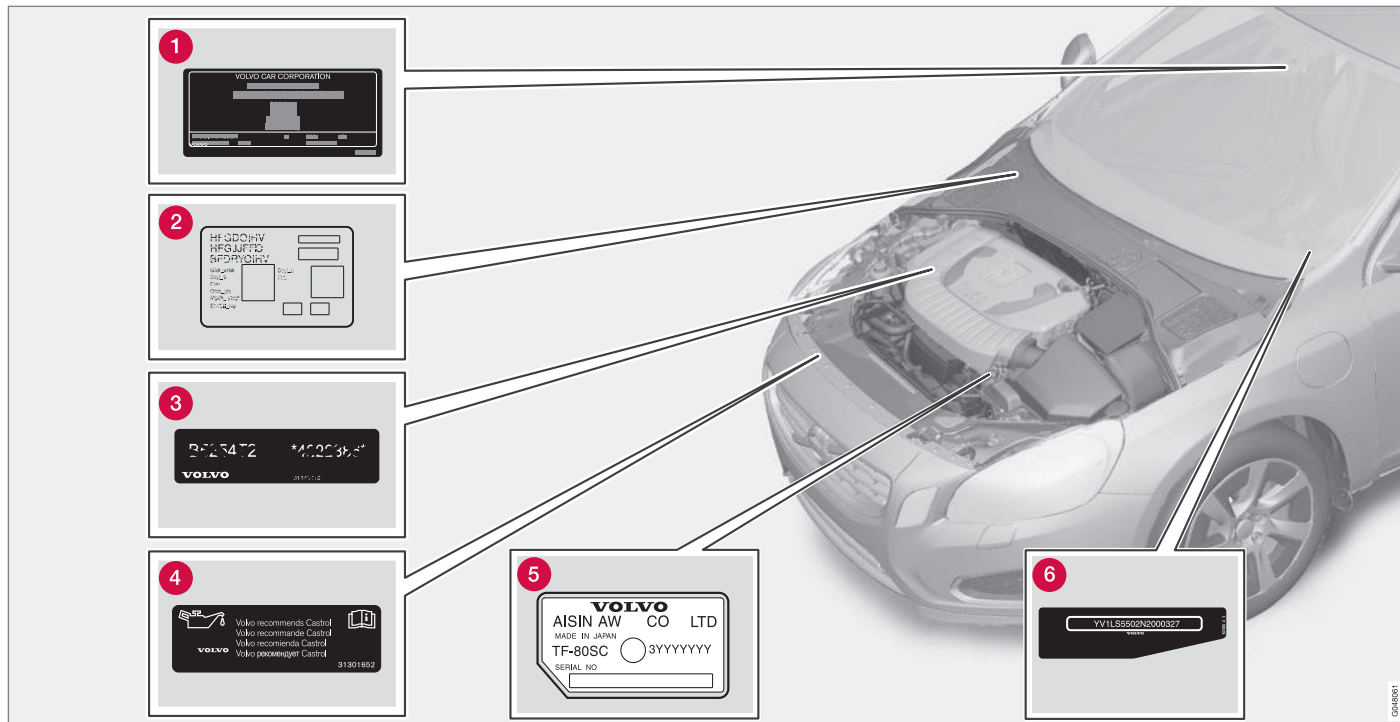
01 10
00 11



Type designations

Type designation, vehicle identification number, etc., i.e. information unique to the car, can be read on a label in the car.

Label location



Knowing the car's type designation, vehicle identification and engine numbers can facilitate all contact with an authorised Volvo

dealer regarding the car and when ordering spare parts and accessories.

1 Type designation, vehicle identification number, maximum permissible weights, codes for colour and upholstery and type

11 Specifications



approval number. The label is visible when the right rear door is opened.

- 2 Label for parking heater.
- 3 Engine code and engine serial number.
- 4 Label for engine oil.
- 5 Gearbox type designation and serial number.
- 6 Car's identification number. (VIN Vehicle Identification Number)

Further information on the car is presented in the registration document.



NOTE

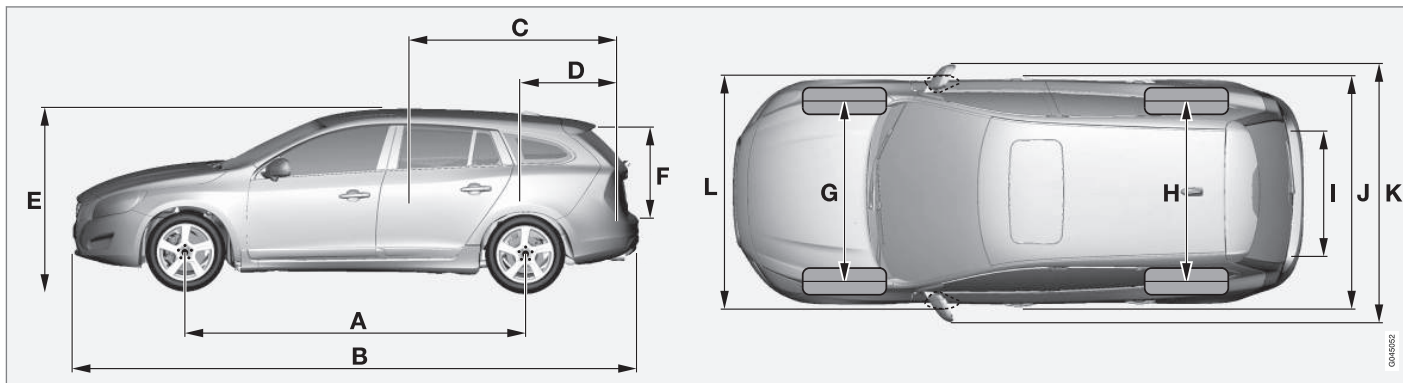
It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your particular car is available on the respective decals for your car.

Related information

- Weights (p. 376)
- Engine specifications (p. 378)

Dimensions

Measurement of car length, height, etc. can be read in the table.



| | Dimensions | mm |
|---|--------------------------------------|------|
| A | Wheelbase | 2776 |
| B | Length | 4635 |
| C | Load length, floor, folded rear seat | 1749 |
| D | Load length, floor | 978 |
| E | Height | 1484 |
| F | Load height | 658 |
| G | Front track | 1578 |

| | Dimensions | mm |
|---|----------------------------------------|------|
| H | Rear track | 1575 |
| I | Load width, floor | 1082 |
| J | Width | 1865 |
| K | Width including door mirrors | 2097 |
| L | Width including folded-in door mirrors | 1899 |

Weights

Max. gross vehicle weight, etc. can be read on a label in the car.

Kerb weight includes the driver, the fuel tank 90% full and all fluids.

The weight of passengers and accessories, and towball load (p. 377) (when a trailer is hitched) influence the load capacity and are not included in the kerb weight.

Permitted max. load = Gross vehicle weight - Kerb weight.

NOTE

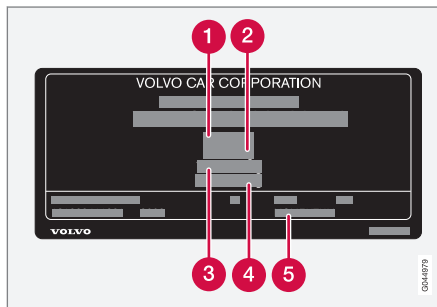
The documented kerb weight applies to cars in the standard version - i.e. a car without extra equipment or accessories. This means that for every accessory added the loading capacity of the car is reduced correspondingly by the weight of the accessory.

Examples of accessories that reduce loading capacity are the Kinetic/Momentum/Summum equipment levels, as well as other accessories such as Towbar, Load carriers, Space box, Audio system, Auxiliary lamps, GPS, Fuel-driven heater, Safety grille, Carpets, Cargo cover, Power seats, etc.

Weighing the car is a certain way of ascertaining the kerb weight of your own particular car.

WARNING

The car's driving characteristics change depending on how heavily it is loaded and how the load is distributed.



For information on label location, see Type designations (p. 372).

- 1 Max. gross vehicle weight
- 2 Max. train weight (car+trailer)
- 3 Max. front axle load
- 4 Max. rear axle load
- 5 Equipment level

Max. load: See registration document.

Max. roof load: 75 kg.

Related information

- Towing capacity and towball load (p. 377)

Towing capacity and towball load

Towing capacity and towball load for driving with a trailer can be read in the tables.

Max. weight braked trailer

| Engine | Engine code ^A | Gearbox | Max. weight braked trailer (kg) | Max. towball load (kg) |
|--------|--------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| D6 AWD | D82PHEV | Automatic, TF-80SD | 1800 | 90 |

^A Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine; see Type designations (p. 372).

Max. weight unbraked trailer

| Max. weight unbraked trailer (kg) | Max. towball load (kg) |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|
| 750 | 50 |

Related information

- Weights (p. 376)
- Driving with a trailer (p. 296)
- Trailer stabiliser - TSA (p. 301)

Engine specifications

Engine specifications (output etc.) for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

Diesel engine

| Engine | Engine code ^A | Output (kW/rpm) | Output (hp/rpm) | Torque (Nm/rpm) | No. of cylinders | Bore (mm) | Stroke (mm) | Swept volume (litres) | Compression ratio |
|--------|--------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| D6 AWD | D82PHEV | 158/4000 | 215/4000 | 440/1500-3000 | 5 | 81.0 | 93.15 | 2.400 | 16.5:1 |

^A Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine; see Type designations (p. 372).

Related information

- Coolant - grade and volume (p. 382)
- Engine oil - grade and volume (p. 381)

Motor specifications - Electric drive motor

V60 PLUG-IN HYBRID is driven both by a diesel engine and an electric drive motor (ERAD – Electric Rear Axle Drive).

Max. power output: 50 kW (70 hp).

Torque: 200 Nm.

Related information

- Engine specifications (p. 378)

Engine oil - adverse driving conditions

Adverse driving conditions can lead to abnormally high oil temperature or oil consumption. Below are some examples of adverse driving conditions.

Check the oil level (p. 333) more frequently for long journeys:

- towing a caravan or trailer
- in mountainous regions
- at high speeds
- in temperatures colder than -30 °C or hotter than +40 °C.

The above also apply to shorter driving distances at low temperatures.

Choose a fully synthetic engine oil for adverse driving conditions. It provides extra protection for the engine.

Volvo recommends:



0006460



IMPORTANT

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise you will risk affecting service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

Volvo Car Corporation disclaims all warranty liability if engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

**Related information**

- Engine oil - grade and volume (p. 381)
- Engine oil - general (p. 332)

Engine oil - grade and volume

Engine oil grade and volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

Volvo recommends:



| Engine | Engine code ^A | Oil grade | Volume, incl. oil filter (litres) |
|--------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| D6 AWD | D82PHEV | Oil grade: ACEA A5/B5 Viscosity: SAE 0W-30 | approx. 5.9 |

^A Engine code, component and serial number can be read on the engine; see Type designations (p. 372).

Related information

- Engine oil - adverse driving conditions (p. 379)
- Engine oil - checking and filling (p. 333)

Coolant - grade and volume

Approved coolant volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

Prescribed grade: Coolant recommended by Volvo mixed with 50% water², see the packaging.

| Engine | Volume (litres) |
|--------|-----------------|
| D6 AWD | 12.9 |

Related information

- Coolant - level (p. 334)

² Water quality must fulfil the standard STD 1285.1.

Transmission fluid - grade and volume

The prescribed transmission fluid and volume for each respective gearbox alternative can be read in the table.

Manual gearbox**NOTE**

Under normal driving conditions, the gearbox oil does not need to be changed during its service life. However, it may be necessary under adverse driving conditions.

Automatic gearbox

| Automatic gearbox | Volume (litres) | Prescribed transmission fluid |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| TF-80SD | approx. 7.0 | AW1 |

NOTE

Under normal driving conditions, the gearbox oil does not need to be changed during its service life. However, it may be necessary under adverse driving conditions.

Related information

- Engine oil - adverse driving conditions (p. 379)
- Type designations (p. 372)

Brake fluid - grade and volume

The medium in a hydraulic brake system is called brake fluid, and it is used to transfer force from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder to one or more slave cylinders, which in turn act on a mechanical brake.

Prescribed grade: DOT 4

Volume: 0.6 litres

Related information

- Brake and clutch fluid - level (p. 335)

Power steering fluid - grade

Power steering fluid is the denomination of the medium used in the car's power steering system.

Prescribed grade: WSS M2C204-A2 or equivalent product.

Related information

- Power steering fluid - level (p. 336)

Washer fluid - quality and volume

Washer fluid is used, together with windscreen and rear window wipers (p. 93) to keep the car's windows and headlamps clean and ensure visibility when driving.

Prescribed grade: Washer fluid recommended by Volvo - with frost protection during cold weather and below freezing point.

Volume:

- Cars **with** headlamp washing: 3.4 litres.
- Cars **without** headlamp washing: 3.4 litres.

Related information

- Washer fluid - filling (p. 346)
- Wiper blades (p. 344)

Fuel tank - volume

Fuel tank volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

| Engine | Volume (litres) | Prescribed grade |
|--------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| D6 AWD | approx 45 | Diesel: Fuel - diesel (p. 282) |




Related information





- Filling up with fuel (p. 281)
- Engine specifications (p. 378)

Fuel consumption and CO2 emissions

Fuel consumption in a vehicle is measured in litres per 100 km and CO2 emissions in grams per km.

Explanation

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
|  CO ₂ | gram/km |
|  | litre/100 km |
|  | combined driving |

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  |  |  |  |
| D6 AWD (D82PHEV) | aut | 48 | 1.8 |

Fuel consumption and emission values in the table above are based on specific EU cycles³, that apply to cars with kerb weight in the basic version and without extra equipment. The car's weight may increase depending on equipment. This, as well as how heavily the

car is loaded, increases fuel consumption and carbon dioxide emissions.

There are several reasons for increased fuel consumption compared with the table's values. Examples of this are:

- The driver's driving style.
- If the customer has specified wheels larger than those fitted as standard on the model's basic version, then resistance increases.
- High speed results in increased wind resistance.
- Fuel quality, road and traffic conditions, weather and the condition of the car.

Even a combination of the above-mentioned examples can result in significantly improved consumption. For further information, please refer to the regulations referred to³.

Large deviations in fuel consumption may arise in a comparison with the EU driving cycles³ which are used in the certification of the car and on which the consumption figures in the table are based.

NOTE

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes in combination with fuel grade are factors that could affect the car's performance.

Related information

- Economical driving (p. 285)
- Weights (p. 376)

³ Official fuel consumption figures are based on two standardised driving cycles in a laboratory environment ("EU driving cycles") all in accordance with EU Regulation no 692/2008 and 715/2007 (Euro 5) / Euro 6 and UN ECE Regulation no 101. The regulations cover the driving cycles for urban driving and extra-urban driving. - Urban driving - the measurement starts with cold starting the engine. The driving is simulated. - Extra-urban driving - the car is accelerated and braked at speeds between 0 and 120 km/h. The driving is simulated. - The combined driving value given in the table is a combination of urban driving and extra-urban driving, in accordance with applicable legislation. CO₂ emissions - the exhaust gases are collected in order to calculate the carbon dioxide emissions during the two driving cycles. These are then analysed and give the value for CO₂ emissions.

Tyres - approved tyre pressures

Approved tyre pressures for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

| Engine | Tyre size | Speed (km/h) | Load, 1 - 3 persons | | Max. load | | ECO pressure ^A |
|----------------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| | | | Front (kPa) ^B | Rear (kPa) | Front (kPa) | Rear (kPa) | Front/rear (kPa) |
| D6 AWD (D82PHEV) | 235/45 R 17 | 0 – 160 | 280 | 280 | 280 | 280 | 280 |
| | 235/45 R 18 | 160 + | 280 | 280 | 320 | 320 | – |
| Temporary Spare Tyre | | max. 80 | 420 | 420 | 420 | 420 | 420 |

^A Economical driving.

^B In certain countries there is the "bar" unit beside the SI unit "Pascal": 1 bar = 100 kPa.

Related information

- Tyres - dimensions (p. 311)
- Tyres - air pressure (p. 316)
- Type designations (p. 372)

Electrical system

The electrical system is single-pole and uses the chassis and engine casing as a conductor.

The car has a voltage-regulated AC alternator.

Starter battery capacity is dependent upon the equipment level in the car.

IMPORTANT

If the battery is replaced, take care to replace it with a battery with the same cold starting capacity and reserve capacity as the original battery (see the label on the battery).

Related information

- Starter battery - specification (p. 388)
- Starter battery - replacement (p. 348)
- Battery (p. 346)

Starter battery - specification

The starter battery is used to drive the starter motor and other electrical equipment in the car.

Voltage: 12 V.

Cold start capacity, CCA - Cold Cranking Amperes: 700-800 A.

Reserve capacity: 135-160 minutes.

IMPORTANT

If the battery is replaced, take care to replace it with a battery with the same cold starting capacity and reserve capacity as the original battery (see the label on the battery).

NOTE

- The starter battery's container size should be consistent with the original battery's dimensions.
- The starter battery's height is different depending on size.

Related information

- Starter battery - replacement (p. 348)
- Battery (p. 346)

Hybrid Battery - specification

The hybrid battery (battery for drive motor) is used to power the electric motor when driving in electric mode.

Type: Lithium-ion

Energy quantity: 11.2 kWh.

Service life: Longer than 10 years.

Related information

- Charging the hybrid battery (p. 286)
- Charging the hybrid battery - preparations (p. 288)

Range - specification

The car's range during electric operation (drive mode PURE): up to 50 km.

Type approval - remote control key system

Type approval for the remote control key system can be read in the table.

Lock system, standard

| Country/Area | |
|--------------|--|
| EU | |

Keyless lock system (Keyless drive)

| Country/Area | |
|--------------|--|
| EU | |

Related information

- Remote control key with key blade (p. 152)

Type approval - radar system

Type approval for the radar system can be read in the table.

| Country/Area | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Europe | Delphi Electronics & Safety hereby declares that L2C0038TR and L2C0049TR are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. This declaration of conformity may, if necessary, be consulted with Delphi Electronics & Safety / One Corporate Center / Kokomo, Indiana 46904-9005 USA. |

Related information

- Radar sensor (p. 199)

11

Type approval - Bluetooth®

Type approval for Bluetooth® can be read in the table.

Declaration of Conformity (Declaration of Conformity)

Country/ Area

Countries in the EU:



Exporting country: Japan

Manufacturer: Alpine Electronics Inc.

Type of equipment: **Bluetooth®** device

For further information visit <http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/rtte/faq.htm> #informing

11

ALPINE

ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.
20-1 Yotsuba-Koginoshicho, Iwaki-shi Fukushima 970-1192 Japan
Phone: (81)246-364111 Fax: (81)246-364000

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

We, **Alpine Electronics, Inc.**,
20-1 Yotsuba-Koginoshicho, Iwaki-shi Fukushima 970-1192 Japan
declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product : **Bluetooth Module**
Model/Type : **ISM2.1 BT PWB E13**

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC).
The product is in conformity with the following standards:

RADIO : EN 300 328 V1.7.1 (2006-10)
EN 301 489-17 V2.1.1 (2006-05)
EMC : EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1 (2008-04)
ISO7637-2: 2004

SAFETY : IEC 60965 P&T: 2001 + Amend.1: 2005
EN60965: 2002 + Amend.1: 2006 + Amend.2: 2010

CE

Date : April 4, 2012

Signature: *Isamu Takaku*

Name : Isamu Takaku

ALPINE

ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.
20-1 Yotsuba-Koginoshicho, Iwaki-shi Fukushima 970-1192 Japan
Phone: (81)246-364111 Fax: (81)246-364000

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

We, **Alpine Electronics, Inc.**,
20-1 Yotsuba-Koginoshicho, Iwaki-shi Fukushima 970-1192 Japan
declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product : **Bluetooth Module**
Model/Type : **ISM2.1 BT PWB E14**

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC).
The product is in conformity with the following standards:

RADIO : EN 300 328 V1.7.1 (2006-10)
EN 301 489-17 V2.1.1 (2006-05)
EMC : EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1 (2008-04)
ISO7637-2: 2004

SAFETY : IEC 60965 P&T: 2001 + Amend.1: 2005
EN60965: 2002 + Amend.1: 2006 + Amend.2: 2010

CE

Date : April 4, 2012

Signature: *Isamu Takaku*

Name : Isamu Takaku

G047266



| Country/ Area | |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Czech Republic: | Alpine Electronics, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že tento Bluetooth ® Module je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES. |
| Denmark: | Undertegnede Alpine Electronics, Inc. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr Bluetooth ® Module overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF. |
| Germany: | Hiermit erklärt Alpine Electronics, Inc., dass sich das Gerät Bluetooth ® Module in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet. |
| Estonia: | Käesolevaga kinnitab Alpine Electronics, Inc. seadme Bluetooth ® Module vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele. |
| UK | Hereby, Alpine Electronics, Inc., declares that this Bluetooth ® Module is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. |
| Spain: | Por medio de la presente Alpine Electronics, Inc. declara que el Bluetooth ® Module cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE. |
| Greece: | ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Alpine Electronics, Inc. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ Bluetooth ® Module ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/EK. |
| France: | Par la présente Alpine Electronics, Inc. déclare que l'appareil Bluetooth ® Module est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE. |
| Italy: | Con la presente Alpine Electronics, Inc. dichiara che questo Bluetooth ® Module è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE. |
| Latvia: | Ar šo Alpine Electronics, Inc. deklarē, ka Bluetooth ® Module atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem. |
| Lithuania: | Šiuo Alpine Electronics, Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis Bluetooth ® Module atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas. |

| Country/ Area | |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Netherlands: | Hierbij verklaart Alpine Electronics, Inc. dat het toestel Bluetooth ® Module in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG. |
| Malta: | Hawnhekk, Alpine Electronics, Inc., jiddikjara li dan Bluetooth ® Module jikkonforma mal-ftigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC. |
| Hungary: | Alulírott, Alpine Electronics, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a Bluetooth ® Module megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak. |
| Poland: | Niniejszym Alpine Electronics, Inc. oświadcza, że Bluetooth ® Module jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC. |
| Portugal: | Alpine Electronics, Inc. declara que este Bluetooth ® Module está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE. |
| Slovenia: | Alpine Electronics, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta Bluetooth ® Module v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES. |
| Slovakia: | Alpine Electronics, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že Bluetooth ® Module spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES. |
| Finland: | Alpine Electronics, Inc. vakuuttaa täten että Bluetooth ® Module tyypinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen. |
| Sweden: | Härmed intygar Alpine Electronics, Inc. att denna Bluetooth ® Module står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG. |
| Iceland: | Alpine Electronics, Inc. hereby certifies that this Bluetooth ® Module conforms to the essential characteristic requirements and other relevant regulations of directive 1999/5/EC. |
| Norway: | Alpine Electronics, Inc. erklærer herved at utstyret Bluetooth ® Module er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF. |

Licenses

Sensus software

This software uses parts of sources from clib2 and Prex Embedded Real-time OS - Source (Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994), and Quercus Robusta (Copyright (c) 1990, 1993), The Regents of the University of California. All or some portions are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the <ORGANIZATION> nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES,

INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

This software uses parts of sources from "libtess". The Original Code is: OpenGL Sample Implementation, Version 1.2.1, released January 26, 2000, developed by Silicon Graphics, Inc. The Original Code is Copyright (c) 1991-2000 Silicon Graphics, Inc. Copyright in any portions created by third parties is as indicated elsewhere herein. All Rights Reserved. Copyright (C) [1991-2000] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this

software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to <http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/> shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

This software is based in parts on the work of the FreeType Team.

This software uses parts of SSLeay Library: Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved

Combined Instrument Panel Software Open Source Software Notice

This product uses certain free / open source and other software originating from third parties, that is subject to the GNU General Public License version 2 and 3 (GPLv2/ GPLv3), GNU Lesser General Public License version 3 (LGPLv3), The FreeType Project License ("FreeType License") and other different and/or additional copyright licenses, disclaimers and notices. The links how to access the exact terms of GPLv2, GPLv3, LGPLv3, and the other open source software licenses, disclaimers, acknowledgements and notices are provided to you below. Please refer to the exact terms of the relevant License, regarding your rights under said licenses. Volvo Car Corporation (VCC) offers to provide the source code of said free/open source software to you for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution, such as the cost of media, shipping and handling, upon written request. Please contact your nearest Volvo Dealer.

This offer is valid for a period of at least three (3) years from the date of the distribution of

this product by VCC / or for as long as VCC offers spare parts or customer support.

Portions of this product uses software copyrighted © v2.4.3/2010 The FreeTypeProject (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

This product includes software under following licenses:

GPL v2 : <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/gpl-2.0.html>

- Linux kernel (merge between MontaVista 2.6.31 kernel and kernel from L2.6.31_MX51_ER_1007 BSP)
- uBoot (based on v2009.08)
- busybox (based on version 1.13.2.)

GCC runtime library exception: <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gcc-exception.html>

- libgcc_s.so.1

LGPL v3: <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html>

- Libc.so.6, libpthread.so.0, Librt.so.1

The FreeType Project License: <http://www.freetype.org/FTL.TXT>

- libfreetype.so.6 (version 2.4.3)

Linux software

This product contains software licensed under GNU General Public License (GPL) or

GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

You have the right of acquisition, modification, and distribution of the source code of the GPL/LGPL software.

You may download Source Code from the following website at no charge: http://www.embedded-carmultimedia.jp/linux/oss/download/TVM_8351_013

The website provides the Source Code "As Is" and without warranty of any kind.

By downloading Source Code, you expressly assume all risk and liability associated with downloading and using the Source Code and complying with the user agreements that accompany each Source Code.

Please note that we cannot respond to any inquiries regarding the source code.

DivX®



DivX Certified® to play DivX® video. DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are



registered trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license. ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, Inc. This is an official DivX Certified device that plays DivX video. Visit www.divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) content. To generate the registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in the device setup menu. Go to <http://vod.divx.com> with this code to complete the registration process and learn more about DivX VOD. Covered by one or more of the following U.S. Patents: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 7,519,274.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement

This program or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California, USA ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote ("Gracenote software") activates this program to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track and title ("Gracenote data") from online servers or embedded databases (together called "Gracenote servers") and in order to perform other actions. You may only use Gracenote data in accord-

ance with the intended end-user functions for this program or this device.

You agree to only use Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers for your own personal non-commercial use. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit this Gracenote software or any Gracenote data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED IN THIS AGREEMENT.

You agree that your non-exclusive right to use Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers will be terminated if you violate these restrictions. If your license is terminated you agree to cease all use of Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers. Gracenote holds exclusive rights to all Gracenote data, all Gracenote software and all Gracenote servers, including all ownership rights. Gracenote will under no circumstances have any obligation to pay you for any information you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce the company's rights under this agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track enquiries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to enable the Gracenote service to count enquiries without knowing anything

about who you are. Additional information is available on the web page for Gracenote's privacy policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote software and everything included in Gracenote data are licensed to you "as is". Gracenote provides no undertakings or warranties, express or implied, as to the accuracy of the Gracenote data contained in the Gracenote servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote servers or to change data categories for any reason that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is provided that the Gracenote software or Gracenote servers are fault-free or that the Gracenote software or Gracenote servers will operate without interruption. Gracenote has no obligation to provide you with new, improved or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future, and the company reserves the right to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. GRACENOTE DOES NOT GUARANTEE THE RESULTS OBTAINED THROUGH YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR A GRACENOTE SERVER. GRACENOTE WILL IN NO EVENT BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSE-

QUENTIAL DAMAGE OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR REVENUES.


© Gracernote, Inc. 2009


Related information

- Volvo Sensus (p. 72)




Symbols in the display




There are a variety of different symbols in the display in the car. The symbols are divided into warning, indicator and information symbols. Shown below are the most common symbols with their meanings and a reference to where in the manual further information can be found.

 - Red warning symbol, illuminates when a fault has been indicated which could affect the safety and/or driveability of the car. An explanatory text is shown in the combined instrument panel at the same time.








 - Information symbol, illuminates in combination with text in the combined instrument panel, when a deviation in any of the car's systems has occurred. The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.

Warning symbols in the combined instrument panel

| Symbol | Specification | See |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
|  | Parking brake applied | (p. 69), (p. 272) |
|  | Airbags – SRS | (p. 31), (p. 69) |
|  | Seatbelt reminder | (p. 27), (p. 69) |

| Symbol | Specification | See |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
|  | Starter battery not charging | (p. 69) |
|  | Fault in brake system | (p. 69), (p. 269) |
|  | Warning, safety mode | (p. 31), (p. 40), (p. 69) |

Control symbols in the combined instrument panel

| Symbol | Specification | See |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
|  | ABL fault* | (p. 68), (p. 87) |
|  | Emissions system | (p. 68) |
|  | ABS fault | (p. 68), (p. 269) |
|  | Rear fog lamp on | (p. 68), (p. 88) |
|  | Stability system, DSTC, Trailer stability assist* | (p. 68), (p. 180), (p. 301) |
|  | Stability system, sport mode | (p. 68), (p. 180) |
|  | Engine preheater (diesel) | (p. 68) |

* Option/accessory, for more information, see Introduction.

11 Specifications






| Symbol | Specification | See |
|--------|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| | Low level in fuel tank | (p. 68), (p. 135) |
| | Information, read display text | (p. 68) |
| | Main beam On | (p. 68), (p. 84) |
| | Left-hand direction indicators | (p. 68) |
| | Right-hand direction indicators | (p. 68) |

Information symbols in the combined instrument panel




| Symbol | Specification | See |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| | Active high beam, AHB (Active High Beam)* | (p. 85) |
| | Camera sensor* | (p. 85) |
| | Adaptive cruise control* | (p. 202) |
| | Adaptive cruise control*, Distance Warning* (Distance Alert) | (p. 194), (p. 204) |

| Symbol | Specification | See |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| | Adaptive cruise control*, time interval | (p. 190), (p. 192) |
| | Cruise control* | (p. 187) |
| | Radar sensor* | (p. 202), (p. 206), (p. 224) |
| | Foot brake | (p. 269) |
| | Speed limiter | (p. 184) |
| | Camera sensor*, Laser sensor* | (p. 213), (p. 224), (p. 228), (p. 233) |
| | Auto Brake*, Distance Warning* (Distance Alert), City Safety™, Collision warning system* | (p. 206), (p. 213), (p. 224) |
| | Engine block and passenger compartment heater* | (p. 135) |

| Symbol | Specification | See |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| | Activated timer* | (p. 135) |
| | ABL system* | (p. 87) |
| | Fuel filler flap, right-hand side | (p. 280) |
| | Low battery | (p. 135) |
| | Parking brake | (p. 272) |
| | Rain sensor* | (p. 93) |
| | Driver Alert System*, Lane Departure Warning* | (p. 228), (p. 233) |
| | Driver Alert System*, Lane Departure Warning* | (p. 233) |
| | Driver Alert System*, Time for a break | (p. 228) |
| | Recorded speed information* | (p. 181) |

| Symbol | Specification | See |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
|  | Parking inside | (p. 130) |
|  | Parking outside | (p. 131) |
|  | Heating the seat | (p. 130), (p. 131) |

Information symbols in the roof console display

| Symbol | Specification | See |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------|
|  | Seatbelt reminder | (p. 30) |
|  | Airbag, passenger seat, activated | (p. 33) |
|  | Airbag, passenger seat, deactivated | (p. 33) |

Related information

- Combined instrument panel - meaning of indicator symbols (p. 68)
- Combined instrument cluster - meaning of warning symbols (p. 69)
- Messages - handling (p. 105)

A

| | |
|------------------------------------------|---------------|
| ACC – Adaptive cruise control..... | 190 |
| Active Bending Lights (ABL)..... | 87 |
| Active high beam..... | 85 |
| Active Xenon headlamps..... | 87 |
| Active Yaw Control..... | 178 |
| Adapting driving characteristics..... | 247 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control..... | 190 |
| change cruise control functionality..... | 198 |
| deactivate..... | 196 |
| fault tracing..... | 201 |
| function..... | 191 |
| managing speed..... | 193 |
| overtaking..... | 196 |
| overview..... | 192 |
| radar sensor..... | 199 |
| setting the time interval..... | 194 |
| standby mode..... | 195 |
| temporary deactivation..... | 195 |
| Adjusting the steering wheel..... | 79 |
| Airbag | |
| activating/deactivating, PACOS..... | 33 |
| driver's side..... | 32, 39 |
| passenger side..... | 32, 33, 39 |
| AIRBAG | 32 |
| Airbag system..... | 31 |
| warning symbol..... | 31 |
| Air cleaning | |
| material..... | 118 |
| passenger compartment.... | 116, 117, 118 |
| Air conditioning..... | 124 |
| Air conditioning system | |
| repair..... | 336 |
| Air distribution..... | 119 |
| Recirculation..... | 125 |
| table..... | 127 |
| Air quality system IAQS..... | 118 |
| Alarm..... | 174, 175, 176 |
| alarm indicator..... | 175 |
| alarm signals..... | 176 |
| automatic re-arming..... | 175 |
| checking the alarm..... | 156 |
| reduced alarm level..... | 176 |
| remote control key not working..... | 175 |
| Alcolock..... | 249 |
| Allergy and asthma inducing substances. | 117 |
| All Wheel Drive, (AWD)..... | 268 |
| All Wheel Drive (AWD)..... | 268 |
| Approach lighting..... | 92, 155 |
| Automatic car washes..... | 365 |
| Automatic gearbox..... | 264 |
| manual gear positions (Geartronic).... | 265 |
| trailer..... | 297 |
| Automatic relocking..... | 167 |

| | |
|---------------------------|-----|
| AWD, All Wheel Drive..... | 268 |
|---------------------------|-----|

B

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| Backrest..... | 75 |
| front seat, lowering..... | 75 |
| Backrest rear seat, lowering..... | 78 |
| Battery..... | 278, 346, 388 |
| jump starting..... | 256 |
| maintenance..... | 346 |
| overload..... | 278 |
| remote control key/PCC..... | 161 |
| specification..... | 388 |
| symbols on the battery..... | 347 |
| warning symbols..... | 347 |
| BLIS..... | 242, 243 |
| Bonnet, opening..... | 330 |
| Booster seat | |
| lowering..... | 49 |
| raising..... | 48 |
| seating position..... | 47 |
| Brake fluid..... | 335 |
| grade and volume..... | 384 |
| Brake light..... | 89 |
| Brakes..... | 269, 271 |
| Anti-lock braking system, ABS..... | 271 |
| brake light..... | 89 |

- brake system..... 269, 271
 Emergency Brake Assistance, EBA ... 271
 emergency brake lights..... 89
 filling brake fluid..... 335
 handbrake..... 272
 symbols in the combined instrument panel..... 270
 Bulbs, see Lighting..... 338
- C**
-
- Camera sensor..... 209, 222
 Car care..... 365
 Car care, leather upholstery..... 368
 Cargo area
 cargo cover..... 150
 coolant..... 350
 lighting..... 91
 mounting points..... 146
 protective net..... 147
 Cargo cover..... 150
 Car upholstery..... 367
 Car washing..... 365
 Catalytic converter..... 284
 Recovery..... 302
 Charge current..... 286
 Charging..... 288
 finish charging..... 294
 start charging..... 293
 Charging cable..... 289
 control unit..... 289
 Checking the engine oil level..... 332
 Children
 child safety locks..... 42
 child seat and airbag..... 47
 child seats and side airbags..... 36
 location in car..... 47
 safety..... 36, 42
 Child safety locks..... 172, 173
 Child seat
 integrated two-stage booster seat..... 47
 Child seats..... 42
 ISOFIX fixture system for child seats... 50
 recommended..... 43
 size classes for child seats with ISO-FIX fixture system..... 51
 types..... 52
 upper mounting points for child seats.. 54
 City Safety™..... 207
 Cleaning
 automatic car wash..... 365
 car washing..... 365
 rims..... 366
 seatbelts..... 369
 upholstery..... 367
 Clean Zone Interior Package (CZIP)..... 117
 Climate control
 actual temperature..... 116
 auto-regulation..... 123
 general..... 115
 personal preferences..... 118
 sensors..... 116
 temperature control..... 124
 Clock, adjustment..... 71
 CO₂ emissions..... 386
 Collision..... 40
 Collision warning..... 214, 215
 Collision warning system
 function..... 215
 general limitations..... 220
 operation..... 219
 Pedestrian detection..... 218
 Radar sensor..... 199, 207
 Collision Warning System with Auto Brake..... 214
 Colour code, paint..... 369
 Combined instrument panel..... 63
 Compass..... 100
 calibration..... 100
 Condensation in headlamps..... 365

| | |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| Controls, lights..... | 81 |
| Control symbols..... | 66 |
| Control unit..... | 292 |
| Control unit display..... | 291 |
| Coolant | |
| volume and grade..... | 382 |
| Coolant, checking and filling | |
| Engine compartment..... | 334 |
| Cooling system..... | 277 |
| overheating..... | 277 |
| Cornering lights..... | 88 |
| Corner Traction Control..... | 178 |
| Crash, see Collision..... | 40 |
| Cruise control..... | 187 |
| deactivate..... | 189 |
| managing speed..... | 188 |
| resume set speed..... | 189 |
| temporary deactivation..... | 188 |
| CTA..... | 244 |
| Cyclist detection..... | 216 |
| CZIP (Clear Zone Interior Package)..... | 117 |

D

| | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| Daytime running lights..... | 83 |
| Deadlock..... | 171 |
| deactivation..... | 171 |
| temporary deactivation..... | 172 |
| Defroster..... | 125 |
| Detachable towbar | |
| storage..... | 298 |
| Diesel..... | 282 |
| run out of fuel..... | 283 |
| Diesel particle filter..... | 284 |
| Dimensions..... | 375 |
| Dipstick, electronic..... | 333 |
| Direction indicator..... | 90 |
| Direction indicators..... | 90 |
| direction of rotation..... | 306 |
| Disengaging the gear selector inhibitor... | 267 |
| Display lighting..... | 82 |
| Distance Warning..... | 204 |
| Limitations..... | 205 |
| Symbols and messages..... | 206 |
| Door mirrors..... | 97 |
| automatic dimming..... | 98 |
| Driver Alert Control..... | 226 |
| operation..... | 227 |

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Driver Alert System..... | 226 |
| Drive systems..... | 257 |
| Driving..... | 279 |
| cooling system..... | 277 |
| with a trailer..... | 296 |
| with the tailgate open..... | 278 |
| Driving in water..... | 277 |
| Driving with a trailer | |
| towball load..... | 377 |
| towing capacity..... | 377 |

E

| | |
|----------------------------------------|-----|
| ECC, electronic climate control..... | 121 |
| EcoGuide..... | 67 |
| Ecolabelling, FSC, owner's manual..... | 21 |
| Economical driving..... | 285 |
| Electrically-driven heater..... | 137 |
| Electrical socket..... | 144 |
| cargo area..... | 147 |
| Electrical system..... | 388 |
| Electric drive motor | |
| specifications..... | 379 |
| Electric parking brake | |
| low battery voltage..... | 272 |
| Electronic climate control - ECC..... | 121 |

| | | | | | |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Emergency equipment | | | | | |
| first aid kit..... | 318 | | | | |
| warning triangle..... | 317 | | | | |
| Emergency puncture repair..... | 318, 319 | | | | |
| action..... | 320 | | | | |
| inflating the tyres..... | 324 | | | | |
| rechecking..... | 323 | | | | |
| Emergency puncture repair kit | | | | | |
| location..... | 319 | | | | |
| overview..... | 320 | | | | |
| sealing fluid..... | 325 | | | | |
| Emissions of carbon dioxide..... | 386 | | | | |
| Engine | | | | | |
| deactivate..... | 255 | | | | |
| overheating..... | 296 | | | | |
| start..... | 254 | | | | |
| Engine compartment | | | | | |
| coolant..... | 334 | | | | |
| oil..... | 332 | | | | |
| overview..... | 330 | | | | |
| power steering fluid..... | 336 | | | | |
| Engine drag control..... | 178 | | | | |
| Engine oil..... | 332, 379 | | | | |
| adverse driving conditions..... | 379 | | | | |
| filter..... | 332 | | | | |
| grade and volume..... | 381 | | | | |
| Engine specifications..... | 378, 379 | | | | |
| Error messages | | | | | |
| Adaptive Cruise Control..... | 202 | | | | |
| Driver Alert Control..... | 228 | | | | |
| Lane Departure Warning..... | 233 | | | | |
| see Messages and symbols..... | 202, 273 | | | | |
| Error messages in BLIS..... | 246 | | | | |
| exhaust gases, toxic, sucked in..... | 278 | | | | |
| External dimensions..... | 375 | | | | |
| F | | | | | |
| Fan | | | | | |
| ECC..... | 123 | | | | |
| Fault tracing for the camera sensor..... | 210 | | | | |
| First aid..... | 318 | | | | |
| First aid kit..... | 318 | | | | |
| Fluids, capacities..... | 382, 383, 384, 385 | | | | |
| Fluids and oils..... | 382, 383, 384 | | | | |
| Fog lamp | | | | | |
| rear..... | 88 | | | | |
| Foot brake..... | 269, 271 | | | | |
| FSC, ecolabelling..... | 21 | | | | |
| Fuel..... | 282 | | | | |
| fuel consumption..... | 386 | | | | |
| fuel economy..... | 316 | | | | |
| fuel filter..... | 283 | | | | |
| Fuel-driven heater..... | 137 | | | | |
| auto mode..... | 138 | | | | |
| deactivate..... | 138 | | | | |
| fuelling..... | 138 | | | | |
| parking on a hill..... | 138 | | | | |
| starter battery and fuel..... | 138 | | | | |
| Fuelling | | | | | |
| filling..... | 281 | | | | |
| fuel cap..... | 281 | | | | |
| fuel filler flap..... | 280 | | | | |
| fuel filler flap, manual opening..... | 281 | | | | |
| Fuel tank | | | | | |
| volume..... | 385 | | | | |
| Fuse box..... | 351 | | | | |
| Fuses..... | 350 | | | | |
| behind the engine..... | 354 | | | | |
| cargo area..... | 359 | | | | |
| changing..... | 350 | | | | |
| cold zone..... | 363 | | | | |
| engine compartment..... | 352 | | | | |
| General..... | 350 | | | | |
| Start/Stop..... | 363 | | | | |
| under glovebox..... | 355, 357 | | | | |

G

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Gearbox..... | 264 |
| automatic..... | 264 |
| Gear indicator..... | 264 |
| Gear selector inhibitor..... | 267 |
| Gear selector inhibitor, mechanical disengagement..... | 267 |
| Geartronic..... | 265 |
| Glass | |
| laminated/reinforced..... | 21 |
| Glovebox..... | 143 |
| locking..... | 170 |
| Gross vehicle weight..... | 376 |
| Ground fault breaker..... | 292 |
| GSI - Gear selector assistance..... | 264 |

H

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Handbrake..... | 272 |
| Hazard warning flashers..... | 89 |
| Headlamp control..... | 81 |
| Headlamp levelling..... | 82 |
| Headlamp pattern, adjusting..... | 93 |
| Headlamp pattern adjustment..... | 93 |
| Active Bending Lights | 93 |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------|
| Headlamps..... | 338 |
| head restraint | |
| centre seat, rear..... | 77 |
| lowering..... | 78, 79 |
| Heated washer nozzles..... | 94 |
| Heater | |
| electrically-driven..... | 137 |
| fuel-driven..... | 137 |
| Heating | |
| rearview and door mirrors..... | 99 |
| rear window..... | 99 |
| seats..... | 122 |
| steering wheel..... | 80 |
| Heat-reflecting windscreen..... | 17 |
| High engine temperature..... | 296 |
| High-pressure headlamp washing..... | 94 |
| Hill Start Assist..... | 268 |
| Home safe light duration..... | 92 |
| Horn..... | 80 |
| Hybrid battery..... | 350 |
| charging..... | 286 |
| specifications..... | 388 |
| Hybrid guide..... | 67 |

I

| | |
|-----------------------------------------|--------|
| IAQS - Interior Air Quality System..... | 118 |
| Immobiliser..... | 153 |
| Indicator symbols..... | 68 |
| Inflatable curtain..... | 36, 39 |
| Information button, PCC..... | 156 |
| Information display..... | 63 |
| Inlaid mats..... | 143 |
| Instrument lighting, see Lighting..... | 82 |
| Instrument overview | |
| left-hand drive car..... | 56 |
| right-hand drive car..... | 59 |
| Instruments and controls..... | 56, 59 |
| Interior Air Quality System (IAQS) | |
| Air cleaning..... | 118 |
| Interior lighting, see Lighting..... | 91 |
| Interior rearview mirror..... | 99 |
| automatic dimming..... | 100 |
| Intermittent wiping..... | 93 |

J

| | |
|--------------------|-----|
| Jack..... | 309 |
| Jacket holder..... | 142 |

Journey statistics..... 112
 Jump starting..... 256

K

Kerb weight..... 376
 Key..... 152, 153, 165
 Key blade..... 158, 159
 Keyless drive.... 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 255
 Keyless - locking..... 164
 Keyless start (keyless drive) 162, 163,
 164, 165, 166, 255
 Keyless - unlocking..... 164
 Keypad in the steering wheel..... 80
 Key positions..... 73

L

Labels..... 372
 Laminated glass..... 21
 Lamps, see Lighting..... 337
 Lane Departure Control..... 230, 231
 Lane keeping assistant
 operation..... 231, 232
 Laser sensor..... 211

Leather upholstery, washing instructions 368
 Light indications, PCC..... 156
 Lighting..... 337
 Active Xenon headlamps..... 87
 approach lighting..... 92, 155
 automatic lighting, passenger com-
 partment..... 91
 bulbs, specifications..... 343
 controls..... 91
 cornering lights..... 88
 daytime running lights..... 83
 display lighting..... 82
 headlamp levelling..... 82
 home safe lighting..... 92
 instrument lighting..... 82
 in the passenger compartment..... 91
 main/dipped beam..... 84
 position/parking lamps..... 83
 rear fog lamp..... 88
 tunnel detection..... 84
 Lighting, bulb replacement..... 338
 bulb holder rear: direction indicators
 rear, rear fog lamp and reversing
 lamp..... 341
 cargo area..... 342
 dipped beam (cars with halogen head-
 lamps)..... 339
 direction indicators, front..... 340
 main beam (cars with active xenon
 headlamps)..... 340

main beam (cars with halogen head-
 lamps)..... 340
 number plate lighting..... 342
 vanity mirror..... 343

Loading

cargo area..... 145
 General..... 145
 long load..... 146
 roof load..... 146

Lock

locking..... 167
 manual locking..... 168
 unlocking..... 167, 168

Lockable wheel bolts..... 308

Lock confirmation 153

Lock indicator..... 153

Locking/unlocking

glovebox..... 170
 inside..... 168
 tailgate..... 170

Long-term storage..... 295

M

Main/dipped beam, see Lighting..... 84

Main beam, automatic activation..... 85

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------------|----------|--|--|
| maintenance | | | |
| Rustproofing..... | 367 | | |
| Manual gearbox | | | |
| GSI - Gear selector assistance..... | 264 | | |
| Manual gear positions (Geartronic)..... | 265 | | |
| Max. roof load..... | 376 | | |
| Memory function in seat..... | 76 | | |
| Menus | | | |
| Combined instrument panel..... | 103 | | |
| menu overview..... | 104 | | |
| Messages..... | 105 | | |
| Information display..... | 104 | | |
| Messages and symbols | | | |
| Adaptive Cruise Control..... | 202 | | |
| Collision Warning with Auto | | | |
| Brake..... | 213, 224 | | |
| Driver Alert Control..... | 228 | | |
| Lane Departure Warning..... | 233 | | |
| Messages in BLIS..... | 246 | | |
| Meters | | | |
| fuel gauge..... | 64 | | |
| speedometer..... | 64 | | |
| tachometer..... | 64 | | |
| misting | | | |
| attending to the windows..... | 115 | | |
| Misting | | | |
| condensation in headlamps..... | 365 | | |
| Mood lighting..... | 92 | | |
| MY CAR..... | 105 | | |
| O | | | |
| Oil, see also Engine oil..... | 379, 381 | | |
| Oil level low..... | 332 | | |
| Output..... | 378 | | |
| electric motor..... | 379 | | |
| outside temperature gauge..... | 71 | | |
| Overheating..... | 296 | | |
| Owner's manual, ecolabelling..... | 21 | | |
| P | | | |
| PACOS..... | 33 | | |
| Paintwork | | | |
| colour code..... | 369 | | |
| damage and touch-up..... | 369 | | |
| Panel lighting..... | 82 | | |
| Panic function..... | 155 | | |
| Park Assist..... | 235 | | |
| backward..... | 236 | | |
| fault indicator..... | 238 | | |
| function..... | 235 | | |
| parking assistance sensors..... | 238 | | |
| Park assist camera..... | 239 | | |
| settings..... | 241 | | |
| Parking brake..... | 272 | | |
| Parking on a hill..... | 138 | | |
| Passenger compartment filter..... | 117 | | |
| PCC – Personal Car Communicator | | | |
| functions..... | 154 | | |
| range..... | 157, 162 | | |
| Pedestrian detection..... | 214 | | |
| Pinch protection, sunroof..... | 103 | | |
| Polishing..... | 366 | | |
| Position/parking lamps..... | 83 | | |
| Power seat..... | 76 | | |
| Power steering fluid | | | |
| grade..... | 384 | | |
| Power sunroof..... | 101 | | |
| Power windows..... | 95 | | |
| Preconditioning..... | 129 | | |
| direct start..... | 132 | | |
| general..... | 129 | | |
| immediate stop..... | 133 | | |
| messages and symbols..... | 135 | | |
| parking inside..... | 130 | | |
| parking outside..... | 131 | | |
| setting..... | 130 | | |
| timer..... | 133 | | |
| Privacy locking..... | 159 | | |

| | |
|------------------------|-----|
| Protective grille..... | 149 |
| Protective net..... | 149 |

Q

| | |
|----------------------|-----|
| Queue Assist..... | 196 |
| Queue Assistant..... | 196 |

R

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Radar sensor..... | 191 |
| Limitations..... | 199 |
| Rain sensor..... | 93 |
| Range | |
| during electric operation..... | 389 |
| Rear bulbs | |
| location..... | 342 |
| Rear seat | |
| Heating..... | 122 |
| Rearview and door mirrors | |
| compass..... | 100 |
| door..... | 97 |
| electrically retractable..... | 98 |
| heating..... | 99 |
| interior..... | 99 |
| Rear window, defrosting..... | 99 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------|
| Recommendations during driving..... | 279 |
| Recommended child seats | |
| table..... | 43 |
| Recovery..... | 304 |
| Refrigerant..... | 336 |
| Regeneration..... | 284 |
| Relay/fuse box, see Fuses..... | 350 |
| Remote control immobiliser..... | 154 |
| Remote control key..... | 152, 153 |
| battery replacement..... | 161 |
| detachable key blade..... | 158, 159 |
| functions..... | 154 |
| loss..... | 152 |
| range..... | 156, 162 |
| Remote control key system, type approval..... | 389 |
| Resetting, trip meter..... | 109, 112 |
| Resetting the door mirrors..... | 98 |
| Resetting the power windows..... | 97 |
| Retractable power door mirrors..... | 98 |
| Road sign information..... | 181 |
| Limitations..... | 183 |
| operation..... | 181 |
| Roof load, max. weight..... | 376 |
| Rustproofing..... | 367 |

S

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------|
| Safety lock | |
| children..... | 42 |
| Safety mode..... | 40 |
| moving the car..... | 42 |
| start attempt..... | 41 |
| Sealing fluid..... | 325 |
| Seat, see Seats..... | 75 |
| Seatbelt..... | 27 |
| loosen..... | 29 |
| pregnancy..... | 29 |
| putting on..... | 28 |
| rear seat..... | 30 |
| seatbelt reminder..... | 30 |
| seatbelt tensioner..... | 30 |
| Seatbelt reminder..... | 30 |
| Seatbelt tensioner..... | 30, 39 |
| Seats..... | 75 |
| head restraints, rear..... | 77 |
| heating..... | 122 |
| Heating..... | 122 |
| lowering the front backrest..... | 75 |
| lowering the rear backrest..... | 78 |
| power..... | 76 |
| Sensus..... | 72 |
| Service position..... | 344 |
| Service programme..... | 327 |

- Set time interval..... 204
- Side airbag SIPS..... 35, 39
- SIPS airbag..... 35
- Skidding..... 279
- slippery driving conditions..... 279
- Soot filter..... 284
- SOOT FILTER FULL..... 284
- spare wheel..... 312
installation..... 315
- Speed limiter..... 184
alarm for speed exceeded..... 186
deactivation..... 186
getting started..... 184, 185
temporary deactivation..... 185
- Speed ratings, tyres..... 312
- Spin control..... 178
- Stability and traction control system 178,
180
operation..... 179
- Stability system..... 178
- Stains..... 367
- Start/Stop function..... 260
- Steering force, speed related..... 247
- Steering force level, see Steering force... 247
- Steering lock..... 255
- Steering wheel..... 79
heating..... 80
keypad..... 80
steering wheel adjustment..... 79
- Stone chips and scratches..... 369
- Storage spaces
glovebox..... 143
Jacket holder..... 142
tunnel console..... 142
- Storage spaces in the passenger com-
partment..... 140
- Sunroof
opening and closing..... 101
pinch protection..... 103
sunscreen..... 102
ventilation position..... 102
- Sunscreen, sunroof..... 102
- Switching off the engine..... 255
- Symbols
indicator symbols..... 66, 68
warning symbols..... 66
- Symbols and messages
Adaptive Cruise Control..... 202
Collision Warning with Auto
Brake..... 213, 224
Driver Alert Control..... 228
Lane Departure Warning..... 233
- System
tripping..... 39
-
- T**
- Tailgate
Locking/unlocking..... 170
- Temperature
actual temperature..... 116
- Temperature control..... 124
- Timer
deactivate..... 134
preconditioning..... 133
setting..... 133
start..... 134
- Tools..... 308
- Total airing function..... 115, 169
- Towbar
detachable, attachment..... 299
detachable, removal..... 300
- Towbar, see Towing equipment..... 298
- Towbar - detachable
attachment/removal..... 299, 300
- Towing..... 302
towing eye..... 303
- Towing bracket..... 298
specifications..... 298

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Towing capacity and towball load..... | 377 | Type approval | |
| Towing eye..... | 303 | Bluetooth®..... | 390 |
| Traction control..... | 178 | radar system..... | 389 |
| Trailer..... | 296 | remote control key system..... | 389 |
| cable..... | 296 | Type designations..... | 372 |
| driving with a trailer..... | 296 | Tyre dimension..... | 311 |
| snaking..... | 301 | Tyre load index..... | 311 |
| Trailer stability assist..... | 178 | Tyre pressure label..... | 316 |
| Trailer Stability Assist..... | 301 | Tyres | |
| Transmission oil | | direction of rotation..... | 306 |
| volume and grade..... | 383 | maintenance..... | 306 |
| Transponder..... | 17 | pressure..... | 316, 387 |
| Tread depth..... | 310 | puncture repair..... | 318 |
| Tread wear indicators..... | 308 | specifications..... | 387 |
| Trip computer..... | 106, 108, 111, 112 | tread depth..... | 310 |
| Trip meter..... | 71 | tread wear indicators..... | 308 |
| Trip meter, resetting..... | 109, 112 | winter tyres..... | 310 |
| Trip statistics..... | 260 | | |
| Troubleshooting | | U | |
| Adaptive Cruise Control..... | 201 | Unlocking | |
| TSA - trailer stability assist | 178, 301 | from the inside..... | 168 |
| Tunnel console..... | 142 | from the outside..... | 167 |
| 12 V socket..... | 144 | Unlocking with the key blade..... | 165 |
| cigarette lighter and ashtray..... | 142 | | |
| Tunnel detection..... | 84 | | |

V

| | |
|-----------------------|---------|
| V60 PLUG-IN HYBRID | |
| introduction..... | 24 |
| overview..... | 22 |
| Vanity mirror..... | 91, 143 |
| Ventilation..... | 119 |
| Vibration damper..... | 298 |
| Volvo Sensus..... | 72 |

W

| | |
|-----------------------------------------|--------|
| Warning lamp | |
| Adaptive Cruise Control..... | 191 |
| collision warning system..... | 219 |
| stability and traction control system.. | 178 |
| Warning lamps | |
| Airbags – SRS..... | 69 |
| Fault in brake system..... | 69 |
| Parking brake applied..... | 69 |
| seatbelt reminder..... | 30, 69 |
| starter battery not charging..... | 69 |
| Warning..... | 69 |
| Warning sound | |
| collision warning system..... | 219 |
| Warning symbols..... | 66, 69 |
| Warning triangle..... | 317 |

| | | | |
|----------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------|---------|
| Washer fluid | | Windows, rearview and door mirrors. | 21, 367 |
| volume..... | 384 | Windscreen washing..... | 94 |
| Washer fluid, filling..... | 346 | Windscreen wiper..... | 93 |
| Washer nozzles, heated..... | 94 | rain sensor..... | 93 |
| Washers | | Winter driving..... | 279 |
| rear window..... | 95 | Winter tyres..... | 310 |
| washer fluid, filling..... | 346 | Wiper blades..... | 344 |
| windscreen..... | 94 | changing..... | 345 |
| Water and dirt-repellent coating..... | 367 | Cleaning..... | 346 |
| Water-repellent surface, cleaning..... | 367 | replacing, rear window..... | 345 |
| Waxing..... | 366 | Service position..... | 344 |
| Weights | | Wipers and washing..... | 93 |
| kerb weight..... | 376 | | |
| Wheel bolts..... | 308 | | |
| lockable..... | 308 | | |
| Wheel rim, dimensions..... | 310 | | |
| Wheel rims | | | |
| cleaning..... | 366 | | |
| Wheels | | | |
| installation..... | 315 | | |
| removal..... | 312 | | |
| snow chains..... | 310 | | |
| Whiplash injury, WHIPS..... | 37 | | |
| WHIPS | | | |
| child seat/booster cushion..... | 38 | | |
| seating position..... | 38 | | |
| whiplash protection..... | 37, 39 | | |

